Galen On the natural faculties

Galen, Arthur John Brock
Galen

On the Natural Faculties

With an English Translation by
Arthur John Brock, M.D.

Edinburgh

London: William Heinemann
New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons

MCMXVI
234498

MARCH 24TH 1869
PREFACE

The text used is (with a few unimportant modifications) that of Kühn (Vol. II), as edited by Georg Helmreich; Teubner, Leipzig, 1893. The numbers of the pages of Kühn's edition are printed at the side of the Greek text, a parallel mark (∥) in the line indicating the exact point of division between Kühn's pages.

Words in the English text which are enclosed in square brackets are supplementary or explanatory; practically all explanations, however, are relegated to the footnotes or introduction. In the footnotes, also, attention is drawn to words which are of particular philological interest from the point of view of modern medicine.

I have made the translation directly from the Greek; where passages of special difficulty occurred, I have been able to compare my own version with Linacre's Latin translation (1523) and the French rendering of Charles Daremberg (1854–56); in this respect I am also peculiarly fortunate in having had the help of Mr. A. W. Pickard Cambridge of Balliol College, Oxford, who most kindly went through the
PREFACE

proofs and made many valuable suggestions from the point of view of exact scholarship.

My best thanks are due to the Editors for their courtesy and for the kindly interest they have taken in the work. I have also gratefully to acknowledge the receipt of much assistance and encouragement from Sir William Osler, Regius Professor of Medicine at Oxford, and from Dr. J. D. Comrie, first lecturer on the History of Medicine at Edinburgh University. Professor D'Arcy W. Thompson of University College, Dundee, and Sir W. T. Thiselton-Dyer, late director of the Royal Botanic Gardens at Kew, have very kindly helped me to identify several animals and plants mentioned by Galen.

I cannot conclude without expressing a word of gratitude to my former biological teachers, Professors Patrick Geddes and J. Arthur Thomson. The experience reared on the foundation of their teaching has gone far to help me in interpreting the great medical biologist of Greece.

I should be glad to think that the present work might help, however little, to hasten the coming reunion between the "humanities" and modern biological science; their present separation I believe to be against the best interest of both.

A. J. B.

22ND STATIONARY HOSPITAL, ALDERSHOT.
March, 1916.
CONTENTS

PREFACE ........................................... V

INTRODUCTION ....................................... ix

BIBLIOGRAPHY ....................................... xlii

SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS .............................. xliii

BOOK I ............................................. 1

BOOK II ............................................ 115

BOOK III ........................................... 221

INDEX AND GLOSSARY .............................. 333
INTRODUCTION

If the work of Hippocrates be taken as representing the foundation upon which the edifice of historical Greek medicine was reared, then the work of Galen, who lived some six hundred years later, may be looked upon as the summit or apex of the same edifice. Galen's merit is to have crystallised or brought to a focus all the best work of the Greek medical schools which had preceded his own time. It is essentially in the form of Galenism that Greek medicine was transmitted to after ages.

The ancient Greeks referred the origins of medicine to a god Asklepios (called in Latin Aesculapius), thereby testifying to their appreciation of the truly divine function of the healing art. The emblem of Aesculapius, familiar in medical symbolism at the present day, was a staff with a serpent coiled round it, the animal typifying wisdom in general, and more particularly the wisdom of the medicine-man, with his semi-miraculous powers over life and death.

"Be ye therefore wise as serpents and harmless as doves."
INTRODUCTION

The temples of Aesculapius were scattered over the ancient Hellenic world. To them the sick and ailing resorted in crowds. The treatment, which was in the hands of an hereditary priesthood, combined the best of the methods carried on at our present-day health-resorts, our hydropathics, sanatoriums, and nursing-homes. Fresh air, water-cures, massage, gymnastics, psychotherapy, and natural methods in general were chiefly relied on.

Hippocrates, the "Father of Medicine" (5th to 4th centuries, B.C.) was associated with the Asclepieum of Cos, an island off the south-west coast of Asia Minor, near Rhodes. He apparently revitalized the work of the health-temples, which had before his time been showing a certain decline in vigour, coupled with a corresponding excessive tendency towards sophistry and priestcraft.

Celsus says: "Hippocrates Cons primus quidem ex omnibus memoria dignis ab studio sapientiae disciplinam hanc separavit." He means that Hippocrates first gave the physician an independent standing, separating him from the cosmological speculator. Hippocrates confined the medical man to medicine. He did with medical thought what Socrates did with thought in general—he "brought it down from heaven to earth." His watchword was "Back to Nature!"

At the same time, while assigning the physician his post, Hippocrates would not let him regard that post as sacrosanct. He set his face against any
INTRODUCTION

tendency to mystery-mongering, to exclusiveness, to sacerdotalism. He was, in fact, opposed to the spirit of trade-unionism in medicine. His concern was rather with the physician’s duties than his “rights.”

At the dawn of recorded medical history Hippocrates stands for the fundamental and primary importance of seeing clearly—that is of clinical observation. And what he observed was that the human organism, when exposed to certain abnormal conditions—certain stresses—tends to behave in a certain way: that in other words, each “disease” tends to run a certain definite course. To him a disease was essentially a process, one and indivisible, and thus his practical problem was essentially one of prognosis—“what will be the natural course of this disease, if left to itself?” Here he found himself to no small extent in opposition with the teaching of the neighbouring medical school of Cnidus, where a more static view-point laid special emphasis upon the minutiae of diagnosis.

Observation taught Hippocrates to place unbounded faith in the recuperative powers of the living organism—in what we sometimes call nowadays the vis medicatrix Naturae. His observation was that even with a very considerable “abnormality” of environmental stress the organism, in the large majority of cases, manages eventually by its own inherent powers to adjust itself to the new conditions. “Merely give Nature a chance,” said the father of medicine in effect, “and most
INTRODUCTION

diseases will cure themselves.” And accordingly his treatment was mainly directed towards “giving Nature a chance.”

His keen sense of the solidarity (or rather, of the constant interplay) between the organism and its environment (the “conditions” to which it is exposed) is instanced in his book, “Airs, Waters, and Places.” As we recognise, in our popular everyday psychology, that “it takes two to make a quarrel,” so Hippocrates recognised that in pathology, it takes two (organism and environment) to make a disease.

As an outstanding example of his power or clinical observation we may recall the facies Hippocratica, an accurate study of the countenance of a dying man.

His ideals for the profession are embodied in the “Hippocratic oath.”

Anatomy. Impressed by this view of the organism as a unity, the Hippocratic school tended in some degree to overlook the importance of its constituent parts. The balance was re-adjusted later on by the labours of the anatomical school of Alexandria, which, under the aegis of the enlightened Ptolemies, arose in the 3rd century B.C. Two prominent exponents of anatomy belonging to this school were Herophilus and Erasistratus, the latter of whom we shall frequently meet with in the following pages (v. p. 95 et seq.).
INTRODUCTION

After the death of the Master, the Hippocratic school tended, as so often happens with the best of cultural movements, to show signs itself of diminishing vitality: the letter began to obscure and hamper the spirit. The comparatively small element of theory which existed in the Hippocratic physiology was made the groundwork of a somewhat over-elaborated "system." Against this tendency on the part of the "Dogmatic" or "Rationalist" school there arose, also at Alexandria, the sect of the Empiricists. "It is not," they said, "the cause but the cure of diseases that concerns us; not how we digest, but what is digestible."

Horace said "Graecia capta ferum victorem cepit." Political domination, the occupation of territory by armies, does not necessarily mean real conquest. Horace's statement applied to medicine as to other branches of culture.

The introducer of Greek medicine into Rome was Asclepiades (1st century B.C.). A man of forceful personality, and equipped with a fully developed philosophic system of health and disease which commended itself to the Roman savants of the day, he soon attained to the pinnacle of professional success in the Latin capital: he is indeed to all time the type of the fashionable (and somewhat "faddy") West-end physician. His system was a purely mechanistic one, being based upon
INTRODUCTION

the atomic doctrine of Leucippus and Democritus, which had been completed by Epicurus and recently introduced to the Roman public in Lucretius's great poem "De Rerum Natura." The disbelief of Asclepiades in the self-maintaining powers of the living organism are exposed and refuted at considerable length by Galen in the volume before us.

Out of the teaching of Asclepiades that physiological processes depend upon the particular way in which the ultimate indivisible molecules come together (ἐν τῇ ποίᾳ συνόδῳ τῶν πρώτων ἐκείνων σωμάτων τῶν ἀπαθῶν) there was developed by his pupil, Themison of Laodicea, a system of medicine characterised by the most engaging simplicity both of diagnosis and treatment. This so-called "Methodic" system was intended to strike a balance between the excessive leaning to apriorism shown by the Rationalist (Hippocratic) school and the opposite tendency of the Empiricists. "A pathological theory we must have," said the Methodists in effect, "but let it be simple." They held that the molecular groups constituting the tissues were traversed by minute channels (πόροι, "pores"); all diseases belonged to one or other of two classes; if the channels were constricted the disease was one of stasis (στέγνωςις), and if they were dilated the disease was one of flux (ῥύσις). Flux and stasis were indicated respectively by increase and diminution of the natural secretions;
INTRODUCTION

treatment was of opposites by opposites—of stasis by methods causing dilatation of the channels, and conversely.

Wild as it may seem, this pathological theory or the Methodists contained an element of truth; in various guises it has cropped up once and again at different epochs of medical history; even to-day there are pathologists who tend to describe certain classes of disease in terms of vaso-constriction and vaso-dilatation. The vice of the Methodist teaching was that it looked on a disease too much as something fixed and finite, an independent entity, to be considered entirely apart from its particular setting. The Methodists illustrate for us the tyranny of names. In its defects as in its virtues this school has analogues at the present day; we are all acquainted with the medical man to whom a name (such, let us say, as "tuberculosis," "gout," or "intestinal auto-intoxication") stands for an entity, one and indivisible, to be treated by a definite and unvarying formula.

To such an individual the old German saying "Jedermann hat am Ende ein Bischen Tuberkulose" is simply—incomprehensible.

* * * * * * *

All the medical schools which I have mentioned Galen, were still holding their ground in the 2nd century A.D., with more or less popular acceptance, when the great Galen made his entry into the world of Graeco-Roman medicine.
INTRODUCTION

Claudius Galenus was born at Pergamos in Asia Minor in the year 131 A.D. His father was one Nicon, a well-to-do architect of that city. "I had the great good fortune," says Galen,¹ "to have as a father a highly amiable, just, good, and benevolent man. My mother, on the other hand, possessed a very bad temper; she used sometimes to bite her serving-maids, and she was perpetually shouting at my father and quarrelling with him—worse than Xanthippe with Socrates. When, therefore, I compared the excellence of my father's disposition with the disgraceful passions of my mother, I resolved to embrace and love the former qualities, and to avoid and hate the latter."

Nicon called his son Γαληνός, which means quiet, peaceable, and although the physician eventually turned out to be a man of elevated character, it is possible that his somewhat excessive leaning towards controversy (exemplified in the following pages) may have resulted from the fact that he was never quite able to throw off the worst side of the maternal inheritance.

His father, a man well schooled in mathematics and philosophy, saw to it that his son should not lack a liberal education. Pergamos itself was an ancient centre of civilisation, containing, among other culture-institutions, a library only second in importance to that of Alexandria itself; it also contained an Asclepieum.

¹ On the Affections of the Mind, p. 41 (Kühn's ed.).

xvi
INTRODUCTION

Galen's training was essentially eclectic: he studied all the chief philosophical systems of the time—Platonic, Aristotelian, Stoic, and Epicurean—and then, at the age of seventeen, entered on a course of medical studies; these he pursued under the best teachers at his own city, and afterwards, during a period of Wanderjahre, at Smyrna, Alexandria, and other leading medical centres.

Returning to Pergamos, he received his first professional appointment—that of surgeon to the gladiators. After four years here he was drawn by ambition to Rome, being at that time about thirty-one years of age. At Rome the young Pergamene attained a brilliant reputation both as a practitioner and as a public demonstrator of anatomy; among his patients he finally numbered even the Emperor Marcus Aurelius himself.

Medical practice in Rome at this time was at a low ebb, and Galen took no pains to conceal his contempt for the ignorance, charlatanism, and venality of his fellow-practitioners. Eventually, in spite of his social popularity, he raised up such odium against himself in medical circles, that he was forced to flee the city. This he did hurriedly and secretly in the year 168 A.D., when thirty-six years of age. He betook himself to his old home at Pergamos, where he settled down once more to a literary life.

His respite was short, however, for within a year he was summoned back to Italy by imperial mandate. Marcus Aurelius was about to undertake an
INTRODUCTION

expedition against the Germans, who at that time were threatening the northern frontiers of the Empire, and he was anxious that his consulting physician should accompany him to the front. "Patriotism" in this sense, however, seems to have had no charms for the Pergamene, and he pleaded vigorously to be excused. Eventually, the Emperor gave him permission to remain at home, entrusting to his care the young prince Commodus.

Thereafter we know little of Galen's history, beyond the fact that he now entered upon a period of great literary activity. Probably he died about the end of the century.

Galen wrote extensively, not only on anatomy, physiology, and medicine in general, but also on logic; his logical proclivities, as will be shown later, are well exemplified in his medical writings. A considerable number of undoubtedly genuine works of his have come down to us. The full importance of his contributions to medicine does not appear to have been recognized till some time after his death, but eventually, as already pointed out, the terms Galenism and Greek medicine became practically synonymous.

A few words may be devoted to the subsequent history of his writings.

During and after the final break-up of the Roman Empire came times of confusion and of social re-
INTRODUCTION

construction, which left little opportunity for scientific thought and research. The Byzantine Empire, from the 4th century onwards, was the scene of much internal turmoil, in which the militant activities of the now State-established Christian church played a not inconsiderable part. The Byzantine medical scholars were at best compilers, and a typical compiler was Oribasius, body-physician to the Emperor Julian (4th century, A.D.); his excellent Synopsis was written in order to make the huge mass of the Galenic writings available for the ordinary practitioner.

Greek medicine spread, with general Greek culture, Arabian Medicine, throughout Syria, and from thence was carried by the Nestorians, a persecuted heretical sect, into Persia; here it became implanted, and hence eventually spread to the Mohammedan world. Several of the Prophet’s successors (such as the Caliphs Harun-al-Rashid and Abdul-Rahman III) were great patrons of Greek learning, and especially of medicine. The Arabian scholars imbibed Aristotle and Galen with avidity. A partial assimilation, however, was the farthest stage to which they could attain; with the exception of pharmacology, the Arabians made practically no independent additions to medicine. They were essentially systematizers and commentators. “Averrois che il gran comento feo” 1

1 “Averrhoës who made the great Commentary” (Dante). It was Averrhoës (Ebn Roshd) who, in the 12th century, introduced Aristotle to the Mohammedan world, and the “Commentary” referred to was on Aristotle.
INTRODUCTION

may stand as the type *par excellence* of the Moslem sage.

Avicenna (Ebn Sina), (10th to 11th century) is the foremost name in Arabian medicine: his "Book of the Canon in Medicine," when translated into Latin, even overshadowed the authority of Galen himself for some four centuries. Of this work the medical historian Max Neuburger says: "Avicenna, according to his lights, imparted to contemporary medical science the appearance of almost mathematical accuracy, whilst the art of therapeutics, although empiricism did not wholly lack recognition, was deduced as a logical sequence from theoretical (Galenic and Aristotelian) premises."

Having arrived at such a condition in the hands of the Mohammedans, Galenism was now destined to pass once more to the West. From the 11th century onwards Latin translations of this "Arabian" Medicine (being Greek medicine in oriental trappings) began to make their way into Europe; here they helped to undermine the authority of the one medical school of native growth which the West produced during the Middle Ages—namely the School of Salerno.

Blending with the Scholastic philosophy at the universities of Naples and Montpellier, the teachings of Aristotle and Galen now assumed a position of supreme authority: from their word, in matters
INTRODUCTION

scientific and medical, there was no appeal. In reference to this period the Pergamene was referred to in later times as the "Medical Pope of the Middle Ages."

It was of course the logical side of Galenism which chiefly commended it to the mediaeval Schoolmen, as to the essentially speculative Moslems.

The year 1453, when Constantinople fell into the hands of the Turks, is often taken as marking the commencement of the Renascence. Among the many factors which tended to stimulate and awaken men's minds during these spacious times was the re-discovery of the Greek classics, which were brought to Europe by, among others, the scholars who fled from Byzantium. The Arabo-Scholastic versions of Aristotle and Galen were now confronted by their Greek originals. A passion for Greek learning was aroused. The freshness and truth of these old writings helped to awaken men to a renewed sense of their own dignity and worth, and to brace them in their own struggle for self-expression.

Prominent in this "Humanist" movement was the English physician, Thomas Linacre (c. 1460–1524) who, having gained in Italy an extraordinary zeal for the New Learning, devoted the rest of his life, after returning to England, to the promotion of the litterae humaniores, and especially to making Galen accessible to readers of Latin. Thus the "De Naturalibus Facultatibus" appeared in London in xxi
INTRODUCTION

1523, and was preceded and followed by several other translations, all marked by minute accuracy and elegant Latinity.

Two new parties now arose in the medical world—the so-called "Greeks" and the more conservative "Arabists."

But the swing of the pendulum did not cease with the creation of the liberal "Greek" party; the dazzling vision of freedom was to drive some to a yet more anarchical position. Paracelsus, who flourished in the first half of the 16th century, may be taken as typifying this extremist tendency. His one cry was, "Let us away with all authority whatsoever, and get back to Nature!" At his first lecture as professor at the medical school of Basle he symbolically burned the works of Galen and of his chief Arabian exponent, Avicenna.

But the final collapse of authority in medicine could not be brought about by mere negativism. It was the constructive work of the Renascence anatomists, particularly those of the Italian school, which finally brought Galenism to the ground.

Vesalius (1514–64), the modern "Father of Anatomy," for dissecting human bodies, was fiercely assailed by the hosts of orthodoxy, including that stout Galenist, his old teacher Jacques Dubois (Jacobus Sylvius). Vesalius held on his way, however, proving, *inter alia*, that Galen had been wrong...
INTRODUCTION

In saying that the interventricular septum of the heart was permeable (cf. present volume, p. 321).

Michael Servetus (1509–53) suggested that the blood, in order to get from the right to the left side of the heart, might have to pass through the lungs. For his heterodox opinions he was burned at the stake.

Another 16th-century anatomist, Andrea Cesalpino, is considered by the Italians to have been a discoverer of the circulation of the blood before Harvey; he certainly had a more or less clear idea of the circulation, but, as in the case of the “organic evolutionists before Darwin,” he failed to prove his point by conclusive demonstration.

William Harvey, the great Englishman who founded modern experimental physiology and was the first to establish not only the fact of the circulation but also the physical laws governing it, is commonly reckoned the Father of Modern Medicine. He owed his interest in the movements of the blood to Fabricio of Acquapendente, his tutor at Padua, who drew his attention to the valves in the veins, thus suggesting the idea of a circular as opposed to a to-and-fro motion. Harvey’s great generalisation, based upon a long series of experiments in vivo, was considered to have given the coup de grâce to the Galenic physiology, and hence threw temporary discredit upon the whole system of medicine associated therewith.

Modern medicine, based upon a painstaking
INTRODUCTION

research into the details of physiological function, had begun.

While we cannot sufficiently commend the results of the long modern period of research-work to which the labours of the Renascence anatomists from Vesalius to Harvey form a fitting prelude, we yet by no means allow that Galen's general medical outlook was so entirely invalidated as many imagine by the conclusive demonstration of his anatomical errors. It is time for us now to turn to Galen again after three hundred years of virtual neglect: it may be that he will help us to see something fundamentally important for medical practice which is beyond the power even of our microscopes and X-rays to reveal. While the value of his work undoubtedly lies mainly in its enabling us to envisage one of the greatest of the early steps attained by man in medical knowledge, it also has a very definite intrinsic value of its own.

No attempt can be made here to determine how much of Galen's work is, in the true sense of the word, original, and how much is drawn from the labours of his predecessors. In any case, there is no doubt that he was much more than a mere compiler and systematizer of other men's work: he was great enough to be able not merely to collect, to digest, and to assimilate all the best of the work done before his time, but, adding to this the outcome of his own observations, experiments, and reflections, to present xxiv
INTRODUCTION

the whole in an articulated “system” showing that perfect balance of parts which is the essential criterion of a work of art. Constantly, however, in his writings we shall come across traces of the influence of, among others, Plato, Aristotle, and writers of the Stoic school.

Although Galen is an eclectic in the best sense of the term, there is one name to which he pays a very special tribute—that of his illustrious forerunner Hippocrates. Him on quite a number of occasions he actually calls “divine” (cf. p. 293).

“Hippocrates,” he says, “was the first known to us of all who have been both physicians and philosophers, in that he was the first to recognise what nature does.” Here is struck the keynote of the teaching of both Hippocrates and Galen; this is shown in the volume before us, which deals with “the natural faculties”—that is with the faculties of this same “Nature” or vital principle referred to in the quotation.

If Galen be looked on as a crystallisation of Greek medicine, then this book may be looked on as a crystallisation of Galen. Within its comparatively short compass we meet with instances illustrating perhaps most of the sides of this many-sided writer. The “Natural Faculties” therefore forms an excellent prelude to the study of his larger and more specialised works.

xxv
INTRODUCTION

What, now, is this "Nature" or biological principle upon which Galen, like Hippocrates, bases the whole of his medical teaching, and which, we may add, is constantly overlooked—if indeed ever properly apprehended—by many physiologists of the present day? By using this term Galen meant simply that, when we deal with a living thing, we are dealing primarily with a unity, which, *quid* living, is not further divisible; all its parts can only be understood and dealt with as being *in relation* to this principle of unity. Galen was thus led to criticise with considerable severity many of the medical and surgical specialists of his time, who acted on the assumption (implicit if not explicit) that the whole was merely the sum of its parts, and that if, in an ailing organism, these parts were treated each in and for itself, the health of the whole organism could in this way be eventually restored.

Galen expressed this idea of the unity of the organism by saying that it was governed by a *Physis* or Nature (ἡ φύσις ἡπερ διωκει τὸ ζων), with whose "faculties" or powers it was the province of φυσιολογία (physiology, Nature-lore) to deal. It was because Hippocrates had a clear sense of this principle that Galen called him master. "Greatest," say the Moslems, "is Allah, and Mohammed is his prophet." "Greatest," said Galen, "is the Physis, and Hippocrates is its prophet." Never did Mohammed more zealously maintain the unity of the Godhead than Hippocrates and Galen the unity of the organism.

xxvi
INTRODUCTION

But we shall not have read far before we discover that the term *Physiology*, as used by Galen, stands not merely for what we understand by it nowadays, but also for a large part of *Physics* as well. This is one of the chief sources of confusion in his writings. Having grasped, for example, the uniqueness of the process of *specific selection* (διλή τοῦ οἴκείου), by which the tissues nourish themselves, he proceeds to apply this principle in explanation of entirely different classes of phenomena; thus he mixes it up with the physical phenomenon of the attraction of the lodestone for iron, of dry grain for moisture, etc. It is noteworthy, however, in these latter instances, that he does not venture to follow out his comparison to its logical conclusion; he certainly stops short of hinting that the lodestone (like a living organ or tissue) *assimilates* the metal which it has attracted!

Setting aside, however, these occasional half-hearted attempts to apply his principle of a φύσις in regions where it has no natural standing, we shall find that in the field of biology Galen moves with an assurance bred of first-hand experience.

Against his attempt to "biologize" physics may be set the converse attempt of the mechanical Atomist school. Thus in Asclepiades he found a doughty defender of the view that physiology was "merely" physics. Galen's ire being roused, he is not content with driving the enemy out of the biological camp, but must needs attempt also to...
INTRODUCTION

dislodge him from that of physics, in which he has every right to be.

In defence of the universal validity of his principle, Galen also tends to excessive disparagement of morphological factors; witness his objection to the view of the anatomist Erasistratus that the calibre of vessels played a part in determining the secretion of fluids (p. 123), that digestion was caused by the mechanical action of the stomach walls (p. 243), and dropsy by induration of the liver (p. 171).

While combating the atomic explanation of physical processes, Galen of course realised that there were many of these which could only be explained according to what we should now call “mechanical laws.” For example, non-living things could be subjected to φορά (passive motion), they answered to the laws of gravity (ταῖς τῶν ἡλῶν οἰακιζόμενα ροπαῖς, p. 126). Furthermore, Galen did not fail to see that living things also were not entirely exempted from the operation of these laws; they too may be at least partly subject to gravity (loc. cit.); a hollow organ exerts, by virtue of its cavity, an attraction similar to that of dilating bellows, as well as, by virtue of the living tissue of its walls, a specifically “vital” or selective kind of attraction (p. 325).

As a type of characteristically vital action we may take nutrition, in which occurs a phenomenon xxviii
INTRODUCTION

which Galen calls *active motion* (δραστικὴ κίνησις) or, more technically, *alteration* (ἀλλοίωσις). This active type of motion cannot be adequately stated in terms of the passive movements (groupings and re-groupings) of its constituent parts according to certain empirical “laws.” Alteration involves *self-movement*, a self-determination of the organism or organic part. Galen does not attempt to explain this fundamental characteristic of *alteration* any further; he contents himself with referring his opponents to Aristotle’s work on the “Complete Alteration of Substance” (p. 9).

The most important characteristic of the Physis or Nature is its τέχνη—its artistic creativeness. In other words, the living organism is a creative artist. This feature may be observed typically in its primary functions of *growth* and *nutrition*; these are dependent on the characteristic *faculties* or powers, by virtue of which each part draws to itself what is proper or appropriate to it (τὸ ὀίκεῖον) and rejects what is foreign (τὸ ἄλλοτριον), thereafter appropriating or assimilating the attracted material; this assimilation is an example of the *alteration* (or qualitative change) already alluded to; thus the food eaten is “altered” into the various tissues of the body, each of these having been provided by “Nature” with its own specific faculties of attraction and repulsion.

Any of the operations of the living part may be looked on in three ways, either (a) as a δύναμις,
INTRODUCTION

faculty, potentiality; (b) as an ἐνέργεια, which is this δύναμις in operation; or (c) as an ἔργον, the product or effect of the ἐνέργεια.¹

¹ What appear to me to be certain resemblances between the Galenical and the modern vitalistic views of Henri Bergson may perhaps be alluded to here. Galen’s vital principle, ἡ τεχνική φύσις (“creative growth”), presents analogies with l’Evolution créatrice: both manifest their activity in producing qualitative change (ἀλλαγή, change-ment): in both, the creative change cannot be analysed into a series of static states, but is one and continuous. In Galen, however, it comes to an end with the development of the individual, whereas in Bergson it continues indefinitely as the evolution of life. The three aspects of organic life may be tabulated thus:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>δύναμις</th>
<th>ἐνέργεια</th>
<th>ἔργον</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Work to be done.</td>
<td>Work being done.</td>
<td>Work done, finished.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future aspect.</td>
<td>Present aspect.</td>
<td>Past aspect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Function.</td>
<td>Structure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The élan vital.</td>
<td>A “thing.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A changing which</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cannot be under-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stood as a sum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of static parts;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a constant be-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>coming, never</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stopping — at</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>least till the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ἔργον is reached.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bergson’s “teleo-
logical” aspect. Bergson’s “philosophical” aspect. Bergson’s “out-
look of physical
science.”

Galen recognized “creativityness” (τεχνη) in the development of the individual and its parts (ontogeny) and in the maintenance of these, but he failed to appreciate the creative evolution of species (phylogeny), which is, of course, part of the same process. To the teleologist the possibilities (δυ-
νάμεις) of the Physis are limited, to Bergson they are un-

xxx
INTRODUCTION

Like his master Hippocrates, Galen attached fundamental importance to clinical observation—to the evidence of the senses as the indispensable groundwork of all medical knowledge. He had also, however, a forte for rapid generalisation from observations, and his logical proclivities disposed him limited. Galen and Bergson agree in attaching most practical importance to the middle category—that of Function.

While it must be conceded that Galen, following Aristotle, had never seriously questioned the fixity of species, the following quotation from his work On Habits (chap. ii.) will show that he must have at least had occasional glimmerings of our modern point of view on the matter. Referring to assimilation, he says: "Just as everything we eat or drink becomes altered in quality, so of course also does the altering factor itself become altered. . . . A clear proof of the assimilation of things which are being nourished to that which is nourishing them is the change which occurs in plants and seeds; this often goes so far that what is highly noxious in one soil becomes, when transplanted into another soil, not merely harmless, but actually useful. This has been largely put to the test by those who compose memoirs on farming and on plants, as also by zoological authors who have written on the changes which occur according to the countries in which animals live. Since, therefore, not only is the nourishment altered by the creature nourished, but the latter itself also undergoes some slight alteration, this slight alteration must necessarily become considerable in the course of time, and thus properties resulting from prolonged habit must come to be on a par with natural properties."

Galen fails to see the possibility that the "natural" properties themselves originated in this way, as activities which gradually became habitual—that is to say, that the effects of nurture may become a "second nature," and so eventually nature itself.

The whole passage, however, may be commended to modern biologists—particularly, might one say, to those bacteriologists who have not yet realised how extraordinarily relative is the term "specificity" when applied to the subject-matter of their science.

xxxi
INTRODUCTION

particularly to deductive reasoning. Examples of an almost Euclidean method of argument may be found in the Natural Faculties (e.g. Book III. chap. i.). While this method undoubtedly gave him much help in his search for truth, it also not unfrequently led him astray. This is evidenced by his attempt, already noted, to apply the biological principle of the φύσις in physics. Characteristic examples of attempts to force facts to fit premises will be found in Book II. chap. ix., where our author demonstrates that yellow bile is “virtually” dry, and also, by a process of exclusion, assigns to the spleen the function of clearing away black bile. Strangest of all is his attempt to prove that the same principle of specific attraction by which the ultimate tissues nourish themselves (and the lodestone attracts iron!) accounts for the reception of food into the stomach, of urine into the kidneys, of bile into the gall-bladder, and of semen into the uterus.

These instances are given, however, without prejudice to the system of generalisation and deduction which, in Galen’s hands, often proved exceedingly fruitful. He is said to have tried “to unite professional and scientific medicine with a philosophic link.” He objected, however, to such extreme attempts at simplification of medical science as that of the Methodists, to whom diseases were isolated entities, without any relationships in time or space (v. p. xv. supra).

He based much of his pathological reasoning upon
INTRODUCTION

the "humoral theory" of Hippocrates, according to which certain diseases were caused by one or more of the four humours (blood, phlegm, black and yellow bile) being in excess—that is, by various dyscrasiae. Our modern conception of "hormone" action shows certain resemblances with this theory.

Besides observation and reasoning, Galen took his stand on experiment; he was one of the first of experimental physiologists, as is illustrated in the present book by his researches into the function of the kidneys (p. 59 et seq.). He also conducted a long series of experiments into the physiology of the spinal cord, to determine what parts controlled movement and what sensibility.

As a practitioner he modelled his work largely on the broad and simple lines laid down by Hippocrates. He had also at his disposal all the acquisitions of biological science dating from the time of Aristotle five hundred years earlier, and reinforced by the discoveries in anatomy made by the Alexandrian school. To these he added a large series of researches of his own.

Galen never confined himself to what one might call the academic or strictly orthodox sources of information; he roamed the world over for answers to his queries. For example, we find him on his journeys between Pergamos and Rome twice visiting the island of Lemnos in order to procure some of the terra sigillata, a kind of earth which had a reputation for healing the bites of serpents and
INTRODUCTION

other wounds. At other times he visited the copper-mines of Cyprus in search for copper, and Palestine for the resin called Balm of Gilead.

By inclination and training Galen was the reverse of a "party-man." In the *Natural Faculties* (p. 55) he speaks of the bane of sectarian partizanship, "harder to heal than any itch." He pours scorn upon the ignorant "Erasistrateans" and "Asclepiadeans," who attempted to hide their own incompetence under the shield of some great man's name (cf. p. 141).

Of the two chief objects of his censure in the *Natural Faculties*, Galen deals perhaps less rigorously with Erasistratus than with Asclepiades. Erasistratus did at least recognize the existence of a vital principle in the organism, albeit, with his eye on the structures which the scalpel displayed he tended frequently to forget it. The researches of the anatomical school of Alexandria had been naturally of the greatest service to surgery, but in medicine they sometimes had a tendency to check progress by diverting attention from the whole to the part.

Another novel conception frequently occurring in Galen's writings is that of the *Pneuma* (*i.e.* the breath, *spiritus*). This word is used in two senses, as meaning (1) the inspired air, which was drawn into the left side of the heart and thence carried all over the body by the arteries; this has not a few analogies with oxygen, particularly as its action in the tissues...
INTRODUCTION

is attended with the appearance of the so-called "innate heat." (2) A vital principle, conceived as being made up of matter in the most subtle imaginable state (i.e. air). This vital principle became resolved into three kinds: (a) πνεῦμα φυσικὸν or spiritus naturalis, carried by the veins, and presiding over the subconscious vegetative life; this "natural spirit" is therefore practically equivalent to the φύσις or "nature" itself. (b) The πνεῦμα ζωτικὸν or spiritus vitalis; here particularly is a source of error, since the air already alluded to as being carried by the arteries tends to be confused with this principle of "individuality" or relative autonomy in the circulatory (including, perhaps, the vasomotor) system. (c) The πνεῦμα ψυχικὸν or spiritus animalis (anima = ψυχή), carried by longitudinal canals in the nerves; this corresponds to the ψυχή.

This view of a "vital principle" as necessarily consisting of matter in a finely divided, fluid, or "etheric" state is not unknown even in our day. Belief in the fundamental importance of the Pneuma formed the basis of the teaching of another vitalist school in ancient Greece, that of the Pneumatists.

It is unnecessary to detail here the various ways in which Galen's physiological views differ from those of the Moderns, as most of these are noticed in footnotes to the text of the present translation. His ignorance of the circulation of the blood does not lessen the force of his general physiological conclu-
INTRODUCTION

sions to the extent that might be anticipated. In his opinion, the great bulk of the blood travelled with a to-and-fro motion in the veins, while a little of it, mixed with inspired air, moved in the same way along the arteries; whereas we now know that all the blood goes outward by the arteries and returns by the veins; in either case blood is carried to the tissues by blood-vessels, and Galen’s ideas of tissue-nutrition were wonderfully sound. The ingenious method by which (in ignorance of the pulmonary circulation) he makes blood pass from the right to the left ventricle, may be read in the present work (p. 321). As will be seen, he was conversant with the “anastomoses” between the ultimate branches of arteries and veins, although he imagined that they were not used under “normal” conditions.

Galen was not only a man of great intellectual gifts, but one also of strong moral fibre. In his short treatise “That the best Physician is also a Philosopher” he outlines his professional ideals. It is necessary for the efficient healer to be versed in the three branches of “philosophy,” viz.: (a) logic, the science of how to think; (b) physics, the science of what is—i.e. of “Nature” in the widest sense; (c) ethics, the science of what to do. The amount of toil which he who wishes to be a physician must undergo—firstly, in mastering the work of his predecessors and afterwards in studying disease at first hand—makes it absolutely necessary that he should
INTRODUCTION

possess perfect self-control, that he should scorn money and the weak pleasures of the senses, and should live laborious days.

Readers of the following pages will notice that Galen uses what we should call distinctly immoderate language towards those who ventured to differ from the views of his master Hippocrates (which were also his own). The employment of such language was one of the few weaknesses of his age which he did not transcend. Possibly also his mother's choleric temper may have predisposed him to it.

The fact, too, that his vivisection experiments (e.g. pp. 59, 273) were carried out apparently without any kind of anaesthetisation being even thought of is abhorrent to the feelings of to-day, but must be excused also on the ground that callousness towards animals was then customary, men having probably never thought much about the subject.

Galen is a master of language, using a highly polished variety of Attic prose with a precision which can be only very imperfectly reproduced in another tongue. Every word he uses has an exact and definite meaning attached to it. Translation is particularly difficult when a word stands for a physiological conception which is not now held; instances are the words anadosis, prosthesis, and prosphysis, indicating certain steps in the process by which nutriment is conveyed from the alimentary canal to the tissues.

xxxvii
INTRODUCTION

Readers will be surprised to find how many words are used by Galen which they would have thought had been expressly coined to fit modern conceptions; thus our author employs not merely such terms as physiology, phthisis, atrophy, anastomosis, but also haematopoietic, anaesthesia, and even aseptic! It is only fair, however, to remark that these terms, particularly the last, were not used by Galen in quite their modern significance.

Summary. To resume, then: What contribution can Galen bring to the art of healing at the present day? It was not, surely, for nothing that the great Pergamene gave laws to the medical world for over a thousand years!

Let us draw attention once more to:

(1) The high ideal which he set before the profession.

(2) His insistence on immediate contact with nature as the primary condition for arriving at an understanding of disease; on the need for due consideration of previous authorities; on the need also for reflection—for employment of the mind’s eye (ἡ λογικὴ θεωρία) as an aid to the physical eye.

(3) His essentially broad outlook, which often helped him in the comprehension of a phenomenon through his knowledge of an analogous phenomenon in another field of nature.

xxxviii
INTRODUCTION

(4) His keen appreciation of the unity of the organism, and of the inter-dependence of its parts; his realisation that the vital phenomena (physiological and pathological) in a living organism can only be understood when considered in relation to the environment of that organism or part. This is the foundation for the war that Galen waged à outrance on the Methodists, to whom diseases were things without relation to anything. This dispute is, unfortunately, not touched upon in the present volume. What Galen combated was the tendency, familiar enough in our own day, to reduce medicine to the science of finding a label for each patient, and then treating not the patient, but the label. (This tendency, we may remark in parenthesis, is one which is obviously well suited for the standardising purposes of a State medical service, and is therefore one which all who have the weal of the profession at heart must most jealously watch in the difficult days that lie ahead.)

(5) His realisation of the inappropriateness and inadequacy of physical formulae in explaining physiological activities. Galen's disputes with Asclepiades over τὰ πρῶτα ἔκεῖνα σώματα τὰ ἀπαθή, over the ἄναρμα στοιχεῖα καὶ ληπόδες ὀγκῶν, is but another aspect of his quarrel with the Methodists regarding their pathological "units," whose primary characteristic was just this same ἀπάθεια (impassiveness to environment, "unimpressionability"). We have of course
INTRODUCTION

Our Physiatric or Iatromechanical school at the present day, to whom such processes as absorption from the alimentary canal, the respiratory interchange of gases, and the action of the renal epithelium are susceptible of a purely physical explanation.¹

(6) His quarrel with the Anatomists, which was in essence the same as that with the Atomists, and which arose from his clear realisation that that primary and indispensable desideratum, a view of the whole, could never be obtained by a mere summation of partial views; hence, also, his sense of the dangers which would beset the medical art if it were allowed to fall into the hands of a mere crowd of competing specialists without any organising head to guide them.

¹ In terms of filtration, diffusion, and osmosis.
BIBLIOGRAPHY

CODICES


TRANSLATIONS

Arabic translations by Honain in the Escurial Library, and
in the Library at Leyden. Hebrew translation in the
Library at Bonn. Latin translations in the Library of
Gonville and Caius College (MSS.), No. 947; also by
Linacre in editions published, London, 1523; Paris,
1528; Leyden, 1540, 1548, and 1550; also by C. G. Kühn,
Leipzig, 1821.

COMMENTARIES AND APPRECIATIONS

Nic. de Anglia in Bib. Nat. Paris (MSS.), No. 7015; J.
Rochon, ibidem, No. 7025; J. Segarra, 1528; J. Sylvius,
1550, 1560; L. Joubert, 1599; M. Sebitz, 1644, 1645;
J. B. Pacuvius, 1554; J. C. G. Ackermann, 1821, in
the introduction to Kühn's translation, p. lxxx; Ilberg
in articles on "Die Schriftstellerei des Klaudios
Galenos," in Rhein. Mus., Nos. 44, 47, 51, and 52
(years 1889, 1892, 1896 and 1897); I. von Mueller in
Questiones Criticae de Galeni libris, Erlangen, 1871;
Steinschneider in Virchow's Archiv, No. cxxiv. for
1891; Wenrich in De auctorum graecorum versionibus
et commentariis syriacis, arabicis, armiacis, persisque,
Leipzig, 1842.
SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

BOOK I

Chapter I

Distinction between the effects of (a) the organism's psyche or soul (b) its physis or nature. The author proposes to confine himself to a consideration of the latter—the vegetative—aspect of life.

Chapter II

Definition of terms. Different kinds of motion. Alteration or qualitative change. Refutation of the Sophists' objection that such change is only apparent, not real. The four fundamental qualities of Hippocrates (later Aristotle). Distinction between faculty, activity (function), and effect (work or product).

Chapter III

It is by virtue of the four qualities that each part functions. Some authorities subordinate the dry and the moist principles to the hot and the cold. Aristotle inconsistent here.

Chapter IV

We must suppose that there are faculties corresponding in number to the visible effects (or products) with which we are familiar.

Chapter V

Genesis, growth, and nutrition. Genesis (embryogeny) subdivided into histogenesis and organogenesis. Growth is a tridimensional expansion of the solid parts formed during genesis. Nutrition.
SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

CHAPTER VI

The process of genesis (embryogeny) from insemination onwards. Each of the simple, elementary, homogeneous parts (tissues) is produced by a special blend of the four primary alterative faculties (such secondary alterative faculties being osteopoietic, neuropoietic, etc.). A special function and use also corresponds to each of these special tissues. The bringing of these tissues together into organs and the disposal of these organs is performed by another faculty called diaplastic, moulding, or formative.

CHAPTER VII

We now pass from genesis to growth. Growth essentially a post-natal process; it involves two factors, expansion and nutrition, explained by analogy of a familiar child’s game.

CHAPTER VIII

Nutrition.

CHAPTER IX

These three primary faculties (genesis, growth, nutrition) have various others subservient to them.

CHAPTER X

Nutrition not a simple process. (1) Need of subsidiary organs for the various stages of alteration, e.g., of bread into blood, of that into bone, etc. (2) Need also of organs for excreting the non-utilizable portions of the food, e.g., much vegetable matter is superfluous. (3) Need of organs of a third kind, for distributing the pabulum through the body.

CHAPTER XI

Nutrition analysed into the stages of application (prosthesia), adhesion (prophysia), and assimilation. The stages illustrated by certain pathological conditions. Different shades of meaning of the term nutriment.
SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

CHAPTER XII

The two chief medico-philosophical schools—Atomist and Vitalist. Hippocrates an adherent of the latter school—his doctrine of an original principle or "nature" in every living thing (doctrine of the unity of the organism).

CHAPTER XIII

Failure of Asclepiades to understand the functions of kidneys and ureters. His hypothesis of vaporization of imbibed fluids is here refuted. A demonstration of urinary secretion in the living animal; the forethought and artistic skill of Nature vindicated. Refutation also of Asclepiades's disbelief in the special selective action of purgative drugs.

CHAPTER XIV

While Asclepiades denies in toto the obvious fact of specific attraction, Epicurus grants the fact, although his attempt to explain it by the atomic hypothesis breaks down. Refutation of the Epicurean theory of magnetic attraction. Instances of specific attraction of thorns and animal poisons by medicaments, of moisture by corn, etc.

CHAPTER XV

It now being granted that the urine is secreted by the kidneys, the rationale of this secretion is enquired into. The kidneys are not mechanical filters, but are by virtue of their nature possessed of a specific faculty of attraction.

CHAPTER XVI

Erasistratus, again, by his favourite principle of horror vacui could never explain the secretion of urine by the kidneys. While, however, he acknowledged that the kidneys do secrete urine, he makes no attempt to explain this; he ignores, but does not attempt to refute, the Hippocratic doctrine of specific attraction. "Servile" position taken up by Asclepiades and Erasistratus in regard to this function of urinary secretion.
SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

Chapter XVII

Three other attempts (by adherents of the Erasistratean school and by Lycus of Macedonia) to explain how the kidneys come to separate out urine from the blood. All these ignore the obvious principle of attraction.

Book II

Chapter I

In order to explain dispersal of food from alimentary canal via the veins (anadosis) there is no need to invoke with Erasistratus, the horror vacui, since here again the principle of specific attraction is operative; moreover, blood is also driven forward by the compressing action of the stomach and the contractions of the veins. Possibility, however, of Erasistratus's factor playing a certain minor rôle.

Chapter II

The Erasistratean idea that bile becomes separated out from the blood in the liver because, being the thinner fluid, it alone can enter the narrow stomata of the bile-ducts, while the thicker blood can only enter the wider mouths of the hepatic venules.

Chapter III

The morphological factors suggested by Erasistratus are quite inadequate to explain biological happenings. Erasistratus inconsistent with his own statements. The immanence of the physis or nature; her shaping is not merely external like that of a statuary, but involves the entire substance. In genesis (embryogeny) the semen is the active, and the menstrual blood the passive, principle. Attractive, alterative, and formative faculties of the semen. Embryogeny is naturally followed by growth; these two functions distinguished.
SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

Chapter IV

Unjustified claim by Erasistrateans that their founder had associations with the Peripatetic (Aristotelian) school. The characteristic physiological tenets of that school (which were all anticipated by Hippocrates) in no way agree with those of Erasistratus, save that both recognize the purposefulness of Nature; in practice, however, Erasistratus assumed numerous exceptions to this principle. Difficulty of understanding why he rejected the biological principle of attraction in favour of anatomical factors.

Chapter V

A further difficulty raised by Erasistratus's statement regarding secretion of bile in the liver.

Chapter VI

The same holds with nutrition. Even if we grant that veins may obtain their nutrient blood by virtue of the horror vacui (chap. i.), how could this explain the nutrition of nerves? Erasistratus's hypothesis of minute elementary nerves and vessels within the ordinary visible nerves simply throws the difficulty further back. And is Erasistratus's minute "simple" nerve susceptible of further analysis, as the Atomists would assume? If so, this is opposed to the conception of a constructive and artistic Nature which Erasistratus himself shares with Hippocrates and the writer. And if his minute nerve is really elementary and not further divisible, then it cannot, according to his own showing, contain a cavity; therefore the horror vacui does not apply to it. And how could this principle apply to the restoration to its original bulk of a part which had become thin through disease, where more matter must become attached than runs away? A quotation from Erasistratus shows that he did acknowledge an "attraction," although not exactly in the Hippocratic sense.
SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

CHAPTER VII

In the last resort, the ultimate living elements (Erasistratus's simple vessels) must draw in their food by virtue of an inherent attractive faculty like that which the lodestone exerts on iron. Thus the process of anadosis, from beginning to end, can be explained without assuming a horror vacui.

CHAPTER VIII

Erasistratus's disregard for the humours. In respect to excessive formation of bile, however, prevention is better than cure; accordingly we must consider its pathology. Does blood pre-exist in the food, or does it come into existence in the body? Erasistratus's purely anatomical explanation of dropsy. He entirely avoids the question of the four qualities (e.g. the importance of innate heat) in the generation of the humours, etc. Yet the problem of blood-production is no less important than that of gastric digestion. Proof that bile does not pre-exist in the food. The four fundamental qualities of Hippocrates and Aristotle. How the humours are formed from food taken into the veins: when heat is in proportionate amount, blood results; when in excess, bile; when deficient, phlegm. Various conditions determining cold or warm temperaments. The four primary diseases result each from excess of one of the four qualities. Erasistratus unwillingly acknowledges this when he ascribes the indigestion occurring in fever to impaired function of the stomach. For what causes this functio laesa? Proof that it is the fever (excess of innate heat).

If, then, heat plays so important a part in abnormal functioning, so must it also in normal (i.e. causes of eucrasia involved in those of dyserasia, of physiology in those of pathology). A like argument explains the genesis of the humours. Addition of warmth to things already warm makes them bitter; thus honey turns to bile in people who are already warm; where warmth deficient, as in old people, it turns to useful blood. This is a proof that bile does not pre-exist, as such, in the food.

xlviii
SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

CHAPTER IX

The functions of organs also depend on the way in which the four qualities are mixed—e.g. the contracting function of the stomach. Treatment only possible when we know the causes of errors of function. The Erasistrateans practically Empiricists in this respect. On an appreciation of the meaning of a dyscrasia follows naturally the Hippocratic principle of treating opposites by opposites (e.g. cooling the overheated stomach, warming it when chilled, etc.). Useless in treatment to know merely the function of each organ; we must know the bodily condition which upsets this function. Blood is warm and moist. Yellow bile is warm and (virtually, though not apparently) dry. Phlegm is cold and moist. The fourth possible combination (cold and dry) is represented by black bile. For the clearing out of this humour from the blood, Nature has provided the spleen—an organ which, according to Erasistratus, fulfils no purpose. Proof of the importance of the spleen is the jaundice, toxaemia, etc., occurring when it is diseased. Erasistratus's failure to mention the views of leading authorities on this organ shows the hopelessness of his position. The Hippocratic view has now been demonstrated deductively and inductively. The classical view as to the generation of the humours. Normal and pathological forms of yellow and black bile. Part played by the innate heat in their production. Other kinds of bile are merely transition-stages between these extreme types. Abnormal forms removed by liver and spleen respectively. Phlegm, however, does not need a special excretory organ, as it can undergo entire metabolism in the body.

Need for studying the works of the Ancients carefully, in order to reach a proper understanding of this subject.

xlix

GALEN

d
SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

BOOK III

Chapter I

A recapitulation of certain points previously demonstrated. Every part of the animal has an attractive and an alterative (assimilative) faculty; it attracts the nutrient juice which is proper to it. Assimilation is preceded by adhesion (*prosphysis*) and that again, by application (*prosthesis*). Application the goal of attraction. It would not, however, be followed by adhesion and assimilation if each part did not also possess a faculty for *retaining in position* the nutriment which has been applied. *A priori* necessity for this retentive faculty.

Chapter II

The same faculty to be proved *a posteriori*. Its corresponding function (i.e. the activation of this faculty or potentiality) well seen in the large hollow organs, notably the uterus and stomach.

Chapter III

Exercise of the retentive faculty particularly well seen in the uterus. Its object is to allow the embryo to attain full development; this being completed, a new faculty—the explosive—hitherto quiescent, comes into play. Characteristic signs and symptoms of pregnancy. Tight grip of uterus on growing embryo, and accurate closure of os uteri during operation of the retentive faculty. Dilatation of os and explosive activities of uterus at full term, or when foetus dies. Prolapse from undue exercise of this faculty. *Rôle* of the midwife. Accessory muscles in parturition.

Chapter IV

Same two faculties seen in stomach. *Gurglings* or *borborygmi* show that this organ is weak and is not gripping its contents tightly enough. Undue delay of food in a weak
SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

stomach proved not to be due to narrowness of pylorus: length of stay depends on whether digestion (another instance of the characteristically vital process of alteration) has taken place or not. Erasistratus wrong in attributing digestion merely to the mechanical action of the stomach walls. When digestion completed, then pylorus opens and allows contents to pass downwards, just as os uteri when development of embryo completed.

CHAPTER V

If attraction and elimination always proceeded pari passu, the content of these hollow organs (including gall-bladder and urinary bladder) would never vary in amount. A retentive faculty, therefore, also logically needed. Its existence demonstrated. Expulsion determined by qualitative and quantitative changes of contents. "Diarrhoea" of stomach. Vomiting.

CHAPTER VI

Every organic part has an appetite and aversion for the qualities which are appropriate and foreign to it respectively. Attraction necessarily leads to a certain benefit received. This again necessitates retention.

CHAPTER VII

Interaction between two bodies; the stronger masters the weaker; a deleterious drug masters the forces of the body, whereas food is mastered by them; this mastery is an alteration, and the amount of alteration varies with the different organs; thus a partial alteration is effected in mouth by saliva, but much greater in stomach, where not only gastric juice, but also bile, pneuma, innate heat (i.e. oxidation?), and other powerful factors are brought to bear on it; need of considerable alteration in stomach
SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

as a transition-stage between food and blood; appearance of faeces in intestine another proof of great alteration effected in stomach. Asclepiades's denial of real qualitative change in stomach rebutted. Erasistratus's denial that digestion in any way resembles a boiling process comes from his taking words too literally.

CHAPTER VIII

Erasistratus denies that the stomach exerts any pull in the act of swallowing. That he is wrong, however, is proved by the anatomical structure of the stomach—its inner coat with longitudinal fibres obviously acts as a *vis a fronte* (attraction), whilst its outer coat exercises through the contraction of its circular fibres a *vis a tergo* (propulsion); the latter also comes into play in vomiting. The stomach uses the oesophagus as a kind of hand, to draw in its food with. The functions of the two coats proved also by vivisection. Swallowing cannot be attributed merely to the force of gravity.

CHAPTER IX

These four faculties which subserve nutrition are thus apparent in many different parts of the body.

CHAPTER X

Need for elaborating the statements of the ancient physicians. Superiority of Ancients to Moderns. This state of affairs can only be rectified by a really efficient education of youth. The chief requisites of such an education.

CHAPTER XI

For the sake of the few who really wish truth, the argument will be continued. A third kind of fibre—the *oblique*—subserves retention; the way in which this fibre is disposed in different coats.
SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

CHAPTER XII

The factor which brings the expulsive faculty into action is essentially a condition of the organ or its contents which is the reverse of that which determined attraction. Analogy between abortion and normal parturition. Whatever produces discomfort must be expelled. That discomfort also determines expulsion of contents from gall-bladder is not so evident as in the case of stomach, uterus, urinary bladder, etc., but can be logically demonstrated.

CHAPTER XIII

Expulsion takes place through the same channel as attraction (e.g., in stomach, gall-bladder, uterus). Similarly the delivery (anadosis) of nutriment to the liver from the food-canal via the mesenteric veins may have its direction reversed. Continuous give-and-take between different parts of the body; superior strength of certain parts is natural, of others acquired. When liver contains abundant food and stomach depleted, latter may draw on former; this occurs when animal can get nothing to eat, and so prevents starvation. Similarly, when one part becomes over-distended, it tends to deposit its excess in some weaker part near it; this passes it on to some still weaker part, which cannot get rid of it; hence deposits of various kinds. Further instances of reversal of the normal direction of anadosis from the food canal through the veins. Such reversal of functions would in any case be expected a priori. In the vomiting of intestinal obstruction, matter may be carried backwards all the way from the intestine to the mouth; not surprising, therefore, that, under certain circumstances, food-material might be driven right back from the skin-surface to the alimentary canal (e.g. in excessive chilling of surface); not much needed to determine this reversal of direction. Action of purgative drugs upon terminals of veins; one part draws from another until whole body participates; similarly in intestinal obstruction, each part passes on the irritating substance to its weaker...
SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

neighbour. Reversal of direction of flow occurs not merely on occasion but also constantly (as in arteries, lungs, heart, etc.). The various stages of normal nutrition described. Why the stomach sometimes draws back the nutriment it had passed on to portal veins and liver. A similar ebb and flow in relation to the spleen. Comparison of the parts of the body to a lot of animals at a feast. The valves of the heart are a provision of Nature to prevent this otherwise inevitable regurgitation, though even they are not quite efficient.

CHAPTER XIV

The superficial arteries, when they dilate, draw in air from the atmosphere, and the deeper ones a fine, vaporous blood from the veins and heart. Lighter matter such as air will always be drawn in in preference to heavier; this is why the arteries in the food-canal draw in practically none of the nutrient matter contained in it.

CHAPTER XV

The two kinds of attraction—the mechanical attraction of dilating bellows and the "physical" (vital) attraction by living tissue of nutrient matter which is specifically allied or appropriate to it. The former kind—that resulting from horror vacui—acts primarily on light matter, whereas vital attraction has no essential concern with such mechanical factors. A hollow organ exercises, by virtue of its cavity, the former kind of attraction, and by virtue of the living tissue of its walls, the second kind. Application of this to question of contents of arteries; anastomoses of arteries and veins. Foramina in inter-ventricular septum of heart, allowing some blood to pass from right to left ventricle. Large size of aorta probably due to fact that it not merely carries the pneuma received from the lungs, but also some of the blood which percolates through septum from right ventricle. Thus arteries carry not merely pneuma, but also some light vaporous blood, which certain parts need more.

liv
SYNOPSIS OF CHAPTERS

than the ordinary thick blood of the veins. The organic parts must have their blood-supply sufficiently near to allow them to absorb it; comparison with an irrigation system in a garden. Details of the process of nutrition in the ultimate specific tissues; some are nourished from the blood directly; in others a series of intermediate stages must precede complete assimilation; for example, marrow is an intermediate stage between blood and bone.

From the generalisations arrived at in the present work we can deduce the explanation of all kinds of particular phenomena; an instance is given, showing the co-operation of various factors previously discussed.
GALEN

ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES

BOOK I
ΓΑΛΗΝΟΥ
ΠΕΡΙ ΦΥΣΙΚΩΝ ΔΤΝΑΜΕΩΝ

Α

Ι

Κ. Π. Ἕπειδή τὸ μὲν αἰσθάνεσθαι τε καὶ κινεῖσθαι κατὰ προαίρεσιν ἰδιὰ τῶν ζῴων ἐστὶ, τὸ δ’ αὐξάνεσθαι τε καὶ τρέφεσθαι κοινὰ καὶ τοῖς φυτοῖς, εἰ δὲ τὰ μὲν πρῶτα τῆς ψυχῆς, τὰ δὲ δεύτερα τῆς φύσεως ἔργα. εἰ δὲ τις καὶ τοῖς φυτοῖς ψυχῆς μεταδίδωσι καὶ διαιροῦμενος αὐτὰς ὀνομάζει φυτικὴν μὲν ταύτην, αἰσθητικὴν δὲ τὴν ἑτέραν, λέγει μὲν οὐδ’ οὕτως ἄλλα, τῇ λέξει δ’ οὐ πάνυ τῇ συνήθει κέχρηται. ἀλλ’ ἡμεῖς γε μεγίστην λέξεως ἀρετὴν σαφῆμεν εἶναι πε- 2 πεισμένου καὶ ταύτην εἰδότας || ὑπ’ οὐδενὸς οὕτως ὡς ὑπὸ τῶν ἀσυνήθων ὀνομάτων διαφθειρομένην, ὡς τοῖς πολλοῖς ἔθοσ, οὕτως ὀνομάζοντες ὑπὸ μὲν ψυχῆς θ’ ἀμα καὶ φύσεως τὰ ζώα διουκεῖσθαι φαμέν, ὑπὸ δὲ φύσεως μόνης τὰ φυτὰ καὶ τὸ γ’ αὐξάνεσθαι τε καὶ τρέφεσθαι φύσεως ἔργα φαμέν, οὐ ψυχῆς.

¹ That is, “On the Natural Powers,” the powers of the Physis or Nature. By that Galen practically means what we should call the physiological or biological powers, the characteristic faculties of the living organism; his Physis is the subconscious vital principle of the animal or plant.
Galen

On the Natural Faculties

Book I

I

Since feeling and voluntary motion are peculiar to animals, whilst growth and nutrition are common to plants as well, we may look on the former as effects of the soul and the latter as effects of the nature. And if there be anyone who allows a share in soul to plants as well, and separates the two kinds of soul, naming the kind in question vegetative, and the other sensory, this person is not saying anything else, although his language is somewhat unusual. We, however, for our part, are convinced that the chief merit of language is clearness, and we know that nothing detracts so much from this as do unfamiliar terms; accordingly we employ those terms which the bulk of people are accustomed to use, and we say that animals are governed at once by their soul and by their nature, and plants by their nature alone, and that growth and nutrition are the effects of nature, not of soul.

Like Aristotle, however, he also ascribes quasi-vital properties to inanimate things, cf. Introduction, p. xxvii.

2 Ergon, here rendered an effect, is literally a work or deed; strictly speaking, it is something done, completed, as distinguished from energeia, which is the actual doing, the activity which produces this ergon, cf. p. 13, and Introduction, p. xxx.

3 Gk. psyche, Lat. anima. 4 Gk. physis, Lat. natura.
Καὶ ξητήσομεν κατὰ τόνδε τῶν λόγων, ὑπὸ τῶν γίγνεται δυνάμεων αὐτὰ δὴ ταῦτα καὶ εἴ δὴ τι ἄλλο φύσεως ἔργον ἔστιν.

'Αλλὰ πρῶτον γε διειλέσθαι τε χρὴ καὶ μηνύσαι σαφῶς ἐκαστὸν τῶν ὄνομάτων, τις χρησόμεθα κατὰ τόνδε τῶν λόγων, καὶ ἐφ' ὃ τι φέρομεν πράγμα. γενήσεται δὲ τούτ' εὐθὺς ἔργων φυσικῶν διδασκαλία σὺν ταῖς τῶν ὄνομάτων εξηγήσεσιν.

"Οταν οὖν τι σῶμα κατὰ μηδὲν ἔξαλλάττηται τῶν προὐπαρχόντων, ἢσυχάζειν αὐτὸ φαμεν· εἰ δὲ ἑξίστατό πη, κατ' ἐκείνο κινεῖσθαι. καὶ τοίνυν ἐπεὶ πολυειδῶς ἑξίσταται, πολυειδῶς καὶ κινηθήσεται. καὶ γὰρ εἰ λευκὸν ὑπάρχον μελαῖνοιτο καὶ εἰ μέλαινα λευκαίνοιτο, κινεῖται κατὰ χρόνον, καὶ εἰ γλυκύ τέως ὑπάρχον αὕθις ἡ ἑμπαλίν ἐξ αὐστηροῦ γλυκύ γένοιτο, καὶ τούτ' ἄν κινεῖσθαι λέγοιτο κατὰ τῶν χυμόν. ἀμφοὶ δὲ ταῦτα τε καὶ τὰ προειρημένα κατὰ τὴν ποιότητα κινεῖσθαι λεχθήσεται καὶ οὐ μόνον γε τὰ κατὰ τὴν χρόνον ἢ τὸν χυμὸν ἔξαλλαττόμενα κινεῖσθαι φαμεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ θερμότερον ἐκ ψυχρότερου γενόμενον ἢ ψυχρότερον ἐκ θερμοτέρου κινεῖσθαι καὶ τοῦτο λέγομεν, ὡσπερ γε καὶ εἰ τι ξηρὸν ἐξ
II

Thus we shall enquire, in the course of this treatise, from what faculties these effects themselves, as well as any other effects of nature which there may be, take their origin.

First, however, we must distinguish and explain clearly the various terms which we are going to use in this treatise, and to what things we apply them; and this will prove to be not merely an explanation of terms but at the same time a demonstration of the effects of nature.

When, therefore, such and such a body undergoes no change from its existing state, we say that it is at rest; but, if it departs from this in any respect we then say that in this respect it undergoes motion.\(^1\) Accordingly, when it departs in various ways from its pre-existing state, it will be said to undergo various kinds of motion. Thus, if that which is white becomes black, or what is black becomes white, it undergoes motion in respect to colour; or if what was previously sweet now becomes bitter, or, conversely, from being bitter now becomes sweet, it will be said to undergo motion in respect to flavour; to both of these instances, as well as to those previously mentioned, we shall apply the term qualitative motion. And further, it is not only things which are altered in regard to colour and flavour which, we say, undergo motion; when a warm thing becomes cold, and a cold warm, here too we speak of its undergoing motion; similarly also when any-

\(^1\) Motion (kinesis) is Aristotle’s general term for what we would rather call change. It includes various kinds of change, as well as movement proper. cf. Introduction, p. xxix.
ünde ή ύγρον ἐκ ξηροῦ γάγυνοιτο. κοινὸν δὲ κατὰ τούτων ἀπάντων ὄνομα φέρομεν τὴν ἄλλοισιν.

"Εν τι τούτο γένος κινήσεως. ἔτερον δὲ γένος ἐπὶ τοὺς τὰς χώρας ὑμεῖσθοι σώμασι καὶ τόπουν ἐκ τόπου μεταλλάττειν λεγομένους, ὄνομα δὲ καὶ τούτῳ φορά.

Αὐταὶ μὲν οὖν αἱ δύο κινήσεις ἀπλαί καὶ πρώται, σύνθετοι δ' εἰς αὐτῶν αὐξησίς τε καὶ φθίσις, ὅταν εἰς ἐλάπτονός τι μείζον ἢ ἕκ μεῖζονς ἐλαττὸν γενηται φυλάττον τὸ οἰκεῖον εἶδος. ἔτεραι δὲ δύο κινήσεις γένεσις καὶ φθορά, γένεσις μὲν ἢ εἰς οὐσίαν ἄγωγη, φθορά δ' ἡ ἐναντία.

Πάσαις δὲ ταῖς κινήσεις κοινὸν ἐξάλλαξις 4 τοῦ || προώπαρχοντος, ὡσπερ οὖν καὶ ταῖς ἡσυχίαις ἢ φυλακῇ τῶν προώπαρχόντων. ἄλλ' ὅτι μὲν ἐξαλλάττεται καὶ πρὸς τὴν ὄψιν καὶ πρὸς τὴν γενέσιν καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἁφὴν αἵμα γεγνόμενα τὰ συνία, συγχωροῦσιν' ὅτι δὲ καὶ κατ' ἀληθείαν, οὐκέτι τοῦθ' ὀμολογοῦσιν οἱ σοφισταί. οἱ μὲν γάρ τινες αὑτῶν ἀπαντα τὰ τοιαῦτα τῶν ἡμετέρων αἰσθήσεων ἀπάτας τινὰς καὶ παραγωγάς νομίζουσιν ἄλλοτ' ἄλλως πασχούσων, τῆς ὑποκειμένης οὐσίας μηδὲν τούτων, οἷς ἐπονομάζεται, δεχομένης: οἱ δὲ τινὲς εἶναι μὲν ἐν αὐτῇ νοεῖται τὰς ποιότητας, ἀμεταβλήτους δὲ καὶ ἀτρέπτους

1 “Conveyance,” “transport,” “transit”; purely mechanical or passive motion, as distinguished from alteration (qualitative change).
2 “Waxing and waning,” the latter literally phthisis, a wasting or “decline”; cf. Scotch divining, Dutch verdwijnen.
3 Becoming and perishing: Latin, generatio et corruptio.
4 “Ad substantiam productio seu ad formam processus” (Linacre).
thing moist becomes dry, or dry moist. Now, the common term which we apply to all these cases is \textit{alteration}.

This is one kind of motion. But there is another kind which occurs in bodies which change their position, or as we say, pass from one place to another; the name of this is \textit{transference}.\footnote{1}

These two kinds of motion, then, are simple and primary, while compounded from them we have \textit{growth} and \textit{decay},\footnote{2} as when a small thing becomes bigger, or a big thing smaller, each retaining at the same time its particular form. And two other kinds of motion are \textit{genesis} and \textit{destruction},\footnote{3} genesis being a coming into existence,\footnote{4} and destruction being the opposite.

Now, common to all kinds of motion is \textit{change from the pre-existing state}, while common to all conditions of rest is \textit{retention of the pre-existing state}. The Sophists, however, while allowing that bread in turning into blood becomes changed as regards sight, taste, and touch, will not agree that this change occurs in reality. Thus some of them hold that all such phenomena are tricks and illusions of our senses; the senses, they say, are affected now in one way, now in another, whereas the underlying substance does not admit of any of these changes to which the names are given. Others (such as Anaxagoras)\footnote{5} will have it that the qualities do exist in it, but that they

\footnote{5}{"Preformationist" doctrine of Anaxagoras. To him the apparent alteration in qualities took place when a number of minute pre-existing bodies, all bearing the same quality, came together in sufficient numbers to impress that quality on the senses. The factor which united the minute quality-bearers was Nous. "In the beginning," says Anaxagoras, "all things existed together—then came Nous and brought them into order."}
GALEN

εξ αἰώνος εἰς αἰώνα καὶ τὰς φαινομένας ταύτας ἀλλοιώσεις τῇ διακρίσει τε καὶ συγκρίσει γιγνεσθαί φασιν ὡς Ἀναξαγόρασ.

Εἰ δὲ τούτους ἐκτραπομενος ἐξελέγχοιμι, μεῖζον αὐν μοι τὸ πάρεργον τοῦ ἑργου γένοιτο. εἰ μὲν γὰρ οὐκ ἦσασιν, δόσα περὶ τῆς καθ' ὅλην τὴν οὐσίαν ἀλλοιώσεως Ἀριστοτέλει τε καὶ μετ' αὐτὸν Χρυσίππων γέγραπται, παρακαλέσαι χρὴ τοῖς ἐκείνων αὐτοὺς ὀμιλῆσαι γράμμασιν: εἰ δὲ γιγνώσκοιτε ἐπειθ’ ἐκόντες τὰ χείρω πρὸ τῶν βελτιώνων 5 εἰροῦνται, μᾶταια δὴπον καὶ τὰ ἡμέτερα νομούσιν. ὅτι δὲ καὶ Ἰπποκράτης οὕτως ἐγιγνωσκεν Ἀριστοτέλεως ἐτὶ πρῶτος ὄν, ἐν ἐτέροις ἡμῖν ἀποδεικται. πρῶτος γὰρ οὗτος ἀπάντων ὄν ἵσμεν ἰατρῶν τε καὶ φιλοσοφῶν ἀποδεικνύεις ἐπεξειρήσεσε τέτταρας εἶναι τὰς πάσας δραστικὰς εἰς ἀλλῆλας ποιότητας, ὑφ’ ὅν γίγνεται τε καὶ φθείρεται πάνθ’, ὥσα γένεσιν τε καὶ φθορὰν ἐπιδέχεται. καὶ μὲνοι καὶ τὸ κεραυνυσθαὶ δι’ ἀλλήλων αὐτὰς ὀλας δι’ ὅλων Ἰπποκράτης ἀπάντων πρῶτος ἐγνω’ καὶ τὰς ἀρχὰς γε τῶν ἀποδείξεων, ὃν ὑστερον Ἀριστοτέλης μετεχειρίσατο, παρ’ ἐκείνῳ πρῶτῳ γεγραμμένας ἐστὶν εὑρεῖν.

Εἰ δ’ ὅσπερ τὰς ποιότητας οὕτω καὶ τὰς οὐσίας δι’ ὅλων κεραυνυσθαὶ χρῆ νομίζειν, ὡς ὑστερον ἀπεφήνατο Ζήνων ὁ Κιττιεύς, οὐχ ἤγομαι δεῖν ἐτὶ περὶ τούτου κατὰ τόνδε τὸν λόγον ἐπεξειναί. μόνην γὰρ εἰς τὰ παρόντα δέομαι γιγνώσκεσθαι

1 “De ea alteratione quae per totam fit substantiam” (Linacre).
2 The systematizer of Stoicism and successor of Zeno.
3 Note characteristic impatience with metaphysics. To Galen, as to Hippocrates and Aristotle, it sufficed to look on
are unchangeable and immutable from eternity to eternity, and that these apparent alterations are brought about by separation and combination.

Now, if I were to go out of my way to confute these people, my subsidiary task would be greater than my main one. Thus, if they do not know all that has been written, "On Complete Alteration of Substance"¹ by Aristotle, and after him by Chrysippus,² I must beg of them to make themselves familiar with these men's writings. If, however, they know these, and yet willingly prefer the worse views to the better, they will doubtless consider my arguments foolish also. I have shown elsewhere that these opinions were shared by Hippocrates, who lived much earlier than Aristotle. In fact, of all those known to us who have been both physicians and philosophers Hippocrates was the first who took in hand to demonstrate that there are, in all, four mutually interacting qualities, and that to the operation of these is due the genesis and destruction of all things that come into and pass out of being. Nay, more; Hippocrates was also the first to recognise that all these qualities undergo an intimate mingling with one another; and at least the beginnings of the proofs to which Aristotle later set his hand are to be found first in the writings of Hippocrates.

As to whether we are to suppose that the substances as well as their qualities undergo this intimate mingling, as Zeno of Citium afterwards declared, I do not think it necessary to go further into this question in the present treatise;³ for immediate purposes we only the qualitative differences apprehended by the senses as fundamental. Zeno of Citium was the founder of the Stoic school; on the further analysis by this school of the qualities into bodies cf. p. 144, note 3.
GALEN

tην δὲ όλης τῆς ούσίας ἄλλοισιν, ίνα μὴ τις ὀστοῦ καὶ σαρκὸς καὶ νεύρου καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἔκαστον μορίων οἶον ἡ μισγάγκειάν τινα τῷ ἄρτῳ
6 νομίσῃ περιέχεσθαι κάπειτ' ἐν ἑ τῷ σώματι διακρινόμενον ός τὸ ὄμοφυλον ἔκαστον ἰέναι. καί τοί πρὸ γε τῆς διακρίσεως ἀλμα φαίνεται γιγνόμενος ὁ πᾶς ἄρτος. εἰ γοῦν παμπόλλῳ τις χρόνῳ μηδὲν ἄλλῳ εἰς σιτίων προσφερόμενος, οὐδὲν ἤττον ἐν ταῖς φλεσσὶν ἀλμα περιεχόμενον ἔξει. καὶ φανερῶς τοῦτο τὴν τῶν ἀμετάβλητα τὰ στοιχεία τιθεμένων ἐξελέγχει δόξαν, ὡσπερ οἶμαι καὶ τούλαιοι εἰς τὴν τοῦ λύχνου φλόγα καταναλισκόμενον ἀπαν καὶ τὰ ξύλα πῦρ μικρὸν ὕστερον γιγνόμενα.

Καί τοί τὸ γ' ἀντιλέγειν αὐτοὺς ἡρησάμην, ἀλλ' ἐπει πῆς ἱατρικῆς ὑλῆς. ἦν τὸ παράδειγμα καὶ χρήξῳ πρὸς τὸν παρόντα λόγον αὐτοῦ, διὰ τοῦτ' ἐμνημόνευσα. καταλπόντες οὖν, ὡς ἐφην, τῆν πρὸς τούτους ἀντιλογίαν, ἐνοῦ τοῖς βουλομένως τὰ τῶν παλαιῶν ἐκμαυθάνειν καὶ δων ἥμεῖς ἰδία περὶ αὐτῶν ἐπεσκέμμεθα.

Τὸν ἐφεξῆς λόγον ἀπαντα ποιησόμεθα ζητοῦντες ὑπὲρ δὲν εἴ τῇ φρονήσεως ὑμῖν καὶ τίνες εἰσίν αἱ τῆς φύσεως δυνάμεις καὶ τί ποιεῖν ἔργον

1 A rallying-ground: lit. a place where two glens meet.
2 Thus according to Gomperz (Greek Thinkers), the hypothesis of Anaxagoras was that "the bread . . . already contained the countless forms of matter as such which the human body displays. Their minuteness of size would withdraw them from our perception. For the defect or 'weakness' of the senses is the narrowness of their receptive area.
need to recognize the complete alteration of substance. In this way, nobody will suppose that bread represents a kind of meeting-place for bone, flesh, nerve, and all the other parts, and that each of these subsequently becomes separated in the body and goes to join its own kind; before any separation takes place, the whole of the bread obviously becomes blood; (at any rate, if a man takes no other food for a prolonged period, he will have blood enclosed in his veins all the same). And clearly this disproves the view of those who consider the elements unchangeable, as also, for that matter, does the oil which is entirely used up in the flame of the lamp, or the faggots which, in a somewhat longer time, turn into fire.

I said, however, that I was not going to enter into an argument with these people, and it was only because the example was drawn from the subject-matter of medicine, and because I need it for the present treatise, that I have mentioned it. We shall then, as I said, renounce our controversy with them, since those who wish may get a good grasp of the views of the ancients from our own personal investigations into these matters.

The discussion which follows we shall devote entirely, as we originally proposed, to an enquiry into the number and character of the faculties of Nature, and what is the effect which each naturally

These elusive particles are rendered visible and tangible by the process of nutrition, which combines them."

3 Therefore the blood must have come from the bread. The food from the alimentary canal was supposed by Galen to be converted into blood in and by the portal veins. cf. p. 17.

4 By "elements" is meant all homogeneous, amorphous substances, such as metals, &c., as well as the elementary tissues.
GALEN

ἐκάστη πέψυκεν. ἔργον δὲ δῆλονότι καλῶ τὸ
7 γεγονὸς ἦδη καὶ συμπεπληρομένον ὑπὸ τῆς ἐνερ-
γείας αὐτῶν, οἷον τὸ αἷμα, τὴν σάρκα, τὸ νεῦρον·
ἐνέργειαν δὲ τὴν δραστικὴν ὅνομαξω κίνησιν καὶ
tὴν ταύτης αἰτίαν δύναμιν. ἔπει γὰρ ἐν τῷ τὸ
σιτίον αἷμα γίγνεσθαι παθητικὴ μὲν ἢ τοῦ σιτίου,
δραστικὴ δ᾿ ἢ τῆς φλεβὸς γίγνεται κίνησις, ὡσαύ-
tως δὲ κἂν τῷ μεταφέρειν τὰ κῶλα κινεῖ μὲν ὁ
μῦς, κινεῖται δὲ τὰ ὅστὰ, τὴν μὲν τῆς φλεβὸς καὶ
tῶν μυῶν κίνησιν ἐνέργειαν εἶναι φήμη, τὴν δὲ
tῶν σιτίων τε καὶ τῶν ὅστῶν συμπτωμά τε καὶ
pάθημα τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἀλλοιοῦται, τὰ δὲ φέρεται.
tὴν μὲν οὖν ἐνέργειαν ἐγχώρει καλεῖν καὶ ἔργον
τῆς φύσεως, οἷον τὴν πέψιν, τὴν ἀνάδοσιν, τὴν
αἰμάτωσιν, οὐ μὴν τὸ γ᾿ ἔργον ἐξ ἀπαντος ἐνερ-
γειαν· ἢ γὰρ τοι ἑρξὲ ἔργον μὲν ἐστὶ τῆς φύσεως,
οὐ μὴν ἐνεργειαί γε. δῆλον οὖν, ὡς θάτερον μὲν
tῶν ὀνομάτων διχῶς λέγεται, θάτερον δ᾿ οὐ.

III

Ἐμοὶ μὲν οὖν καὶ ἡ φλέψ καὶ τῶν ἀλλων
ἀπάντων ἐκαστὸν διὰ τὴν ἐκ τῶν τεττάρων ποιῶν

1 Work or product. Lat. opus. cf. p. 3, note 2.
2 Operation, activation, or functioning. Lat. actio. cf. loc. cit.
3 i.e. a concomitant (secondary) or passive affection. Galen
is contrasting active and passive "motion." cf. p. 6, note 1.
4 As already indicated, there is no exact English equiva-

lent for the Greek term physis, which is a principle immanen

12
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. II.—III

produces. Now, of course, I mean by an effect that which has already come into existence and has been completed by the activity of these faculties—for example, blood, flesh, or nerve. And activity is the name I give to the active change or motion, and the cause of this I call a faculty. Thus, when food turns into blood, the motion of the food is passive, and that of the vein active. Similarly, when the limbs have their position altered, it is the muscle which produces, and the bones which undergo the motion. In these cases I call the motion of the vein and of the muscle an activity, and that of the food and the bones a symptom or affection, since the first group undergoes alteration and the second group is merely transported. One might, therefore, also speak of the activity as an effect of Nature—for example, digestion, absorption, blood-production; one could not, however, in every case call the effect an activity; thus flesh is an effect of Nature, but it is, of course, not an activity. It is, therefore, clear that one of these terms is used in two senses, but not the other.

III

It appears to me, then, that the vein, as well as each of the other parts, functions in such and such a way according to the manner in which the four quali-
in the animal itself, whereas our term "Nature" suggests something more transcendent; we are forced often, however, to employ it in default of a better word. cf. p. 2, note 1.

5 In Greek anadosis. This process includes two stages: (1) transmission of food from alimentary canal to liver (rather more than our "absorption"); (2) further transmission from liver to tissues. Anadosis is lit. a yielding-up, a "delivery;" it may sometimes be rendered "dispersal." "Distribution" (diasodosis) is a further stage; cf. p. 163, note 4.
κράσιν ώδε πως ἐνεργεῖν δοκεῖ. εἰσὶ δὲ γε μὴν οὐκ ὁλύγοι τινὲς ἄνδρες ὄνδ' ἄδοξοι, φιλόσοφοι τε καὶ ἰατροί, τῶν μὲν θερμῷ καὶ τῶ ψυχρῷ τὸ δράν ἀναφέροντες, ὑποβάλλουτες δ' αὐτοῖς παθητικά τὸ ἕηρον τε καὶ τὸ υγρὸν. καὶ πρῶτος γ' Ἀριστοτέλης τὰς τῶν κατὰ μέρος ἀπάντων ἀιτίας εἰς ταύτας ἀνάγειν πειρᾶται τὰς ἀρχὰς, ἠκολούθησε δ' ύστερον αὐτῷ καὶ ὁ ἀπὸ τῆς στοάς χορὸς. καὶ τοι τούτων μὲν, ὥσ ἄν καὶ αὐτῶν τῶν στοιχείων την εἰς ἄλληλα μεταβολὴν χύσει τέ τισι καὶ πιλήσειν ἀναφέρουσιν, εὐλογοῦν ἡν ἀρχὰς δραστικὰς ποιήσασθαι τὸ θερμὸν καὶ τὸ ψυχρὸν, Ἀριστοτέλει δ' οὐχ οὕτως, ἀλλὰ ταῖς τέτταρσι ποιότησιν εἰς τὴν τῶν στοιχείων γένεσιν χρωμένως βέλτιον ἤν καὶ τὰς τῶν κατὰ μέρος αἰτίας ἀπάσας εἰς ταύτας ἀνάγειν. τὸ δὴντον οὖν ἐν μὲν τοῖς περὶ γενέσεως καὶ φθορᾶς ταῖς τέτταρσι χρῆται, ἐν δὲ τοῖς μεταφρολογικοῖς καὶ τοῖς προβλήμασι καὶ ἀλλοθι πολλαχόθι ταῖς δύο μόναις; εἰ μὲν γὰρ ὡς ἐν τοῖς ζῷοις τε καὶ τοῖς φυτοῖς μᾶλλον μὲν δρά τὸ θερμὸν καὶ τὸ ψυχρὸν, ἤττον δὲ τὸ ἕηρον καὶ τὸ υγρὸν ἀποφαίνοιτο τις, ἵσως ἄν ἔχοι καὶ τὸν Ἰπποκράτην σύμψηφον. εἰ δ' ὤσαυτὸς ἐν ἀπασίν, οὐκέτ' οἷμαι συγχωρήσειν τούτῳ μή ὅτι τὸν Ἰπποκράτην ἀλλὰ μὴν αὐτὸν τὸν Ἀριστοτέλην μεμνησθαι γε βουλόμενον δεν ἐν τοῖς περὶ γενέσεως καὶ φθορᾶς οὐχ ἀπλῶς ἀλλὰ μετ' ἀποδείξεως αὐτὸς ἡμᾶς ἐδίδαξεν. ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τούτων καὶ τοῖς περὶ κράσεων, εἰς ὅσον ἰατρῷ θρήσιμον, ἐπεσκεψάμεθα.

1 cf. p. 9.
ties are mixed. There are, however, a considerable number of not undistinguished men—philosophers and physicians—who refer action to the Warm and the Cold, and who subordinate to these, as passive, the Dry and the Moist; Aristotle, in fact, was the first who attempted to bring back the causes of the various special activities to these principles, and he was followed later by the Stoic school. These latter, of course, could logically make active principles of the Warm and Cold, since they refer the change of the elements themselves into one another to certain diffusions and condensations. This does not hold of Aristotle, however; seeing that he employed the four qualities to explain the genesis of the elements, he ought properly to have also referred the causes of all the special activities to these. How is it that he uses the four qualities in his book "On Genesis and Destruction," whilst in his "Meteorology," his "Problems," and many other works he uses the two only? Of course, if anyone were to maintain that in the case of animals and plants the Warm and Cold are more active, the Dry and Moist less so, he might perhaps have even Hippocrates on his side; but if he were to say that this happens in all cases, he would, I imagine, lack support, not merely from Hippocrates, but even from Aristotle himself—if, at least, Aristotle chose to remember what he himself taught us in his work "On Genesis and Destruction," not as a matter of simple statement, but with an accompanying demonstration. I have, however, also investigated these questions, in so far as they are of value to a physician, in my work "On Temperaments."

Since heat and cold tend to cause diffusion and condensation respectively.
GALEN

IV

’Η δ’ οὖν δύναμις ἢ ἐν ταῖς φλεψίν ἢ αἵματο-
ποιητικῆς προσαγορευομένη καὶ πᾶσα δ’ ἄλλη
δύναμις ἐν τῷ πρόσ τι νενόηται πρῶτως μὲν
γὰρ τῆς ἐνεργείας αἰτία, ἣδη δὲ καὶ τοῦ ἐργοῦ
κατὰ συμβεβηκός. ἀλλ’ εἶπερ ἡ αἰτία πρόσ
τι, τοῦ γὰρ ὑπ’ αὐτῆς γενομένου μόνον, τῶν δ’
ἄλλων οὐδενός, εὐδήλων, ὅτι καὶ ἡ δύναμις ἐν τῷ
πρόσ τι. καὶ μέχρι γ’ ἀν ἀγνοῶμεν τὴν οὐσίαν
τῆς ἐνεργούσης αἰτίας, δύναμιν αὐτῆς ὄνομάζομεν,
eἰναι τινα λέγοντες ἐν ταῖς φλεψίν αἵματοποιητι-
κῆς, ὠσαύτως δὲ κἂν τῇ κοιλίᾳ πεπτικήν κἂν τῇ
καρδίᾳ σφυγμικήι καὶ καθ’ ἐκαστὸν ὅλων ἁλλων
ιδιαν τινὰ τῆς || κατὰ τὸ μόριον ἐνεργείας. εἴπερ
οὖν μεθὸδο μέλλοιμεν ἐξευρήσειν, ὅποσαι τε καὶ
ὀποίαι τινες αἴ δυνάμεις εἰσίν, ἀπὸ τῶν ἐργῶν
αὐτῶν ἀρκτέων ἐκαστὸν γὰρ αὐτῶν ὑπὸ τινος
ἐνεργείας γίγνεται καὶ τούτων ἐκάστης προηγεῖται
τῆς αἰτία.

V

’Εργα τοῖνυν τῆς φύσεως ἔτι μὲν κυνομένου τε
καὶ διαπλαστομένου τοῦ ζωῆς τὰ σύμπαντ’ ἐστὶ
tοῦ σώματος μόρια, γεννηθέντος δὲ κοινὸν ἐφ’
ἀπασίν ἐργόν ἢ εἰς τὸ τέλειον ἐκάστῳ μέγεθος
ἀγωγή καὶ μετὰ ταῦθ’ ἢ μέχρι τοῦ δυνατοῦ
dιαμονῆς.
’Ἐνέργειαι δ’ ἐπὶ τρισὶ τοῖς εἰρημένοις ἐργοῖς
τρεῖς ἢ ἀνάγκης, ἐφ’ ἐκάστῳ μία, γένεσις τε καὶ
16
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. iv.–v

IV

The so-called blood-making faculty in the veins, then, as well as all the other faculties, fall within the category of relative concepts; primarily because the faculty is the cause of the activity, but also, accidentally, because it is the cause of the effect. But, if the cause is relative to something—for it is the cause of what results from it, and of nothing else—it is obvious that the faculty also falls into the category of the relative; and so long as we are ignorant of the true essence of the cause which is operating, we call it a faculty. Thus we say that there exists in the veins a blood-making faculty, as also a digestive faculty in the stomach, a pulsatile faculty in the heart, and in each of the other parts a special faculty corresponding to the function or activity of that part. If, therefore, we are to investigate methodically the number and kinds of faculties, we must begin with the effects; for each of these effects comes from a certain activity, and each of these again is preceded by a cause.

V

The effects of Nature, then, while the animal is still being formed in the womb, are all the different parts of its body; and after it has been born, an effect in which all parts share is the progress of each to its full size, and thereafter its maintenance of itself as long as possible.

The activities corresponding to the three effects mentioned are necessarily three—one to each—

1 Lit. haematopoietic. cf. p. 11, note 3.  2 Lit. peptic.
3 Lit. sphygmic.
GALEN

αύξησις καὶ θρέψις. ἀλλ’ ἡ μὲν γένεσις οὐχ ἀπλὴ τις ἐνέργεια τῆς φύσεως, ἀλλ’ εξ ἀλλοιωσεως τε καὶ διαπλάσεως ἐστὶ σύνθετος. ἦνα μὲν γὰρ ὁστοῦν γένηται καὶ νεῦρον καὶ φλέψ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἐκαστον, ἀλλοιωθαὶ χρὴ τὴν ὑποβεβλημένην οὐσίαν, εξ ὡς γίγνεται τὸ ζῷον ἦνα δὲ καὶ σχῆμα τὸ δέον καὶ θέσιν καὶ κοιλότητας τινας καὶ ἀποφύσεις καὶ συμφύσεις καὶ τἄλλα || τὰ τοιαῦτα κτήσηται, διαπλάττεσθαι χρὴ τὴν ἄλλοιοιν οὐσίαν, ἵνα δὴ καὶ ὑλὴν τοῦ ζῷου καλῶν, ὡς τῆς νεώς τὰ ξύλα καὶ τῆς εἰκόνος τῶν κηρῶν, οὐκ ἂν ἀμάρτοις.

Ἡ δ’ αύξησις ἐπίδοσις ἐστὶ καὶ διάστασις κατὰ μήκος καὶ πλάτος καὶ βάθος τῶν στερεῶν τοῦ ζῴου μορίων, ἀντερ καὶ ἡ διάπλασις ἤν, ἡ δὲ θρέψις πρόσθεσις τοῖς αὐτοῖς ἄνευ διαστάσεως.

VI

Περὶ πρώτης οὖν τῆς γενέσεως ἐπωμεν, ἣν εξ ἀλλοιώσεως θ’ ἄμα καὶ διαπλάσεως ἐλέγομεν γίγνεσθαι.

Καταβληθέντος δ’ τοῦ σπέρματος εἰς τὴν μήτραν ἢ εἰς τὴν γῆν, οὐδὲν γὰρ διαφέρει, χρόνοις τισὶν ὥρισμένοις πάμπολλα συνίσταται μόρια τῆς γεννομένης οὐσίας υγρότητι καὶ ξηρότητι καὶ ψυχρότητι καὶ θερμότητι καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπασίν,

1 Genesis corresponds to the intrauterine life, or what we may call embryogeny. Alteration here means histogenesis or tissue-production; shaping or moulding (in Greek diaplasis) means the ordering of these tissues into organs (organogenesis).
namely, Genesis, Growth, and Nutrition. Genesis, however, is not a simple activity of Nature, but is compounded of alteration and of shaping.\footnote{1} That is to say, in order that bone, nerve, veins, and all other [tissues] may come into existence, the underlying substance from which the animal springs must be altered; and in order that the substance so altered may acquire its appropriate shape and position, its cavities, outgrowths, attachments, and so forth, it has to undergo a shaping or formative process.\footnote{2} One would be justified in calling this substance which undergoes alteration the material of the animal, just as wood is the material of a ship, and wax of an image.

Growth is an increase and expansion in length, breadth, and thickness of the solid parts of the animal (those which have been subjected to the moulding or shaping process). Nutrition is an addition to these, without expansion.

VI

Let us speak then, in the first place, of Genesis, which, as we have said, results from alteration together with shaping.

The seed having been cast into the womb or into the earth (for there is no difference),\footnote{3} then, after a certain definite period, a great number of parts become constituted in the substance which is being generated; these differ as regards moisture, dryness, coldness and warmth,\footnote{4} and in all the other qualities

\footnote{2} cf. p. 25, note 4.
\footnote{3} Note inadequate analogy of semen with fertilised seeds of plants (i.e. of gamete with zygote). Strictly speaking, of course, semen corresponds to pollen. \textit{cf.} p. 130, note 2.
\footnote{4} \textit{i.e.} the four primary qualities; \textit{cf.} chap. iii. \textit{supra.}}
οσα τουτωι επεται, διαφεροντα. τα δ' έπομενα γυγνώσκεις, ειπερ ολως εφιλοσοφησας τι περι γενέσεως και φθορας· αι λοιπαι γαρ των απτων όνομαζομενων διαφορων τας ειρημεναι επονται

12 πρωται και μαλιστα, μετα δε ταυτας αι γευσται τε και ωσφηται και οραται. σκληροτης μεν ουν και μαλακοτης και γλυσχροτης και κραυροτης και κουφοτης και ωρατης και πυκνοτης και αραιοτης και λειοτης και τραχυτης και παχυτης και λεπτοτης απται διαφοραι και ειρηται περι πασων
'Αριστοτελει καλως. οισθα δε δηπον και τας γευστας τε και ωσφητας και ορατας διαφορας.

ωστε, ει μεν τας πρωτας τε και στοιχειωδεις ιλλοιωτικαις δυναμεις ξητοις, υγροτης έστι και ξηροτης και ψυχροτης και θερμοτης· ει δε τας έκ της τουτων κρασεως γενομενας, τοσαυται καθε
εκαστον έσονται χωδων, οσαπερ αν αυτου τα αισθητα στοιχεια υπαρχου καλεται δ' αισθητα στοιχεια τα ομοιωμενη παντα του σωματος μορια· και ταυτ' ουν έκ μεθοδου των άλλων αυτοτην

13 γενομενον εκμαθειν χρη δια των ανατομων.

'Οστουν δε και χονδρον και νευρον και υμενα και συνδεσμων και φλεβα και πανθ' οσα τοιαυτα κατα την πρωτην του χωδου γενεσιν η φυσις άπεργαζεται δυναμει χρωμενη καθολου μεν

eιπειν τη γεννητικη τε και ιλλοιωτικη, κατα μερος δε θερμαντικη τε και ψυχικη και ξηραν-

---

1 Various secondary or derivative differences in the tissues. Note pre-eminence of sense of touch.
2 De Anima, ii. et seq.
3 Lit. homoeomerous = of similar parts throughout, "the same all through." He refers to the elementary tissues, conceived as not being susceptible of further analysis.

20.
which naturally derive therefrom. These derivative qualities, you are acquainted with, if you have given any sort of scientific consideration to the question of genesis and destruction. For, first and foremost after the qualities mentioned come the other so-called tangible distinctions, and after them those which appeal to taste, smell, and sight. Now, tangible distinctions are hardness and softness, viscosity, friability, lightness, heaviness, density, rarity, smoothness, roughness, thickness and thinness; all of these have been duly mentioned by Aristotle. And of course you know those which appeal to taste, smell, and sight. Therefore, if you wish to know which alternative faculties are primary and elementary, they are moisture, dryness, coldness, and warmth, and if you wish to know which ones arise from the combination of these, they will be found to be in each animal of a number corresponding to its sensible elements. The name sensible elements is given to all the homogeneous parts of the body, and these are to be detected not by any system, but by personal observation or dissections.

Now Nature constructs bone, cartilage, nerve, membrane, ligament, vein, and so forth, at the first stage of the animal’s genesis, employing at this task a faculty which is, in general terms, generative and alternative, and, in more detail, warming, chilling, drying, or moistening; or such as spring from the

That is, by the bodily eye, and not by the mind’s eye. The observer is here called an autoptes or ‘eye-witness.’ Our medical term autopsy thus means literally a persona inspection of internal parts, ordinarily hidden.

i.e. “alteration” is the earlier of the two stages which constitute embryogeny or “genesis.” cf. p. 18, note 1.
GALEN

τική καὶ ύγραντική καὶ ταῖς ἐκ τῆς τοῦτον κράσεως γενομέναις, οἷον ὀστοποιητική τε καὶ
νευροποιητική καὶ χονδροποιητικὴ σαφηνείας
γάρ ἔνεκα καὶ τούτοις τοῖς ὑόμασι χρηστέον.

"Εστι γονὺν καὶ ἡ ἴδια σάρξ τοῦ ἡπατος ἐκ
tούτου τοῦ γένους καὶ ἡ τοῦ σπληνὸς καὶ ἡ τῶν
νεφρῶν καὶ ἡ τοῦ πνεύμονος καὶ ἡ τῆς καρδίας
οὕτω δὲ καὶ τοῦ ἐγκεφάλου τὸ ἱδιον σῶμα καὶ
τῆς γαστρὸς καὶ τοῦ στομάχου καὶ τῶν ἐντέρων
καὶ τῶν ὑστερῶν αἰσθητῶν στοιχείων ἐστιν ὁμοιο-
μερές τε καὶ ἀπλοῦν καὶ ἀσύνθετον. ἔαν γὰρ
ἐξέλῃς ἐκάστοτε τῶν εἰρημένων τὰς ἀρτηρίας τε
καὶ τὰς φλέβας καὶ τὰ νεῦρα, τὸ ὑπόλοιπον
σῶμα τὸ καθ᾽ ἐκάστον ὀργανόν ἀπλοῦν ἐστὶ καὶ
στοιχεῖωδες ὡς πρὸς αἴσθησιν. ὡσα δὲ τῶν
τοιούτων ὀργάνων ἐκ δυοῦν σύγκειται χιτώνων
οὐχ ὁμοίων μὲν ἀλλήλοις, ἀπλοῦ δὲ ἐκατέρου,
tοιτον οἱ χιτώνες εἰσὶ τὰ στοιχεῖα καθάπερ τῆς
τε γαστρὸς καὶ τοῦ στομάχου καὶ τῶν ἐντέρων
καὶ τῶν ἀρτηριῶν, καὶ καθ᾽ ἐκατέρου γε τῶν
χιτώνων ἰδιος ἢ ἀλλοιωτικὴ δύναμις ἢ ἐκ τοῦ

14 παρὰ τῆς ἡ μητρὸς ἐπιμηνύου γεννήσασα τὸ
μόριον, ὥστε τὰς κατὰ μέρος ἀλλοιωτικὰς δυνά-
μεις τοσάται εἶναι καθ᾽ ἐκαστον ἤφει, ὅσαπερ
ἀν ἐχῇ τὰ στοιχεῖωδη μόρια. καὶ μὲν γε καὶ
τὰς ἐνεργείας ἴδιας ἐκάστω τῶν κατὰ μέρος
ἀναγκαίον ὑπάρχειν ὅσπερ καὶ τὰς χρείας, οἷον
καὶ τῶν ἀπὸ τῶν νεφρῶν εἰς τὴν κύστιν διηκόντων
πόρων, οὐ δὴ καὶ οὐρητῆρες καλοῦνται. οὕτωι

1 The terms Galen actually uses are: ostopoietic, neuro-
poietic, chondropoietic.

22
blending of these, for example, the bone-producing, nerve-producing, and cartilage-producing faculties\(^1\) (since for the sake of clearness these names must be used as well).

Now the peculiar\(^2\) flesh of the liver is of this kind as well, also that of the spleen, that of the kidneys, that of the lungs, and that of the heart; so also the proper substance of the brain, stomach, gullet, intestines, and uterus is a sensible element, of similar parts all through, simple, and uncompounded. That is to say, if you remove from each of the organs mentioned its arteries, veins, and nerves,\(^3\) the substance remaining in each organ is, from the point of view of the senses, simple and elementary. As regards those organs consisting of two dissimilar coats,\(^4\) of which each is simple, of these organs the coats are the elements—for example, the coats of the stomach, oesophagus, intestines, and arteries; each of these two coats has an alterative faculty peculiar to it, which has engendered it from the menstrual blood of the mother. Thus the special alterative faculties in each animal are of the same number as the elementary parts\(^5\); and further, the activities must necessarily correspond each to one of the special parts, just as each part has its special use—for example, those ducts which extend from the kidneys into the bladder, and which are called ureters; for these are not arteries, since they do not pulsate nor do they consist of two coats; and they

\(^2\) As we should say, parenchyma (a term used by Erasistratus).

\(^3\) These were all the elementary tissues that Aristotle, for example, had recognized; other tissues (e.g. flesh or muscle) he believed to be complexes of these.

\(^4\) Or tunics.

\(^5\) i.e. tissues.
GALEN

γάρ οὖτ’ ἀρτηρίαι εἰσίν, ὅτι μήτε σφύζοσι μήτ’ ἐκ δύοιν χιτώνων συνεστήκασιν, οὔτε φλέβες, ὅτι μήθ’ αἷμα περιέχοσι μήτ’ ἐοικεν αὐτῶν ὅ χιτῶν κατὰ τι τῷ τῆς φλεβῶς· ἄλλα καὶ νεύρων ἐπὶ πλέον ἀφεστήκασιν ἢ τῶν εἰρημένων.

Τί ποτ’ οὖν εἰσίν; ἐρωτᾷ τις, ὡσπερ ἀναγκαῖον ὅν ἄπαν μόριον ἡ ἀρτηρίαι ἡ φλέβα ἡ νεύρων ὑπάρχειν ἢ ἐκ τούτων πεπλέχθαι καὶ μὴ τοῦτ’ αὐτὸ τὸ νῦν λεγόμενον, ὡς ἴδιος ἐκάστῳ τῶν κατὰ μέρους ὁργάνων ἐστὶν ἡ οὐσία. καὶ γὰρ καὶ αἱ κύστεις ἐκάτερα ἢ τε τὸ οὐρον ὑποδεχομένη καὶ ἡ τῆς ξαθῇς χολῆς οὐ μόνον τῶν ἄλλων ἀπάντων ἄλλα καὶ ἀλλήλων διαφέρουσι καὶ οἱ εἰς τὸ ἡπαρ ἀποφθέγμενοι || πόροι, καθάπερ στόμαχοι τινες ἀπὸ τῆς χοληδόχου κύστεως, οὐδὲν οὔτ’ ἀρτηρίαις οὔτε φλεψίν οὔτε νεύροις ἑοίκασιν. ἄλλα περὶ μὲν τούτων ἐπὶ πλέον ἐν ἄλλοις τέ τις καὶ τοῖς περὶ τῆς Ἰπποκράτους ἀνατομῆς εἴρηται.

Αἱ δὲ κατὰ μέρους ἀπασαι δυνάμεις τῆς φύσεως αἱ ἄλλοιωτικαὶ αὐτὴν μὲν τὴν οὐσίαν τῶν χιτῶν τῆς κοιλίας καὶ τῶν ἐντέρων καὶ τῶν ύστερῶν ἀπεπελέσαν, ὅταν τε καὶ τοῖς την ἐπίθεσιν αὐτῶν καὶ τὴν τῶν ἐμφυομένων πλοκὴν καὶ τὴν εἰς τὸ ἐντερον ἐκφυσών καὶ τὴν τῆς ἐνδον κοιλότητος ἰδέαν καὶ τὰλλ’ ὥσα τοιαῦτα δύναμις τις ἑτέρα διέπλασεν, ἣν διαπλαστικὴν ὄνομάζομεν, ἣν δὴ καὶ τεχνικὴν εἰναι λέγομεν, μᾶλλον δ’ ἀρίστην καὶ ἀκραν τέχνην καὶ πάντα τινὸς ἐνεκα ποιοῦσαν, ὥς μηδὲν ἀργῶν εἰναι μηδὲ περιττῶν μηδ’ ὅλως

1 As, for example, Aristotle had held; cf. p. 23, note 3. Galen added many new tissues to those described by Aristotle.
are not veins, since they neither contain blood, nor do their coats in any way resemble those of veins; from nerves they differ still more than from the structures mentioned.

"What, then, are they?" someone asks—as though every part must necessarily be either an artery, a vein, a nerve, or a complex of these, and as though the truth were not what I am now stating, namely, that every one of the various organs has its own particular substance. For in fact the two bladders—that which receives the urine, and that which receives the yellow bile—not only differ from all other organs, but also from one another. Further, the ducts which spring out like kinds of conduits from the gall-bladder and which pass into the liver have no resemblance either to arteries, veins or nerves. But these parts have been treated at a greater length in my work "On the Anatomy of Hippocrates," as well as elsewhere.

As for the actual substance of the coats of the stomach, intestine, and uterus, each of these has been rendered what it is by a special alterative faculty of Nature; while the bringing of these together, the combination therewith of the structures which are inserted into them, the outgrowth into the intestine, the shape of the inner cavities, and the like, have all been determined by a faculty which we call the shaping or formative faculty; this faculty we also state to be artistic—nay, the best and highest art—doing everything for some purpose, so that

2 Lit. *synthesis.*

3 By this is meant the *duodenum*, considered as an outgrowth or prolongation of the stomach towards the intestines.

GALEN

οὕτως ἔχου, ὡς δύνασθαι βέλτιον ἐτέρως ἔχειν. ἀλλὰ τούτο μὲν ἐν τοῖς περὶ χρείας μορίων ἀποδείξομεν. ||

VII

16 Ὁπί δὲ τὴν αὐξητικὴν ἢδη μεταβάντες δύναμιν αὐτοῦ τοῦθ᾽ ὑπομηνύσωμεν πρῶτον, ὡς ὑπάρχει μὲν καὶ αὕτῃ τοῖς κυουμένοις ὁσπερ καὶ ἡ θεραπευτική· ἀλλ᾽ οἶον ὑπηρέτιδες τινὲς εἰς την καῦτα τῶν προειρημένων δυνάμεως, οὐκ ἐν αὐταῖς ἔχουσαι τὸ πᾶν κύρος. ἐπειδὰν δὲ τὸ τέλειον ἀπολάβῃ μέγεθος τὸ θέου, ἐν τῷ μετὰ τὴν ἀποκύψιν χρόνῳ παντὶ μέχρι τῆς ἀκμῆς ἢ μὲν αὐξητικὴ την καῦτα κρατεῖ· Βοσθοὶ δ᾽ αὐτῆς καὶ οἶον ὑπηρέτιδες ἢ τ᾽ ἀλλοιωτικὴ δύναμις ἐστὶ καὶ ἡ θεραπευτική. τί οὖν τὸ ἱδίον ἐστὶ τῆς αὐξητικῆς δυνάμεως; εἰς πᾶν μέρος ἐκτείναι τὰ πεφυκότα. καλεῖται δ᾽ οὕτω τὰ στερεὰ μόρια τοῦ σώματος, ἀρτηρίαι καὶ φλέβες καὶ νεῦρα καὶ ὀστά καὶ χόνδροι καὶ ὑμένες καὶ σύνδεσμοι καὶ οἱ χυτῶνς ἄπαντες, οὕς στοιχεῖοι τε καὶ ὀμοιομερεῖς καὶ ἀπλοὺς ὅλον ἐμπροσθεὶς ἐκαλοῦμεν. ὅτω δὲ τρόπῳ τὴν εἰς πᾶν μέρος ἔκτασιν ἵσχυσιν, ἐγὼ φράσω παράδειγμά τι πρότερον εἰπών ἔνεκα τοῦ σαφοῦς. ||

17 Τὰς κύστεις τῶν ύδων λαβόντες οἱ παῖδες πληροῦσι τε πνεύματος καὶ τρίβουσιν ἐπὶ τῆς τέφρας πλησίον τοῦ πυρὸς, ὡς ἀλεάνεσθαι μὲν, βιάπτεσθαι δὲ μηδέν καὶ πολλὴ γ' αὐτή ἢ

1 Lit. the auxetic or incremental faculty.

26
there is nothing ineffective or superfluous, or capable of being better disposed. This, however, I shall demonstrate in my work "On the Use of Parts."

VII

Passing now to the faculty of Growth¹ let us first mention that this, too, is present in the foetus in utero as is also the nutritive faculty, but that at that stage these two faculties are, as it were, handmaids to those already mentioned,² and do not possess in themselves supreme authority. When, however, the animal³ has attained its complete size, then, during the whole period following its birth and until the acme is reached, the faculty of growth is predominant, while the alterative and nutritive faculties are accessory—in fact, act as its handmaids. What, then, is the property of this faculty of growth? To extend in every direction that which has already come into existence—that is to say, the solid parts of the body, the arteries, veins, nerves, bones, cartilages, membranes, ligaments, and the various coats which we have just called elementary, homogeneous, and simple. And I shall state in what way they gain this extension in every direction, first giving an illustration for the sake of clearness.

Children take the bladders of pigs, fill them with air, and then rub them on ashes near the fire, so as to warm, but not to injure them. This is a common

¹ i.e. to the alterative and shaping faculties (histogenetic and organogenetic).
² If the reading is correct we can only suppose that Galen meant the embryo.
GALEN

παιδιά περὶ τὴν Ἰωνίαν καὶ ἐν ἄλλοις ἔθνεσιν ὡς ὀλύγοις ἐστίν. ἐπιλέγουσι δὲ δὴ καὶ τῶν ἔτη τρίβοντες ἐν μέτρῳ τέ τινι καὶ μέλει καὶ ῥυθμῷ καὶ ἐστὶ πάντα τὰ ῥήματα ταῦτα παρακέλευσις τῇ κύστει πρὸς τὴν αὐξήσιν. ἐπειδὰν δ’ ἰκανός αὐτοῖς διατετάσθαι δοκῇ, πάλιν ἐμφυσώσι τε καὶ ἐπιδιατείνουσι καὶ αὕθις τρίβουσι καὶ τοῦτο πλεονάκις ποιοῦσιν, ἄχρις ἂν αὐτοῖς ἢ κύστις ἰκανός ἔχειν δοκῇ τῆς αὐξήσεως. ἀλλ’ ἐν τούτοις γε τοὺς ἐργοὺς τῶν παίδων ἔναργην, ὡςον εἰς μέγεθος ἐπιδιδόσιν ἡ ἐντὸς εὐρυχωρία τῆς κύστεως, τοσοῦτον ἀναγκαίον ἐις λεπτότητα καθαίρεσθαι τὸ σῶμα καὶ εἴ γε τὴν λεπτότητα ταύτην ἀνατρέφειν οἴοι τ’ ἔσαν οἱ παῖδες, ὅμοιος ἄν τῇ φύσει τὴν κύστιν ἐκ μικρᾶς μεγάλην ἀπειργάζοντο. νυνὶ δὲ τούτ’ αὐτοῖς ἐνδεί τὸ ἐργον οὐδὲ καθ’ ἕνα τρόπον εἰς μίμησιν ἐνδεχόμενον ἀναθήματ’ ὅτι τοῖς || παισίν ἀλλ’ οὐδ’ ἄλλῳ τινί· μόνης γὰρ τῆς φύσεως ἰδίων ἐστίν.

"Ωστ’ ἢδη σοι δῆλον, ὡς ἀναγκαία τοῖς αὐξανομένοις ἢ θρέψις. εἰ γὰρ διατείνουτο μὲν, ἀνατρέφοιτο δὲ μῆ, φαντασίαν ψευδή μᾶλλον, ὡς αὐξήσιν ἄληθῇ τὰ τοιαύτα σώματα κτῆσται. καίτοι καὶ τὸ διατείνουσθαι πάντῃ μόνοις τοῖς ὑπὸ φύσεως αὐξανομένοις ὑπάρχει. τὰ γὰρ ὡφ’ ἡμῶν διατείνομενα σώματα κατὰ μίαν τινὰ διάστασιν τούτο πάσχοντα μειοῦσται ταῖς λοιπαῖς, οὐδ’ ἐστὶν εὐρεῖν οὐδὲν, ὁ συνεχῆς ἔτι μένοι καὶ ἀδιάσταστον εἰς τὰς τρεῖς διαστάσεις ἐπεκτείναι δυνάμεθα. μόνης οὖν τῆς φύσεως τὸ πάντη διεισάγαται συνεχεῖς ἐαυτῷ μένοι ἔτι καὶ τὴν ἀρχαίαν ἀπασαν ἰδέαιν φυλάττον τὸ σῶμα.

28
gamè in the district of Ionia, and among not a few other nations. As they rub, they sing songs, to a certain measure, time, and rhythm, and all their words are an exhortation to the bladder to increase in size. When it appears to them fairly well distended, they again blow air into it and expand it further; then they rub it again. This they do several times, until the bladder seems to them to have become large enough. Now, clearly, in these doings of the children, the more the interior cavity of the bladder increases in size, the thinner, necessarily, does its substance become. But, if the children were able to bring nourishment to this thin part, then they would make the bladder big in the same way that Nature does. As it is, however, they cannot do what Nature does, for to imitate this is beyond the power not only of children, but of any one soever; it is a property of Nature alone.

It will now, therefore, be clear to you that nutrition is a necessity for growing things. For if such bodies were distended, but not at the same time nourished, they would take on a false appearance of growth, not a true growth. And further, to be distended in all directions belongs only to bodies whose growth is directed by Nature; for those which are distended by us undergo this distension in one direction but grow less in the others; it is impossible to find a body which will remain entire and not be torn through whilst we stretch it in the three dimensions. Thus Nature alone has the power to expand a body in all directions so that it remains unruptured and preserves completely its previous form.
GALEN

Καὶ τοῦτ ἐστὶν ἡ αὔξησις ἀνευ τής ἐπιρρεούσης τε καὶ προσπλαττομένης τροφῆς μὴ δυναμένη γενέσθαι.

VIII

Καὶ τοίνυν ὁ λόγος ἦκειν ἐοίκεν ὁ περὶ τῆς θρέψεως, δις δὴ λοιπὸς ἐστι καὶ τρίτος ὃν ἔξ ἀρχῆς προθέμεθα. τοῦ γὰρ ἐπιρρέοντος ἐν εἰδει τροφῆς παντὶ ⌊μορίῳ τοῦ τρεφομένου σώματος προσπλαττομένου θρέψις μὲν ἡ ἐνέργεια, θρεπτικὴ δὲ δύναμις ἡ αἰτία. ἀλλοίωσις μὲν δὴ κανταύθα τὸ γένος τῆς ἐνεργείας, ἀλλ᾽ οὐχ οὔσας ἡ ἐν ἡ γενέσι. ἐκεὶ μὲν γὰρ οὐκ ὅπερ ὑστερον ἐγένετο, κατὰ δὲ τὴν θρέψιν τῷ ἡδὴ γεγονότι συνεξομοιοῦται τὸ ἐπιρρέον καὶ διὰ τοῦτ᾿ εὐλόγως ἐκείνην μὲν τὴν ἀλλοίωσιν γένεσιν, ταύτῃ δ᾽ ἐξομοίωσιν ὄνομασαν.

IX

Ἑπειδὴ δὲ περὶ τῶν τριῶν δυνάμεων τῆς φύσεως αὐτάρκεως εἰρήται καὶ φαίνεται μηδεμᾶς ἄλλης προσδείσθαι τὸ ξόφων, ἐχον γε καὶ ὅπως αὔξηθῇ καὶ ὅπως τελειώθῃ καὶ ὅπως ἐως πλείστου διαφυλαχθῇ, δόξει μὲν ἀν ἵσως ἰκανῶς ἐχειν ὁ λόγος οὗτος ἡδη καὶ πόσας ἐξηγεῖσθαι τᾶς τῆς φύσεως δυνάμεις. ἀλλ᾽ εἰ τις πάλιν ἐννοήσειεν, ὡς οὐ-
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. vii.–ix

Such then is growth, and it cannot occur without the nutriment which flows to the part and is worked up into it.

VIII

We have, then, it seems, arrived at the subject of Nutrition, which is the third and remaining consideration which we proposed at the outset. For, when the matter which flows to each part of the body in the form of nutriment is being worked up into it, this activity is nutrition, and its cause is the nutritive faculty. Of course, the kind of activity here involved is also an alteration, but not an alteration like that occurring at the stage of genesis.1 For in the latter case something comes into existence which did not exist previously, while in nutrition the inflowing material becomes assimilated to that which has already come into existence. Therefore, the former kind of alteration has with reason been termed genesis, and the latter, assimilation.

IX

Now, since the three faculties of Nature have been exhaustively dealt with, and the animal would appear not to need any others (being possessed of the means for growing, for attaining completion, and for maintaining itself as long a time as possible), this treatise might seem to be already complete, and to constitute an exposition of all the faculties of Nature. If, however, one considers that it has not

1 i.e. not the pre-natal development of tissue already described. cf. chap. vi.
Galen

denos oudepw ton tou xfoou moriwn efhystato, koiliaw lewv kai entepwv kai etpatos kai ton omoiwv, oud' evghesato tas en autois dunameis, aithis doxeiein aw oion prooimion ti monon eirhsetai tis xerismou didaskalian. || to gar sympavan odo' exhe. genesis kai aixeis kai thepsi tis proota kai oion kefallaia ton ergon esti tis fusesw. ounste kai ai toutw ergastikai dunameis ai prwta treis eisi kai kuriotatai. deontai de' eis uphresian, hos hde dideiktai, kai allhlon kai allhon. tinwv men ouw h genhetikhe te kai aixeitikhe deontai, eirhetai, tinwv de' h thephtikhe, vwn eirhsetai.

X

Dokw gar moi deixeun ta peri twn tis trophi's oikonomian organa te kai tas dunameis auton diat tautan gegevonta. epeidh gar h energeia tautis tis dunameos exeimoiswos estin, omoioudhetai de kai metaballlein eis allhla pa'si tois ouswi adynaton, eis h' tina exoi koivwian hde kai syngeneian en tais poiotsi, did touto prwton men ouk ek pantoq edesmoton pan xfoon trefeshtai pephukos, episteis de oude' ex' oiv oivon t estin oude' ek touwn parakhima, kai diat tautn

1 Administration, lit. "economy."
2 The activation or functioning of this faculty, the faculty in actual operation. cf. p. 3, note 2.
yet touched upon any of the parts of the animal (I mean the stomach, intestines, liver, and the like), and that it has not dealt with the faculties resident in these, it will seem as though merely a kind of introduction had been given to the practical parts of our teaching. For the whole matter is as follows: Genesis, growth, and nutrition are the first, and, so to say, the principal effects of Nature; similarly also the faculties which produce these effects—the first faculties—are three in number, and are the most dominating of all. But as has already been shown, these need the service both of each other, and of yet different faculties. Now, these which the faculties of generation and growth require have been stated. I shall now say what ones the nutritive faculty requires.

X

For I believe that I shall prove that the organs which have to do with the disposal of the nutrient, as also their faculties, exist for the sake of this nutritive faculty. For since the action of this faculty is assimilation, and it is impossible for anything to be assimilated by, and to change into anything else unless they already possess a certain community and affinity in their qualities, therefore, in the first place, any animal cannot naturally derive nourishment from any kind of food, and secondly, even in the case of those from which it can do so, it cannot do this at once. Therefore, by reason of

Galen

tην ἀνάγκην πλείονον ὁργάνων ἀλλοιωτικῶν τῆς
tροφῆς ἐκαστον || τῶν ζῴων χρήζει. ἦνα μὲν γὰρ
tὸ ξανθὸν ἐρυθρὸν γένηται καὶ τὸ ἐρυθρὸν ξανθὸν,
ἀπλῆς καὶ μιᾶς δεῖται τῆς ἀλλοιώσεως. ἦνα δὲ τὸ
λευκὸν μέλαι καὶ τὸ μέλαι λευκόν, ἀπασῶν τῶν
μεταξ. καὶ τοίνυν καὶ τὸ μαλακότατον οὐκ ἂν
ἀθρῶς σκληρότατον καὶ τὸ σκληρότατον οὐκ ἂν
ἀθρῶς μαλακότατον γένοιτο, ἀσπερ οὔδὲ τὸ
dυσῳδέστατον εὐῳδέστατον οὔδ' ἐμπαλιν τὸ εὐῳ-
δέστατον δυσῳδέστατον ἐξείσφυς γένοιτ' ἂν.

Πῶς οὖν εἰς αἴματος ὅστοιν ἂν ποτε γένοιτο μὴ
παχυνθέντος γε πρότερον ἐπὶ πλεῖστον αὐτοῦ καὶ
λευκαρθέντος ἢ πὼς εἰς ἀρτοῦ τὸ αἷμα μὴ κατὰ
βραχύ μὲν ἀποθεμένου τὴν λευκότητα, κατὰ
βραχὺ δὲ λαμβανόμενο τὴν ἑρυθρότητα, σάρκα
μὲν γὰρ εἰς αἷματος γενέσθαι ῥάστων εἰ γὰρ εἰς
tosούτοιν αὐτὸ παχύνειν ἢ φύσις, ὡς σύστασιν
τῖνα σχεῖν καὶ μηκετ' εἶναι ῥυτῶν, ἡ πρώτη καὶ
νεοπαγής οὕτως ἂν εἰς σάρξ· ὅστοιν δ' ἦνα γένη-
tαι, πολλοῦ μὲν δεῖται χρόνου, πολλῆς δ' ἐργασίας
καὶ μεταβολῆς τῷ αἷματι. ὅτι δὲ καὶ τῷ ἄρτῳ
καὶ πολὺ μᾶλλον θρίαδα κίνη καὶ τεῦτλῳ καὶ τοῖς
ὀμοίοις παμπόλλης δεῖται τῆς ἀλλοιώσεως εἰς
αἷματος γένεσιν, οὔδ' τούτ' ἀδηλον.

"Ἐν μὲν δὴ τούτ' αἰτίον τοῦ πολλὰ γενέσθαι τὰ
περὶ τὴν τῆς τροφῆς ἀλλοιώσιν ὄργανα. δεύτερον
δ' ἡ τῶν περιπτώματων φύσις. ὡς γὰρ ύπὸ
βοτανῶν οὔδ' ὅλως δυνάμεθα τρέφεσθαι, καίτοι
τῶν βοσκημάτων τρεφομένων, οὔτως ύπὸ ῥαφανί-

1 Lit. “necessity”; more restrictive, however, than our
2 His point is that no great change, in colours or in any-
thing else, can take place at one step.
34
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. x

this law, every animal needs several organs for altering the nutriment. For in order that the yellow may become red, and the red yellow, one simple process of alteration is required, but in order that the white may become black, and the black white, all the intermediate stages are needed. So also, a thing which is very soft cannot all at once become very hard, nor vice versa; nor, similarly can anything which has a very bad smell suddenly become quite fragrant, nor again, can the converse happen.

How, then, could blood ever turn into bone, without having first become, as far as possible, thickened and white? And how could bread turn into blood without having gradually parted with its whiteness and gradually acquired redness? Thus it is quite easy for blood to become flesh; for, if Nature thicken it to such an extent that it acquires a certain consistency and ceases to be fluid, it thus becomes original newly-formed flesh; but in order that blood may turn into bone, much time is needed and much elaboration and transformation of the blood. Further, it is quite clear that bread, and, more particularly lettuce, beet, and the like, require a great deal of alteration in order to become blood.

This, then, is one reason why there are so many organs concerned in the alteration of food. A second reason is the nature of the superfluitics. For, as we are unable to draw any nourishment from grass, although this is possible for cattle, similarly we can derive nourishment from radishes, albeit not

3 Not quite our "waste products," since these are considered as being partly synthetic, whereas the Greek perittonata were simply superfluous substances which could not be used and were thrown aside.
GALEN

dos τρεφόμεθα μέν, ἀλλ' οὖχ ὃς ὑπὸ τῶν κρεłówν.
toúton μέν γὰρ ὁλίγον δεῖν ὕλων ἡ φύσις ἡμῶν
κρατεῖ καὶ μεταβάλλει καὶ ἀλλοιοὶ καὶ χρηστοῦν
ἐξ αὐτῶν αἷμα συνίστησιν· ἐν δὲ τῇ ραφανίδι τὸ
μέν οἰκεῖον τε καὶ μεταβληθῆναι δυνάμενον, μόγις
καὶ τούτο καὶ σὺν πολλῆ τῇ κατεργασίᾳ, παντά-
πασιν ἐλάχιστον ὅλη δ' ὁλίγον δεῖν ἐστὶ περιτ-
τωματική καὶ διεξέρχεται τὰ τῆς πέψεως ὀργάνα,
βραχέος ἐξ αὐτῆς εἰς τὰς φλέβας ἀναληφθέντος
ἀιματος καὶ οὐδὲ τούτου τελέως χρηστοῦ. Δευτέ-
ρας οὖν αὖθις ἐδέσθη διακρίσεως τῇ φύσει τῶν ἐν
ταῖς φλεψί περιττωμάτων. καὶ χρεία καὶ τοῦ-
τοις ὅδων τε τινῶν ἐτέρων ἐπὶ τὰς ἐκ|κρίσεις αὐτὰ
παραγουσῶν, ὡς μὴ λυμαίνοιτο τοῖς χρηστοῖς,
ὑποδοχῶν τὲ τινῶν ὅλων δεξαμενῶν, ἐν αἷς ὅταν
εἰς ἱκανὸν πλήθος ἄφικηται, τηρικαύτ' ἐκκριθή-
σεται.

Δεύτερον δὴ σοι καὶ τούτο τὸ γένος τῶν ἐν τῷ
σώματι μορίων ἔξεύρηται τοῖς περιττώμασι τῆς
τροφῆς ἀνακείμενον. ἀλλο δὲ τρίτον ὑπὲρ τοῦ
πάντη φέρεσθαι, καθάπερ τινὲς ὅδοι πολλαὶ διὰ
tοῦ σώματος ὅλου κατατετμημέναι.

Μία μὲν γὰρ εἰσοδός ἡ διὰ τοῦ στόματος ἁπασὶ
tοῖς σιτίοις, οὖχ ἐν δὲ τὸ τρεφόμενον ἄλλα
πάμπολλά τε καὶ πάμπολλα διεστῶτα. μὴ τοῖνυν
θαύμαξε τὸ πλῆθος τῶν ὀργάνων, ὡσα θρέψεως
ἐνεκεν ἡ φύσις ἐδημούργησε. τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἀλλοι-

1 Note "our natures," cf. p. 12, note 4; p. 47, note 1.
2 The term οἰκείος, here rendered appropriate, is explained on p. 33. cf. also footnote on same page. Linacre often translated it conveniens, and it may usually be rendered proper, peculiar, own special, or own particular in English. Sometimes it is almost equal to akin, cognate, related: cf.
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. x

to the same extent as from meat; for almost the whole of the latter is mastered by our natures; it is transformed and altered and constituted useful blood; but, in the radish, what is appropriate and capable of being altered (and that only with difficulty, and with much labour) is the very smallest part; almost the whole of it is surplus matter, and passes through the digestive organs, only a very little being taken up into the veins as blood—nor is this itself entirely utilisable blood. Nature, therefore, had need of a second process of separation for the superfluities in the veins. Moreover, these superfluities need, on the one hand, certain fresh routes to conduct them to the outlets, so that they may not spoil the useful substances, and they also need certain reservoirs, as it were, in which they are collected till they reach a sufficient quantity, and are then discharged.

Thus, then, you have discovered bodily parts of a second kind, consecrated in this case to the [removal of the] superfluities of the food. There is, however, also a third kind, for carrying the pabulum in every direction; these are like a number of roads intersecting the whole body.

Thus there is one entrance—that through the mouth—for all the various articles of food. What receives nourishment, however, is not one single part, but a great many parts, and these widely separated; do not be surprised, therefore, at the abundance of organs which Nature has created for the purpose of nutrition. For those of them which have to do with p. 319, note 2. With Galen's oikéíos and ἄλλοτριος we may compare the German terms eigen and fremd used by Aberhalden in connection with his theory of defensive ferments in the blood-serum.
οὕντα προπαρασκευάζει τὴν ἐπιτήδευσιν ἐκάστῳ
μορίῳ τροφῆς, τὰ δὲ διακρίνει τὰ περιττώματα,
τὰ δὲ παραπέμπει, τὰ δ' ὑποδέχεται, τὰ δ' ἐκκρίνει,
τὰ δ' ὀδοὶ τῆς πάντης φορᾶς εἰσὶ τῶν
χρηστῶν χυμῶν, ὥστ', εἴτε βούλει τὰς δυνάμεις
tῆς φύσεως ἀπάσας ἐκμαθείν, ὑπὲρ ἐκάστου
tούτων ἄν εἴη σοι τῶν ὄργανων ἐπισκεπτεῖν.

24 Ἀρχὴ δ' αὐτῶν τῆς διδασκαλίας, ὡσα || τοῦ
tέλους ἔγγυς ἔργα τε τῆς φύσεως ἐστὶ καὶ μόρια
καὶ δυνάμεις αὐτῶν.

XI

Αὐτὸς δὲ δὴ πάλιν ἀναμνηστέον ἡμῖν τοῦ
tέλους, ούπερ ἐνεκα τοσαύτα τε καὶ τοιαύτα τῇ
φύσει διεδημούργηται μόρια. τὸ μὲν οὖν ὄνομα
τοῦ πράγματος, ὡσπέρ καὶ πρότερον εἰρηται,
θρέψις: γ' δὲ κατὰ τούνομα λόγος ὁμοίωσις τοῦ
τρέφοντος τῷ τρεφόμενῳ, ἵνα δ' αὐτὴ γένηται,
προηγήσασθαι χρή πρόσφυσιν, ἵνα δ' ἐκείνη,
πρόσθεσιν. ἐπειδὰν γὰρ ἐκπέσῃ τῶν ἀγγείων
ὁ μέλλων θρέψειν ότιον τῶν τοῦ ξύον μορίων
χυμός, εἰς ἀπαν αὐτὸ διασπείρεται πρώτον,
ἐπειτὰ προστίθεται κάπετα προσφύεται καὶ
tελέως ὀμοιοῦται.

1 Transit, cf. p. 6, note 1.
2 i.e. of the living organism, cf. p. 2, note 1.
3 i.e. with nutrition.
4 We might perhaps say, more shortly, "assimilation of
food to feeder," or, "of food to fed"; Linacre renders,
"nutrimenti cum nutrito assimilatio."
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. x.–xi

alteration prepare the nutriment suitable for each part; others separate out the superfluities; some pass these along, others store them up, others excrete them; some, again, are paths for the transit in all directions of the utilisable juices. So, if you wish to gain a thorough acquaintance with all the faculties of Nature, you will have to consider each one of these organs.

Now in giving an account of these we must begin with those effects of Nature, together with their corresponding parts and faculties, which are closely connected with the purpose to be achieved.

XI

Let us once more, then, recall the actual purpose for which Nature has constructed all these parts. Its name, as previously stated, is nutrition, and the definition corresponding to the name is: an assimilation of that which nourishes to that which receives nourishment. And in order that this may come about, we must assume a preliminary process of adhesion, and for that, again, one of presentation. For whenever the juice which is destined to nourish any of the parts of the animal is emitted from the vessels, it is in the first place dispersed all through this part, next it is presented, and next it adheres, and becomes completely assimilated.

5 Lit. prospysis, i.e. attachment, implantation.
6 Lit. prosthesis, "apposition." One is almost tempted to retain the terms prosthesis and prospysis in translation, as they obviously correspond much more closely to Galen's physiological conceptions than any English or semi-English words can.

39
Δηλοῦσι δ’ αἱ καλοῦμεναι λεύκαι τὴν διαφορὰν ὠμοίωσεως τε καὶ προσφύσεως, ὡσπερ τὸ γένος ἐκεῖνο τῶν ύδέρων, ὅ τινες ὠμοίωσε ἀνὰ σάρκα, διορίζει σαφῶς πρόσθεσιν προσφύσεως. οὐ γὰρ ἐνδείκνυτον τῆς ἐπιπρεπούσης ὑγρότητος, ὡς ἐνιαὶ τῶν ἄτροφῶν τε καὶ φθίσεων, ἢ τοῦ 25 τοιοῦτον γένεσις ύδέρου || συντελεῖται. φαίνεται γὰρ ἰκανῶς ἢ τε σάρξ ὑγρὰ καὶ διάβροχοι ἐκαστὸν τε τῶν στερεῶν τοῦ σώματος μορίων ὕσαυτως διακείμενοι. ἀλλὰ πρόσθεσις μὲν τις γίγνεται τῆς ἐπιφερομένης τροφῆς, ἀτε δ’ ύδατωδεστέρας οὐσίας ἐτί καὶ μὴ πάντως τις κεχυμομένης μηδὲ τὸ γλύσχρον ἐκεῖνο καὶ κολλώδες, ὅ δὴ τῆς ἐμφύτου θερμασίας οἰκονομία προστίθενται, κεκτημένης ἢ πρόσφυσις ἀδύνατός ἐστιν ἐπιτελεῖσθαι πλήθει λεπτής υγρότητος ἀπέπτυχον διαρρέουσης τε καὶ ραδίως ὀλισθαίνουσης ἀπὸ τῶν στερεῶν τοῦ σώματος μορίων τῆς τροφῆς. ἐν δὲ ταῖς λεύκαις πρόσφυσις μὲν τις γίγνεται τῆς τροφῆς, οὐ μὴν ἐξομοιόωσις γέ. καὶ δῆλον ἐν τῷδε τὸ μικρὸν πρόσθεν ρηθέν ὡς ὀρθῶς ἐλέγετο τὸ δεῖν πρόσθεσιν μὲν πρῶτον, ἐφεξῆς δὲ πρόσφυσιν, ἐπεὶτ’ ἐξομοιώσις γενέσθαι τῷ μέλλοντι τρέφεσθαι.

Κυρίως μὲν οὖν τὸ τρέφον ἦδη τροφῆ, τὸ δ’ οἶον μὲν τροφῆ, οὔπω δὲ τρέφον, ὅποιον ἔστι τὸ προσφυόμενον ἢ προστιθέμενον, τροφῆ μὲν οὖν

---

1 Lit. phthisis. cf. p. 6, note 2. Now means tuberculosis only.
2 More literally, “chymified.” In anasarca the subcutaneous tissue is soft, and pits on pressure. In the “white” disease referred to here (by which is probably meant nodular leprosy) the same tissues are indurated and “brawny.” The
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xi

The so-called white [leprosy] shows the difference between assimilation and adhesion, in the same way that the kind of dropsy which some people call anasarca clearly distinguishes presentation from adhesion. For, of course, the genesis of such a dropsy does not come about as do some of the conditions of atrophy and wasting,¹ from an insufficient supply of moisture; the flesh is obviously moist enough,—in fact it is thoroughly saturated,—and each of the solid parts of the body is in a similar condition. While, however, the nutriment conveyed to the part does undergo presentation, it is still too watery, and is not properly transformed into a juice,² nor has it acquired that viscous and agglutinative quality which results from the operation of innate heat ;³ therefore, adhesion cannot come about, since, owing to this abundance of thin, crude liquid, the pabulum runs off and easily slips away from the solid parts of the body. In white [leprosy], again, there is adhesion of the nutriment but no real assimilation. From this it is clear that what I have just said is correct, namely, that in that part which is to be nourished there must first occur presentation, next adhesion, and finally assimilation proper.

Strictly speaking, then, nutriment is that which is actually nourishing, while the quasi-nutriment which is not yet nourishing (e.g. matter which is undergoing adhesion or presentation) is not, strictly speaking, nutriment, but is so called only by an equivocation.

principle of certain diseases being best explained as cases of arrest at various stages of the metabolic path is recognized in modern pathology, although of course the instances given by Galen are too crude to stand.

³ The effects of oxidation attributed to the heat which accompanies it? cf. p. 141, note 1; p. 254, note 1.
κυρίως, ὁμοιώματι δὲ τροφῆς τὸ δέ ἐν ταῖς φλεψὶν ἐτὶ περιεχόμενον|| καὶ τούτῳ μᾶλλον ἔτι τὸ κατὰ τὴν γαστέρα τῷ μέλλειν ποτὲ θρέψειν, εἰ καλῶς κατεργασθεὶς, κέκληται τροφή. κατὰ ταύτα δὲ καὶ τῶν ἐδεσμάτων ἑκαστὸν τροφὴν ὀνομάζομεν οὔτε τῷ τρέφειν ἢδη τὸ ξύον οὔτε τῷ τοιούτων ὑπάρχειν οἶον τὸ τρέφον, ἀλλὰ τῷ δύνασθαι τε καὶ μέλλειν τρέφειν, εἰ καλῶς κατεργασθεὶς.

Τούτῳ γὰρ ἦν καὶ τὸ πρὸς Ἰπποκράτους λεγόμενον. "Τροφή δὲ τὸ τρέφου, τροφή καὶ τὸ οἶον τροφή καὶ τὸ μέλλου." τὸ μὲν γὰρ ὁμοιώματι μενοῦ ἢδη τροφήν ὄνομασε, τὸ δ' οἶον μὲν ἐκεῖνο προστιθέμενον ἢ προσφυόμενον οἶον τροφήν· τὸ δ' ἄλλο πάν, ὡσον ἐν τῇ γαστρὶ καὶ ταῖς φλεψὶ περιέχεται, μέλλου.

XII

Οτι μὲν οὖν ἀναγκαῖον ὁμοιώσιν τιν' εἶναι τοῦ τρέφου τοῦ τρεφομένῳ τὴν θρέψιν, ἀντικρὺς δῆλον. οὐ μὴν ὑπάρχουσαν γε ταύτην τὴν ὀμοίωσιν, ἀλλὰ φαινομένη μόνον εἶναι φασιν οἱ μὴ τεχνικὴν οἰόμενοι τὴν φύσιν εἶναι μὴ τε θρέψι, τοῦ ξύον μὴ' ὄλως τινὰς οἰκείας ἐχεῖν δυνάμεις, αἰς χρωμένη τὰ μὲν ἄλλοιοι, τὰ δ' ἐλκει, || τὰ δ' ἐκκρίνει.

Καὶ αὕτα δύο γεγόνασιν αἱρέσεις κατὰ γένος ἐν ἱατρικῇ τε καὶ φιλοσοφίᾳ τῶν ἀποφηματιῶν 42
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xi.–xii.

Also, that which is still contained in the veins, and still more, that which is in the stomach, from the fact that it is destined to nourish if properly elaborated, has been called "nutriment." Similarly we call the various kinds of food "nutriment," not because they are already nourishing the animal, nor because they exist in the same state as the material which actually is nourishing it, but because they are able and destined to nourish it if they be properly elaborated.

This was also what Hippocrates said, viz., "Nutriment is what is engaged in nourishing, as also is quasi-nutriment, and what is destined to be nutriment." For to that which is already being assimilated he gave the name of nutriment; to the similar material which is being presented or becoming adherent, the name of quasi-nutriment; and to everything else—that is, contained in the stomach and veins—the name of destined nutriment.

XII

It is quite clear, therefore, that nutrition must necessarily be a process of assimilation of that which is nourishing to that which is being nourished. Some, however, say that this assimilation does not occur in reality, but is merely apparent; these are the people who think that Nature is not artistic, that she does not show forethought for the animal’s welfare, and that she has absolutely no native powers whereby she alters some substances, attracts others, and discharges others.

Now, speaking generally, there have arisen the following two sects in medicine and philosophy

43
GALEN

τι περὶ φύσεως ἀνδρῶν, ὥσπερ ἀυτῶν γεγονός-
σκούσιν, ὅ τι λέγουσι, καὶ τὴν ἁκολουθίαν δὲν
ὑπέθεντο θεωροῦσι θ’ ἀμα καὶ διαφυλάττουσιν.
ὅσοι δὲ μηδ’ αὐτὸ τούτο συνιᾶσιν, ἀλλ’ ἀπλῶς,
ὅ τι ἂν ἐπὶ γλώτταν ἔλθη, ληφοῦσιν, ἐν οὐδετέρα
τῶν αἱρέσεων ἀκριβῶς καταμένοντες, οὐδὲ μεμ-
νήσθαι τῶν τοιούτων προσήκει.

Τίνες οὖν αἰ δύο αἱρέσεις αὐταὶ καὶ τίς ἡ τῶν
ἐν αὐταῖς ὑποθέσεων ἁκολουθία; τὴν ὑποθεβλη-
μένην οὐσίαν γενέσει καὶ φθορὰ πᾶσαν ἦνομένην
θ’ ἀμα καὶ ἀλλοιόκεθαί δυναμένην ὑπέθετο
θάτερον γένος τῆς αἱρέσεως, ἀμετάβλητον δὲ καὶ
ἀναλλοίωτον καὶ κατατετμημένην εἰς λεπτὰ καὶ
κεναῖς ταῖς μεταξὺ χώραις διειλημμένην ἡ λοιπὴ.

Καὶ τοῖνυν ὅσοι γε τῆς ἁκολουθίας τῶν ὑπο-
θέσεων αἰσθάνονται, κατὰ μὲν τὴν δευτέραν
αἱρέσιν οὕτε φύσεως οὕτε ψυχῆς ἱδίαν τινὰ νομί-
ζουσιν οὐσίαν ἢ δύναμιν ὑπάρχειν, ἢ ἀλλ’ ἐν τῇ
ποιὰ συνόδῳ τῶν πρῶτων ἐκείνων σωμάτων τῶν
ἀπαθῶν ἀποτελεῖσθαι. κατὰ δὲ τὴν πρῶτον
εἰρημένην αἱρέσιν οὐχ ὑστέρα τῶν σωμάτων ἢ
φύσις, ἀλλὰ πολὺ προτέρα τε καὶ προσβυτέρα.
καὶ τοῖνυν κατὰ μὲν τούτους αὐτὴ τὰ σώματα
τῶν τοῦ φυτῶν καὶ τῶν ἄνω συνίστησι δυνάμεις
τινὰς ἐχουσα τὰς μὲν ἔλεκτρας θ’ ἀμα καὶ
ὁμοιωτικάς τῶν οἰκείων, τὰς δ’ ἀποκριτικὰς τῶν

---

1 Here follows a contrast between the Vitalists and the Epicurean Atomists. cf. p. 153 et seq.
2 A unity or continuum, an individuum.

44
among those who have made any definite pronouncement regarding Nature. I speak, of course, of such of them as know what they are talking about, and who realize the logical sequence of their hypotheses, and stand by them; as for those who cannot understand even this, but who simply talk any nonsense that comes to their tongues, and who do not remain definitely attached either to one sect or the other—such people are not even worth mentioning.

What, then, are these sects, and what are the logical consequences of their hypotheses?1 The one class supposes that all substance which is subject to genesis and destruction is at once continuous2 and susceptible of alteration. The other school assumes substance to be unchangeable, unalterable, and subdivided into fine particles, which are separated from one another by empty spaces.

All people, therefore, who can appreciate the logical sequence of an hypothesis hold that, according to the second teaching, there does not exist any substance or faculty peculiar either to Nature or to Soul,3 but that these result from the way in which the primary corpuscles,4 which are unaffected by change, come together. According to the first-mentioned teaching, on the other hand, Nature is not posterior to the corpuscles, but is a long way prior to them and older than they; and therefore in their view it is Nature which puts together the bodies both of plants and animals; and this she does by virtue of certain faculties which she possesses—these being, on the one hand, attractive and assimilative of what is appropriate, and, on the other, expulsive of

3 Lit. to the physis or the psyche; that is, a denial of the autonomy of physiology and psychology. 4 Lit. somata.

45
Galen

άλλοτρών, καὶ τεχνικῶς ἀπαντά διαπλάττει τε γεννώσα καὶ προνοεῖται τῶν γεννωμένων ἐτέραις αὐθίς τισι δυνάμεις, στερκτικῇ μὲν τινι καὶ προνοητικῇ τῶν ἐγγόνων, κοινωνικῇ δὲ καὶ φιλικῇ τῶν ὁμογενῶν. κατὰ δ’ αὐ τοὺς ἐτέρους οὔτε τούτων οὐδὲν υπάρχει ταῖς φύσειν οὔτ’ ἐννοια τίς ἐστι τῇ ψυχῇ σύμφυτος ἐξ ἀρχῆς οὐκ ἀκολουθίας οὐ μάχης, οὐ διαρέσεως οὐ συνθέσεως, οὐ δικαίων οὐκ ἄδικων, οὐ καλῶν οὐκ αἰσχρῶν, ἀλλ’ εξ αἰσθήσεως τε καὶ δ’ αἰσθήσεως ἀπαντά τὰ τοιαῦθ’ ἡμῖν ἐγγίγνεσθαι φασί καὶ φαντασίαις τισί καὶ μνήμαις οἰκίζεσθαι τὰ ξύλα.

29 Ὁ ἕνωι || δ’ αὐτῶν καὶ ῥητῶς ἀπεφήμαντο μηδεμίαν εἶναι τῆς ψυχῆς δύναμιν, ἡ λογιζόμεθα, ἀλλ’ ὅπο τῶν αἰσθητῶν ἀγέσθαι παθῶν ἡμᾶς καθάπερ βοσκήματα πρὸς μηδὲν ἀνανεῖσαι μηδ’ ἀντειπεῖν δυναμένους. καθ’ οὖς δηλονότι καὶ ἀνδρεία καὶ φρόνησις καὶ σωφροσύνη καὶ ἐγκράτεια λήρος ἐστι μακρὸς καὶ φιλοῦμεν οὔτ’ ἀλλήλους οὔτε τὰ ἐγγόνα καὶ τοῖς θεοῖς οὐδὲν ἡμῶν μέλει. καταφρονοῦσι δὲ καὶ τῶν ὀνειράτων καὶ τῶν οἰωνῶν καὶ τῶν συμβόλων καὶ πάσης ἀστρολογίας, ύπερ δὲν ἡμεῖς μὲν ἑδία δ’ ἐτέρων γραμμάτων ἐπὶ πλέον ἐσκεψάμεθα περὶ τῶν Ἀσκληπιάδου τοῦ ἱατροῦ σκοπούμενοι δογμάτων. ἐνεστὶ δὲ τοῖς βουλομένοις κακείνους μὲν ὀμιλήσαι τοῖς λόγοις καὶ νῦν δ’ ἥδη σκοπεῖν, ὃσπερ τινῶν δυνῶν ὡδῶν ἡμῖν προκειμένων, ὁποτέραν βέλτιόν ἐστι τρέπεσθαι. Ἱπτοκράτης μὲν γὰρ τὴν προτέραν ῥηθείσαν ἐτράπετο, καθ’ ἡν ἡνωτὶ μὲν ἡ οὐσία καὶ ἀλλοιοῦται καὶ σύμπνουν ὅλον ἐστὶ καὶ σύρροιν τὸ
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xii

what is foreign. Further, she skilfully moulds everything during the stage of genesis; and she also provides for the creatures after birth, employing here other faculties again, namely, one of affection and forethought for offspring, and one of sociability and friendship for kindred. According to the other school, none of these things exist in the natures\(^1\) [of living things], nor is there in the soul any original innate idea, whether of agreement or difference, of separation or synthesis, of justice or injustice, of the beautiful or ugly; all such things, they say, arise in us from sensation and through sensation, and animals are steered by certain images and memories.

Some of these people have even expressly declared that the soul possesses no reasoning faculty, but that we are led like cattle by the impression of our senses, and are unable to refuse or dissent from anything. In their view, obviously, courage, wisdom, temperance, and self-control are all mere nonsense, we do not love either each other or our offspring, nor do the gods care anything for us. This school also despises dreams, birds, omens, and the whole of astrology, subjects with which we have dealt at greater length in another work,\(^2\) in which we discuss the views of Asclepiades the physician.\(^3\) Those who wish to do so may familiarize themselves with these arguments, and they may also consider at this point which of the two roads lying before us is the better one to take. Hippocrates took the first-mentioned. According to this teaching, substance is one and is subject to alteration; there is a consensus in the move-

\(^1\) For "natures" in the plural, involving the idea of a separate nature immanent in each individual, cf. p. 36, note 1.

\(^2\) A lost work.

\(^3\) For Asclepiades v. p. 49, note 5.
σώμα καὶ ἡ φύσις ἀπαντᾷ τεχνικῶς καὶ δικαίως πράττει δυνάμεις ἔχουσα, καθ’ ὅσ’ ἐκαστὸν τῶν μορίων ἐλκεὶ μὲν ἥτ’ ἐαντὸ τὸν οἰκεῖον ἐαντῷ χυμόν, ἐλξαν δὲ προσφύει τε παντὶ μέρει τῶν ἐν αὐτῷ καὶ τελέως ἔξομοιοι, τὸ δὲ μὴ κρατηθέν ἐν τούτῳ μηδὲ τὴν παντελὴ δυνηθέν ἀλλοιωσίν τε καὶ ὀμοιότητα τοῦ τρεφομένου καταδέξασθαι δι’ ἐτέρας αὐ τινος ἐκκριτικῆς δυνάμεως ἀποτρίβεται.

XIII

Μαθεῖν δ’ ἐνεστίν οὐ μόνον ἐξ δὲν οἱ τάναντία τιθέμενοι διαφέρονται τοῖς ἐναργῶς φαινομένοις, εἰς ὁσὸν ὀρθότητός τε καὶ ἀληθείας ἢ ἢκεῖ τὰ Ἰπποκράτους δόγματα, ἄλλα κἀ’ αὐτῶν τῶν κατὰ μέρος ἐν τῇ φυσικῇ θεωρίᾳ ζητομένων τῶν τ’ ἄλλων ἀπάντων καὶ τῶν ἐν τοῖς ζῴοις ἐνεργειῶν. ὃς οὐχ ὁδεμίαν ὁδειν μορίῳ νομίζουσιν ὑπάρχειν ἐλεκτικὴ τῆς οἰκείας ποιότητος δύναμιν, ἀναγκάζονται πολλάκις ἐναντία λέγειν τοὺς ἐναργῶς φαινομένοις, ὥσπερ καὶ Ἀσκληπιάδης ὁ ἱατρὸς ἐπὶ τῶν νεφρῶν ἐποίησεν, οὐδ’ οὐ μόνον Ἰπποκράτης ἢ Διοκλής ἢ Ἐρασίστρατος ἢ


2 i.e. “appropriated”; very nearly “assimilated.”
ments of air and fluid throughout the whole body;¹ Nature acts throughout in an artistic and equitable manner, having certain faculties, by virtue of which each part of the body draws to itself the juice which is proper to it, and, having done so, attaches it to every portion of itself, and completely assimilates it; while such part of the juice as has not been mastered,² and is not capable of undergoing complete alteration and being assimilated to the part which is being nourished, is got rid of by yet another (an expulsive) faculty.

XIII

Now the extent of exactitude and truth in the doctrines of Hippocrates may be gauged, not merely from the way in which his opponents are at variance with obvious facts, but also from the various subjects of natural research themselves—the functions of animals, and the rest. For those people who do not believe that there exists in any part of the animal a faculty for attracting its own special quality³ are compelled repeatedly to deny obvious facts.⁴ For instance, Asclepiades, the physician,⁵ did this in the case of the kidneys. That these are organs for secreting [separating out] the urine, was the belief not only of Hippocrates, Diocles,

³ "Attractricem convenientis qualitatis vim" (Linacre). cf. p. 36, note 2. ⁴ Lit. "obvious phenomena." ⁵ Asclepiades of Bithynia, who flourished in the first half of the first century B.C., was an adherent of the atomistic philosophy of Democritus, and is the typical representative of the Mechanistic school in Graeco-Roman medicine; he disbelieved in any principle of individuality ("nature") in the organism, and his methods of treatment, in accordance with his pathology, were mechano-therapeutical. cf. p. 64, note 3.
ΓΑΛΕΝ

Πραξαγόρας ἢ τις ἄλλος ιατρὸς ἀριστος ὄργανα διακριτικὰ τῶν οὐρών πεπιστεύκασιν ὑπάρχειν,

αλλὰ καὶ οἱ μάγειροι σχεδὸν ἀπαντεῖς ἱσασιν, ὡσιμέραι θεώμενοι τὴν τε θέσιν αὐτῶν καὶ τὸν ἀφ’ ἐκατέροι πόρον εἰς τὴν κύστιν ἐμβάλλοντα, τὸν οὐρητῆρα καλούμενον, ἐξ αὐτῆς τῆς κατα-
σκευῆς ἀναλογιζόμενοι τὴν τε χρείαν αὐτῶν καὶ τὴν δύναμιν. καὶ πρὸ γε τῶν μαγείρων ἀπαντῶν
ἀνθρωποὶ καὶ δυσουροῦντες πολλάκις καὶ παντά-
πασιν ἰσχυροῦντες, ὅταν ἀλγῶσι μὲν τὰ κατὰ
τὰς φῶς, ψαμμώδη δ’ ἔξορωσιν, νεφριτικοὺς
ὀνομάζουσι σφᾶς αὐτοὺς.

Ἀσκληπιάδην δ’ οἷμαι μηδὲ λίθον οὐρηθέντα
ποτὲ θεάσασθαι πρὸς τῶν οὐτῶν πασχόντων μὴδ’
ὡς προηγήσατο κατὰ τὴν μεταξὶ τῶν νεφρῶν
καὶ τῆς κύστεως χώραν ὀδύνη τῆς ἀξεία διερχο-
μένου τοῦ λίθου τῶν οὐρητῆρα μηδ’ ὡς οὐρηθέντος
αὐτοῦ τὰ τε τῆς ὀδύνης καὶ τὰ τῆς ἰσχυρίας
ἐπαύσατο παραχρῆμα. πῶς οὖν εἰς τὴν κύστειν
tὸ λόγῳ παράγει τὸ οὐρον, ἄξιοι ἀκούσαι καὶ
θαυμάσαι τάνδρος τὴν σοφίαν, ὅς καταλιπὼν
οὐτῶς ευρείας ὀδοὺς ἐναργώς φαινομένας ἀφανείς
καὶ στενὰς καὶ παντάπασιν ἰαναισθήτουσ || ὑπέ-
θετο. βούλεται γάρ εἰς ἄτμοις ἀναλυόμενοι τὸ
πινόμενον ὑγρὸν εἰς τὴν κύστιν διαδίδοσθαι
κατειτ’ ἐκείνων αὐθις ἀλλήλοις συνιόντων
οὐτῶς ἀπολαμβάνειν αὐτὸ τὴν ἀρχαίαν ἱδέαν καὶ
γίγνεθαι πάλιν ὑγρὸν ἐξ ἀτμῶν ἀτεχνῶς ὡς περὶ
σπογγιάς τινος ἢ ἐρίου τῆς κύστεως διανοοῦ-
μενος, ἀλλ’ οὐ σώματος ἀκριβῶς πυκνοῦ καὶ
στεγανοῦ δύο χιτώνας ἰσχυροτάτου κεκτημένου,

50
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xiii

Erasistratus, Praxagoras,¹ and all other physicians of eminence, but practically every butcher is aware of this, from the fact that he daily observes both the position of the kidneys and the duct (termed the ureter) which runs from each kidney into the bladder, and from this arrangement he infers their characteristic use and faculty. But, even leaving the butchers aside, all people who suffer either from frequent dysuria or from retention of urine call themselves “nephritics,”² when they feel pain in the loins and pass sandy matter in their water.

I do not suppose that Asclepiades ever saw a stone which had been passed by one of these sufferers, or observed that this was preceded by a sharp pain in the region between kidneys and bladder as the stone traversed the ureter, or that, when the stone was passed, both the pain and the retention at once ceased. It is worth while, then, learning how his theory accounts for the presence of urine in the bladder, and one is forced to marvel at the ingenuity of a man who puts aside these broad, clearly visible routes,⁸ and postulates others which are narrow, invisible—indeed, entirely imperceptible. His view, in fact, is that the fluid which we drink passes into the bladder by being resolved into vapours, and that, when these have been again condensed, it thus regains its previous form, and turns from vapour into fluid. He simply looks upon the bladder as a sponge or a piece of wool, and not as the perfectly compact and impervious body that it is, with two very

¹ Diocles of Carystus was the chief representative of the Dogmatic or Hippocratic school in the first half of the fourth century B.C. Praxagoras was his disciple, and followed him in the leadership of the school. For Erasistratus, cf. p. 95 et seq.
² Sufferers from kidney-trouble.
³ The ureters.
GALEN

δι' ὃν εἴπερ διέρχεσθαι φήσομεν τοὺς ἀτμούς, τὴν δὴ πολλοὶ διὰ τοῦ περιτοναίου καὶ τῶν φρενῶν
dιελθόντες ἐνέπλησαν ὑδατός τὸ ἐπιγάστριον ἀπαν καὶ τὸν θώρακα; ἀλλὰ παχύτερος, φησίν,
ἐστὶ δηλαδὴ καὶ στεγανώτερος ὁ περιτόναιος χιτῶν τῆς κύστεως καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἐκείνος μὲν
ἀποστέγει τοὺς ἀτμούς, ἢ δὲ κύστις παραδεχέται.
ἀλλ' εἴπερ ἀνατεμήκει ποτὲ, τάχ' ἂν ἦπιστατο
tοῦ μὲν ἔξωθεν χιτώνα τῆς κύστεως ἀπὸ τοῦ
περιτοναίου περικότα τὴν αὐτὴν ἐκείνη φύσιν
ἐξειν, τὸν δὲ ἐνδοθεν τὸν αὐτῆς τῆς κύστεως ἴδιον
πλέον ἢ διπλάσιον ἐκείνον τὸ πάχος ὑπάρχειν.

33 Ἄλλ' ἵσως οὔτε τὸ || πάχος οὐθ' ἡ λεπτότης
tῶν χιτῶνων, ἀλλ' ἡ θέσις τῆς κύστεως αἰτία τοῦ
φέρεσθαι τοὺς ἀτμούς εἰς αὐτὴν. καὶ μὴν εἰ καὶ
dιὰ ταλα πάντα πιθανὸν ἢν αὐτοὺς ἐνταυθοὶ
sυναθροίζεσθαι, τὸ γε τῆς θέσεως μόνης αὐτάρκες
κωλύσαι. κάτω μὲν γὰρ ἡ κύστις κεῖται, τοῖς δὲ
ἀτμοῖς σύμφωτος ἡ πρὸς τὸ μετέωρον φορά, ὥστε
πολύ πρότερον ἄν ἐπλησαν ἀπαντὰ τὰ κατὰ τὸν
θώρακά τε καὶ τὸν πνεύμονα, πρὶν ἐπὶ τὴν κύστιν
ἀφικέσθαι.

Καίτοι τί θέσεως κύστεως καὶ περιτοναίου καὶ
θώρακος μυημονεύως; διεκπεσόντες γὰρ δὴ τούς
tοὺς τῇ κοιλίᾳ καὶ τῶν ἐντέρων χιτῶνας οἱ
ἀτμοὶ κατὰ τὴν μεταξὺ χώραν αὐτῶν τε τούτων
καὶ τοῦ περιτοναίου συναθροισθῆσονται καὶ ὑγρῶν
ἐνταυθοὶ γενήσονται, ὡσπερ καὶ τοῖς ὑδερικοῖς ἐν
tούτῳ τῷ χωρίῳ τὸ πλείστον ἀθροίζεται τοῦ

1 Unless otherwise stated, "peritoneum" stands for pari-
etal peritoneum alone.

52
strong coats. For if we say that the vapours pass through these coats, why should they not pass through the peritoneum 1 and the diaphragm, thus filling the whole abdominal cavity and thorax with water? "But," says he, "of course the peritoneal coat is more impervious than the bladder, and this is why it keeps out the vapours, while the bladder admits them." Yet if he had ever practised anatomy, he might have known that the outer coat of the bladder springs from the peritoneum and is essentially the same as it, and that the inner coat, which is peculiar to the bladder, is more than twice as thick as the former.

Perhaps, however, it is not the thickness or thinness of the coats, but the situation of the bladder, which is the reason for the vapours being carried into it? On the contrary, even if it were probable for every other reason that the vapours accumulate there, yet the situation of the bladder would be enough in itself to prevent this. For the bladder is situated below, whereas vapours have a natural tendency to rise upwards; thus they would fill all the region of the thorax and lungs long before they came to the bladder.

But why do I mention the situation of the bladder, peritoneum, and thorax? For surely, when the vapours have passed through the coats of the stomach and intestines, it is in the space between these and the peritoneum 2 that they will collect and become liquefied (just as in dropsical subjects it is in this region that most of the water gathers). 3 Otherwise the vapours must necessarily pass straight forward.

---

2 In the peritoneal cavity.
3 Contrast, however, anasarca, p. 41.

53
ΓΑΛΕΝ

υδατος, ἢ πάντως αὐτοὺς χρῆ φέρεσθαι πρόσω
διὰ πάντων τῶν ὁπωσοῦν ὁμιλοῦντων καὶ μηδέ
τοθ' ἵστασθαι. ἀλλ' εἰ καὶ τούτο τις ὑπόθειτο,
διεκπεσόντες ἂν οὕτως οὐ τὸ περιτόναυον μόνον
ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ ἐπιγάστριον, εἰς τὸ περίεχον σκε-
δασθείν ἢ πάντως ἄν ὑπὸ τῷ δέρματι || συν-
αθροισθείν.

Ἀλλὰ καὶ πρὸς ταῦτ' ἀντιλέγειν οἱ νῦν
Ἀσκληπιάδειοι πειρώνται, καίτοι πρὸς ἀπάντων
ἀεὶ τῶν παρατυγχανόντων αὐτοῖς, ὅταν περὶ
tούτων ἐρίζωσι, καταγελώμενοι. οὕτως ἂρα
dυσαπότριπτόν τι κακόν ἔστιν ἡ περὶ τὰς αἰρέσεις
φιλοτιμία καὶ δυσέκνιττον ἐν τοῖς μάλιστα καὶ
ψώρας ἀπάσης δυσιτότερον.

Τῶν γονῶν καθ' ἡμᾶς τις σοφιστῶν τά τ' ἄλλα
καὶ περὶ τοὺς ἑριστικοὺς λόγους ἰκανῶς συγκε-
kροτημένοι καὶ δεινὸς εἶπεῖν, εἴπερ τις ἄλλος,
ἀφικόμενος ἐμοὶ τοῖς ὑπὲρ τούτων εἰς λόγους,
tοσοῦτον ἀπέδει τοῦ δυσωπεύσθαι πρὸς τινος
tῶν εἰρημένων, ὡστε καὶ θαυμάζειν ἐφασκεν
ἐμοῦ τά σαφῶς φαινόμενα λόγους ληρώδεσιν
ἀνατρέπειν ἐπιχειροῦντος. ἐναργῶς γὰρ ὁσημέραι
θεωρεῖσθαι τὰς κύστεις ἀπάσας, εἰ τις αὐτὰς
ἐμπλήσεις ὑδατος ἡ ἄρος, εἰτα δήσας τὸν
τράχηλον πιέζου παίναχθεν, οὐδαμόθεν μεθεί-
σας οὐδέν, ἀλλ' ἀκριβῶς ἄπαν ἐντὸς ἑαυτῶν
στεγοῦσας. καίτοι γ' εἴπερ ἃςαν τινες ἐκ τῶν
νεφρῶν εἰς αὐτὰς ἥκουντες αἰσθητοὶ καὶ μεγάλοι
πόροι, πάντως ἄν, ἐφη, δι' ἐκείνων, ὡστερ εἰσῄει
35 τὸ || ἱγρὸν εἰς αὐτάς, οὕτω καὶ θλιβόντων
ἐξεκρίνετο. ταῦτα καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτ' εἰπὼν ἐξαιρήθης

54
through everything which in any way comes in contact with them, and will never come to a standstill. But, if this be assumed, then they will traverse not merely the peritoneum but also the epigastrium, and will become dispersed into the surrounding air; otherwise they will certainly collect under the skin.

Even these considerations, however, our present-day Asclepiadeans attempt to answer, despite the fact that they always get soundly laughed at by all who happen to be present at their disputations on these subjects—so difficult an evil to get rid of is this sectarian partizanship, so excessively resistant to all cleansing processes, harder to heal than any itch!

Thus, one of our Sophists who is a thoroughly hardened disputer and as skilful a master of language as there ever was, once got into a discussion with me on this subject; so far from being put out of countenance by any of the above-mentioned considerations, he even expressed his surprise that I should try to overturn obvious facts by ridiculous arguments! "For," said he, "one may clearly observe any day in the case of any bladder, that, if one fills it with water or air and then ties up its neck and squeezes it all round, it does not let anything out at any point, but accurately retains all its contents. And surely," said he, "if there were any large and perceptible channels coming into it from the kidneys the liquid would run out through these when the bladder was squeezed, in the same way that it entered?" 1 Having abruptly made these and

1 Regurgitation, however, is prevented by the fact that the ureter runs for nearly one inch obliquely through the bladder wall before opening into its cavity, and thus an efficient valve is produced.
ГАЛЕН

ἀπταίστω καὶ σαφεῖ τῷ στόματι τελευτῶν ἀναπτηδήσας ἀπῆκε καταλυτῶν ἡμᾶς ὡς οὐδὲ πιθανῆς τινος ἀντιλογίας εὐπορῆσαι δυναμένους.

Οὕτως οὐ μόνον υγίες οὐδὲν ἵσασιν οἱ ταῖς αἱρέσεις δουλεύοντες, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ μαθεῖν ὑπομένουσι. δέον γὰρ ἀκούσαι τὴν αἰτίαν, δὴ ἢν εἰσιέναι μὲν δύναται διὰ τῶν ὀφρητήρων εἰς τὴν κύστιν τὸ ὑγρόν, ἐξεῖναι δὲ αὐθικὸς ὑπὸ τὴν αὐτὴν ὄδον οὐκέθ' ὅτων τε, καὶ θαυμάσαι τὴν τέχνην τῆς φύσεως, οὕτε μαθεῖν ἐθέλουσι καὶ λοιδοροῦνται προσέτε μάτην ὑπ' αὐτὴς ἀλλὰ τε πολλὰ καὶ τοὺς νεφρὸν γεγονέναι φάσκοντες.

εἰσὶ δ' οἱ καὶ διεκθήσαι παρόντων αὐτῶν τοὺς ἀπὸ τῶν νεφρῶν εἰς τὴν κύστιν ἐμφυσιαίας ὀφρητήρας ὑπομείναντες ἐτόλμησαν εἰπεῖν οἱ μὲν, ὅτι μάτην καὶ οὐτοὶ γεγόνασιν, οἱ δ' ὅτι σπερματικοὶ τινὲς εἰσὶν πόροι καὶ διὰ τούτο κατὰ τὸν τράχηλον αὐτῆς, οὐκ εἰς τὸ κύτος ἐμφύσουσιν. 

δείξαντες οὐν ἡμεῖς αὐτοίς τοὺς ὡς ἀληθῶς σπερματικοὺς πόρους κατωτέρω τῶν ὀφρητήρων ||

36 ἐμβάλλειν ταῖς τον τράχηλον, νῦν γοῦν, εἰ καὶ μὴ πρότερον, φήμην ἀπάξειν τὲ τῶν ψευδῶς ὕπειρημένων ἐπὶ τὲ τὰναιτία μεταστήσειν αὐτίκα. οἱ δὲ καὶ πρὸς τούτ' ἀντιλέγειν ἐτόλμων οὐδὲν εἶναι θαυμαστὸν εἰπόντες, ἐν ἐκεῖνοις μὲν ὡς ἀν στεγανωτέροις οὐσίαν ἐπὶ πλέον ὑπομένειν τὸ σπέρμα, κατὰ δὲ τοὺς ἀπὸ τῶν νεφρῶν ὡς ἀν ἰκανῶς ἀνευρυσμένους ἐκρεῖν διὰ ταχέων. ἡμεῖς

1 On the τέχνη (artistic or creative skill) shown by the living organism (φύσις) v. pp. 25, 45, 47; Introduction, p. xxix.
2 Direk denial of Aristotle's dictum that "Nature does nothing in vain." We are reminded of the view of certain

56
similar remarks in precise and clear tones, he concluded by jumping up and departing—leaving me as though I were quite incapable of finding any plausible answer!

The fact is that those who are enslaved to their sects are not merely devoid of all sound knowledge, but they will not even stop to learn! Instead of listening, as they ought, to the reason why liquid can enter the bladder through the ureters, but is unable to go back again the same way,—instead of admiring Nature’s artistic skill,—they refuse to learn; they even go so far as to scoff, and maintain that the kidneys, as well as many other things, have been made by Nature for no purpose!² And some of them who had allowed themselves to be shown the ureters coming from the kidneys and becoming implanted in the bladder, even had the audacity to say that these also existed for no purpose; and others said that they were spermatic ducts, and that this was why they were inserted into the neck of the bladder and not into its cavity. When, therefore, we had demonstrated to them the real spermatic ducts³ entering the neck of the bladder lower down than the ureters, we supposed that, if we had not done so before, we would now at least draw them away from their false assumptions, and convert them forthwith to the opposite view. But even this they presumed to dispute, and said that it was not to be wondered at that the semen should remain longer in these latter ducts, these being more constricted, and that it should flow quickly down the ducts which came from the kidneys, seeing that these were modern laboratory physicians and surgeons that the colon is a "useless" organ. ⁴cf. Erasistratus, p. 143.

² The vasa deferentia.
οὖν ἡμαγκάσθημεν αὐτὸς τοῦ λοιποῦ δεικνύειν εἰσρέου τῇ κύστει διὰ τῶν οὐρητήρων τὸ οὖρον ἐναργῶς ἐπὶ ζώντος ἐτι τοῦ ζῴου, μόνη ἄν οὕτω ποτὲ τὴν φλυαρίαν αὐτῶν ἐπισχήσειν ἐλπίζοντες.

'Ὁ δὲ πρῶτος τῆς δείξεως ἐστὶ τοιόσοδε. διελεῖν χρή τὸ πρὸ τῶν οὐρητήρων περιτόναιον, εἶτα βρόχοις αὐτοὺς ἐκλάβειν κάπετε ἐπιδήσαντας ἑάσαι τὸ ζῴου οὐ γὰρ ἀν οὐρησειεν ἐτι. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα λυεῖν μὲν τοὺς ἐξωθέν δεσμοὺς, δεικνύναι δὲ κενὴν μὲν τὴν κύστιν, μεστοὺς δὲ ἵκαιοι καὶ διατεταμένους τοὺς οὐρητήρας καὶ κινδυνεύοντας ῥαγῆναι κάπετα τοὺς βρόχους αὐτῶν ἀφελόντας ἐναργῶς ὁρὰν ἡδη πληρομένην οὖρον τὴν κύστιν.

37 Ἔπι δὲ τούτῳ || φανέρητι, πρὶν οὐρησαί τὸ ζῴου, βρόχον αὐτοῦ περιβαλεῖν χρή τῷ αἰδοίῳ κάπετα ἠλέβειν πανταχόθεν τὴν κύστιν. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν οὐδὲν ἐτι διὰ τῶν οὐρητήρων ἐπανέλθοι πρὸς τοὺς νεφροὺς. κἂν τούτῳ ὤθην γίγνεται τὸ μὴ μόνον ἐπὶ τεθνεώτος ἄλλα καὶ περιόντος ἐτι τοῦ ζῷου κωλύσσαθι μεταλαμβάνειν αὐθίς ἐκ τῆς κύστεως τοὺς οὐρητήρας τὸ οὐρον. ἐπὶ τούτοις ὀφθείσαι ἐπιτρέπειν ἡδη τὸ ζῷου οὐρείων λύνοντας αὐτοῦ τὸν ἐπὶ τῷ αἰδοίῳ βρόχον, εἰτ' αὐθίς ἐπιβαλεῖν μὲν βατέρῳ τῶν οὐρητήρων, ἢςαι δὲ τὸν ἐτέρον εἰς τὴν κύστιν συρρεῖν καὶ τινα διαλιπόντας χρόνον ἐπιδεικνύειν ἡδη, πῶς ὁ μὲν ἐτέρος αὐτῶν ὁ δεδεμένος μεστός καὶ διατεταμένος κατὰ τὰ πρὸς τῶν νεφρῶν μέρη φαίνεται, ὁ δ' ἐτέρος ὁ λελυμένος αὐτὸς μὲν χαλαρός ἐστι, πεπληρώκε δ' οὖρον τὴν κύστιν. εἰτ' αὐθίς διατεμένων πρῶτον μὲν τὸν πλήρη καὶ δείξαι, πῶς ἐξακοντίζεται τὸ
well dilated. We were, therefore, further compelled to show them in a still living animal, the urine plainly running out through the ureters into the bladder; even thus we hardly hoped to check their nonsensical talk.

Now the method of demonstration is as follows. One has to divide the peritoneum in front of the ureters, then secure these with ligatures, and next, having bandaged up the animal, let him go (for he will not continue to urinate). After this one loosens the external bandages and shows the bladder empty and the ureters quite full and distended—in fact almost on the point of rupturing; on removing the ligature from them, one then plainly sees the bladder becoming filled with urine.

When this has been made quite clear, then, before the animal urinates, one has to tie a ligature round his penis and then to squeeze the bladder all over; still nothing goes back through the ureters to the kidneys. Here, then, it becomes obvious that not only in a dead animal, but in one which is still living, the ureters are prevented from receiving back the urine from the bladder. These observations having been made, one now loosens the ligature from the animal's penis and allows him to urinate, then again ligatures one of the ureters and leaves the other to discharge into the bladder. Allowing, then, some time to elapse, one now demonstrates that the ureter which was ligatured is obviously full and distended on the side next to the kidneys, while the other one—that from which the ligature had been taken—is itself flaccid, but has filled the bladder with urine. Then, again, one must divide the full ureter, and demonstrate how
 GALEN

οὐρον ἐξ αὐτοῦ, καθάπερ ἐν ταῖς φλεβοτομίαις τὸ αἷμα, μετὰ ταῦτα δὲ καὶ τὸν ἕτερον αὖθις διατεμείν κάπετ' ἑπιδῆσαι τὸ ξύλον ἔξωθεν, ἀμ- 38 φοτέρων διηρημένων, || εἰδ' ὅταν ἱκανῶς ἔχειν δοκῇ, λύσαι τὸν δεσμόν. εὑρεθῆσεται γὰρ ἡ μὲν κύστις κενή, πληρες δ' οὐρον τὸ μεταξὺ τῶν ἑντέρων τε καὶ τοῦ περιτοναίου χωρίου ἀπαν, ὡς ἃν εἰ καὶ ὑδερικὸν ἦν τὸ ξύλον. ταῦτ' ὅπων εἰ τις αὐτὸς καθ' ἐαυτὸν θυσιείθη βασανίζειν ἐπὶ ξύλου, μεγάλως μοι δοκεῖ καταγνωσθεῖν τῆς Ἀσκληπιάδου προπετείας. εἰ δὲ δὴ καὶ τὴν αἰτίαν μάθοι, δὴ ἢν οὔδεν ἐκ τῆς κύστεως εἰς τοὺς οὐρητήρας ἀντεκρεί, πεισθῆναι ἂν μοι δοκεῖ καὶ διὰ τοῦτο τὴν εἰς τὰ ζῶα πρόνοιαν τε καὶ τέχνην τῆς φύσεως.

Ἰπποκράτης μὲν ὅπων ὅν ἱσμεν ἰατρῶν τε καὶ 
φιλοσόφων πρῶτος ἀπάντων, ὡς ἂν καὶ πρῶτος 
ἐπιγνοὺς τὰ τῆς φύσεως ἔργα, θαυμάζει τε καὶ 
διὰ παντὸς αὐτὴν ὑμεῖι δικαίαν ὁνομαζόν καὶ 
μόνην ἑξαρκεῖν εἰς ἀπαντα τοὺς ξύλοις φησίν, 
αὐτὴν ἐξ αὐτῆς ἀδιάδωσα πράττουσαν ἀπάντα 
τὰ δέουντα· τοιαύτην δ' οὖσαν αὐτὴν εὐθέως 
καὶ δυνάμεις ὑπέλαβεν ἐχειν ἐλεκτικὴν μὲν τῶν 
oικείων, ἀποκριτικὴν δὲ τῶν ἀλλοτρίων καὶ 
τρέφειν τε καὶ ἀυξεῖν αὐὴ τῆν τὰ ζῶα καὶ κρίνειν 
tὰ νοσήματα· καὶ διὰ τοῦτ' ἐν τοῖς σώμασιν 
ἡμῶν σύμπνοιάν τε μίαν εἴναι φησι καὶ σύρροιαν 
cαι πάντα συμπαθέα. κατὰ δὲ τὸν Ἀσκληπιάδην

2 cf. p. 36, note 2.

60
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xiii

the urine spurts out of it, like blood in the operation of venesection; and after this one cuts through the other also, and both being thus divided, one bandages up the animal externally. Then when enough time seems to have elapsed, one takes off the bandages; the bladder will now be found empty, and the whole region between the intestines and the peritoneum full of urine, as if the animal were suffering from dropsy. Now, if anyone will but test this for himself on an animal, I think he will strongly condemn the rashness of Asclepiades, and if he also learns the reason why nothing regurgitates from the bladder into the ureters, I think he will be persuaded by this also of the forethought and art shown by Nature in relation to animals.¹

Now Hippocrates, who was the first known to us of all those who have been both physicians and philosophers inasmuch as he was the first to recognize what Nature effects, expresses his admiration of her, and is constantly singing her praises and calling her "just." Alone, he says, she suffices for the animal in every respect, performing of her own accord and without any teaching all that is required. Being such, she has, as he supposes, certain faculties, one attractive of what is appropriate,² and another eliminative of what is foreign, and she nourishes the animal, makes it grow, and expels its diseases by crisis.³ Therefore he says that there is in our bodies a concordance in the movements of air and fluid, and that everything is in sympathy. According to Asclepiades, however, nothing is

¹ The morbid material passed successively through the stages of "crudity," "coction" (pepsia), and "elimination" (crisis). For "critical days" cf. p. 74, note 1.
οὐδὲν οὐδὲν συμπαθεῖς ἐστὶ φύσει, διηρήμενης τε καὶ κατατεθραυσμένης εἰς ἀναρμα στοιχεῖα καὶ ληρώδεις ὅγκους ἀπάσης τῆς οὐσίας. εἰς ἀνάγκης οὖν ἁλλα τε μυρία τοῖς ἑναργοῖς φαινομένοις ἐναντίως ἀπεφήνατο καὶ τῆς φύσεως ἦγυόησε τὴν τε τῶν οἰκείων ἐπισπαστικῆν δύναμιν καὶ τὴν τῶν ἀλλοτρίων ἀποκριτικῆν. ἐπὶ μὲν οὖν τῆς ἐξαιματώσεως τε καὶ ἀναδόσεως ἐξευθέ τινα ψυχρᾶν ἀδολεσχίαν εἰς δὲ τὴν τῶν περιττωμάτων κάθαρσιν οὐδὲν δλως εὐρών εἰπεῖν οὐκ ἑκατησε ομόσε χωρίσαι τοῖς φαινομένοις, ἐπὶ μὲν τῆς τῶν οὐρών διακρίσεως ἀποστερήσας μὲν τῶν τε νεφρῶν καὶ τῶν οὐρητήρων τὴν ἐνέργειαν, ἄδηλους δὲ τινας πόρους εἰς τὴν κύστίν ὑποθέμενον· τοῦτο γὰρ ἡν δηλαδὴ μέγα καὶ σεμνῶν ἀπιστήσαντα τοῖς φαινομένοις πιστεύσαι τοῖς ἄδηλοις.

40 Ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς ξανθῆς χολῆς ἔτι μείζον αὐτῷ καὶ νεανικότερον ἔστι τὸ τόλμημα· γεννᾶσθαι γὰρ αὐτὴν ἐν τοῖς χοληδόχοις ἀγγείοις, οὐ διακρίνεσθαι λέγει.

Πῶς οὖν τοῖς ικετηριοῖς αἱ ἁμφω συμπίπτει, τὰ μὲν διαχωρήματα μηδὲν δλως ἐν αὐτοῖς ἠχοῦτα χολῆς, ἀνάπλεων δ' αὐτοῖς γεγομένον δлов τὸ σώμα; ληρεῖν πάλιν ἐνταῦθ' ἀναγκάζεται τοῖς ἐπὶ τῶν οὐρῶν εἰρημένοις παραπλησίως. ληρεῖ δ' οὐδὲν ἥττον καὶ περὶ τῆς μελαίνης χολῆς καὶ τοῦ σπληνῶς οὔτε τ` ποθ` ὑφ' Ἰπποκράτους εἰσήκται συνείς ἀντιλέγειν τ` ἐπιχειρῶν οἷς οὐκ οἶδεν ἐμπλήκτω τινὶ καὶ μανικῷ στόματι.

---

1 This was the process by which nutriment was taken up from the alimentary canal; "absorption," "dispersal;" cf. 62
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xiii

naturally in sympathy with anything else, all substance being divided and broken up into inharmonious elements and absurd "molecules." Necessarily, then, besides making countless other statements in opposition to plain fact, he was ignorant of Nature's faculties, both that attracting what is appropriate, and that expelling what is foreign. Thus he invented some wretched nonsense to explain blood-production and anadosis,¹ and, being utterly unable to find anything to say regarding the clearing-out² of superfluities, he did not hesitate to join issue with obvious facts, and, in this matter of urinary secretion, to deprive both the kidneys and the ureters of their activity, by assuming that there were certain invisible channels opening into the bladder. It was, of course, a grand and impressive thing to do, to mistrust the obvious, and to pin one's faith in things which could not be seen!

Also, in the matter of the yellow bile, he makes an even grander and more spirited venture; for he says this is actually generated in the bile-ducts, not merely separated out.

How comes it, then, that in cases of jaundice two things happen at the same time—that the dejections contain absolutely no bile, and that the whole body becomes full of it? He is forced here again to talk nonsense, just as he did in regard to the urine. He also talks no less nonsense about the black bile and the spleen, not understanding what was said by Hippocrates; and he attempts in stupid—I might say insane—language, to contradict what he knows nothing about.

p. 13, note 5. The subject is dealt with more fully in chap. xvi.

¹ Lit. catharsis.
Τί δὲ τὸ κέρδος ἐκ τῶν τοιούτων δογμάτων εἰς τὰς θεραπείας ἐκτήσατο; μὴτε νεφριτικόν τι νόσημα δύνασθαι θεραπεύσαι μὴτε ἰκτερικόν μὴτε μελαγχολικόν, ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ τοῦ πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις οὐχ Ἰπποκράτει μόνον ὁμολογοῦμένου τοῦ καθαίρειν τῶν φαρμάκων ἐνια μὲν τὴν ξανθὴν χολήν, ἐνια δὲ τὴν μέλαιναν, ἀλλὰ δὲ τίνα φλέγμα καὶ τίνα τὸ λεπτὸν καὶ ὑδατώδες περίττωμα, μηδὲ περὶ τούτων συγχωρεῖν, ἀλλ’ ὑπ’ αὐτῶν τῶν φαρμάκων γίγνεσθαι λέγειν τοιούτον ἐκαστὸν τῶν κενομένων, ἀσπέρ ὑπὸ τῶν χοληθρῶν πόρων τὴν χολήν καὶ μηδὲν διαφέρειν κατὰ τὸν θαναστὸν Ἀσκληπιάδην ἢ ὑδραγωγόν διδόναι τοῖς υδρώσιν ἢ χολαγωγὸν φάρμακον. Ἀπαντά γάρ ὅμως κενοῦν καὶ συντήκειν τὸ σῶμα καὶ τὸ σύντηγμα τούντει τι φαίνεσθαι ποιεῖν, μὴ πρότερον ὑπάρχον τοιούτον.

'Αρ’ οὖν οὐ μαίνεσθαι νομιστέον αὐτῶν ἢ παντάπασιν ἄπειρον εἶναι τῶν ἔργων τῆς τέχνης; τίς γάρ οὐκ οἴδειν, ὡς, εἰ μὲν φλέγματος ἀγωγὸν δοθείη φάρμακον τοῖς ἰκτεριώσιν, οὐκ ἂν οὐδὲ τέτταρας καθάρθειν οὔτω δ’ οὖδ’ εἰ τῶν ὑδραγώγων τι χολαγωγῷ δὲ φαρμάκῳ πλείστον μὲν ἐκκενοῦται χολῆς, αὐτίκα δὲ καθαρὸς τοῖς οὔτω καθαρθείσιν ὁ χρῶς γίγνεται. πολλοὺς γοῦν ἡμεῖς μετὰ τὸ θεραπεύσαι τὴν ἐν τῷ ἑπατὶ διάθεσιν ἀπαξ καθήραντες ἀπηλλάξα-μεν τοῦ παθήματος. οὐ μὴν οὖδ’ εἰ φλέγματος ἀγωγῷ καθαίροις φαρμάκῳ, πλέον ἂν τι δια-πράξαιον.

1 ἢ.ε. urine. 2 On use of κενῶ v. p. 67, note 9. 3 ἢ.ε. bile and phlegm had no existence as such before the
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xiii

And what profit did he derive from these opinions from the point of view of treatment? He neither was able to cure a kidney ailment, nor jaundice, nor a disease of black bile, nor would he agree with the view held not merely by Hippocrates but by all men regarding drugs—that some of them purge away yellow bile, and others black, some again phlegm, and others the thin and watery superfluous; he held that all the substances evacuated were produced by the drugs themselves, just as yellow bile is produced by the biliary passages! It matters nothing, according to this extraordinary man, whether we give a hydragogue or a cholagogue in a case of dropsy, for these all equally purge and dissolve the body, and produce a solution having such and such an appearance, which did not exist as such before!

Must we not, therefore, suppose he was either mad, or entirely unacquainted with practical medicine? For who does not know that if a drug for attracting phlegm be given in a case of jaundice it will not even evacuate four cyathi of phlegm? Similarly also if one of the hydragogues be given. A cholagogue, on the other hand, clears away a great quantity of bile, and the skin of patients so treated at once becomes clear. I myself have, in many cases, after treating the liver condition, then removed the disease by means of a single purgation; whereas, if one had employed a drug for removing phlegm one would have done no good.

Asclepiades did not believe that diseases were due to a materia peccans, but to disturbances in the movements of the molecules (γυκοί) which constitute the body; thus, in opposition to the humorists such as Galen, he had no use for drugs. cf. p. 49, note 5. 4 About 4 oz., or one-third of a pint.
GALEN

Καὶ ταῦτ᾽ οὖν Ἰπποκράτης μὲν οὕτως οἴδε γιγνόμενα, τοῖς δὲ ἀπὸ τῆς ἐμπειρίας μόνης ὁμο- 42 μένοις ἐτέρως ἐγγυωσταί, ἀλλὰ κάκει|νιοὺς ὠσαύτως καὶ πᾶσιν ἰατροῖς, οἷς μέλει τῶν ἔργων τῆς τέχνης, οὕτω δοκεῖ πλὴν Ἀσκληπιάδου. προδοσίαν γὰρ εἶναι νενόμικη τῶν στοιχείων ὑπὸ ὑπεθήκη τῆς ἀληθῆ περὶ τῶν τοιούτων ὁμολογίαν. εἰ γὰρ ὅλως εὐρεθεὶς τι φάρμακον ἐλκυτικὸν τοῦτο τίνος τοῦ χυμοῦ μόνου, κύνδυνος κρατεῖν δηλαδὴ τῷ λόγῳ τὸ ἐν ἐκάστῳ τῶν σωμάτων εἶναι τινὰ δύναμιν ἐπισταστικὴν τῆς οἰκείας ποιότητος. διὰ τούτο κνῆκον μὲν καὶ κόκκον τοῦ κνίδου καὶ ἱπποφαίες οὐχ ἔλκειν ἐκ τοῦ σώματος ἀλλὰ ποιεῖν τὸ φλέγμα φησίν· ἄνθος δὲ χαλκοῦ καὶ λεπίδα καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν κεκαμμένον χαλκὸν καὶ χαμαιδρῶν καὶ χαμαιλέοντα εἰς ὕδωρ ἀναλύειν τὸ σῶμα καὶ τοὺς υδερικοὺς ὑπὸ τούτων οὐ καθαιρομένους ὀνύ- νασθαι ἀλλὰ κενουμένους συναιξόντων δηλαδὴ τὸ πάθος. εἰ γὰρ οὐ κενοὶ τὸ περιεχόμενον ἐν τοῖς σώμασιν ὑδατῶδες ὑγρὸν ἀλλ᾽ αὐτὸ γεννᾶ, τῷ νοσήματι προστιμωρεῖται. καὶ μὲν γε καὶ ἡ σκαμμονία πρὸς τῷ μὴ κενοῦν ἐκ τοῦ σώματος τῶν ἰκτερίκων τὴν χολὴν ἔτι καὶ τὸ χρηστὸν αἶμα 43 χολὴν ἐργαζομένη || καὶ συντήκουσα τὸ σῶμα καὶ τηλικαίᾳ κακὰ δρῶσα καὶ τὸ πάθος ἐπαύξουσα κατὰ γε τὸν Ἀσκληπιάδου λόγον.

"Ομως ἐναργῶς ὀρᾶται πολλοὺς ὅφελοῦσα. ναί, φησίν, οὖνανται μὲν, ἀλλ᾽ αὐτῷ μόνῳ τῷ

1 The Empiricists. cf. Introduction, p. xiii.
2 His ὤγκοι or molecules.
3 He does not say “organized” or “living” body; inanimate things were also thought to possess “natures”; cf. p. 2, note 1.
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xiii

Nor is Hippocrates the only one who knows this to be so, whilst those who take experience alone as their starting-point¹ know otherwise; they, as well as all physicians who are engaged in the practice of medicine, are of this opinion. Asclepiades, however, is an exception; he would hold it a betrayal of his assumed "elements"² to confess the truth about such matters. For if a single drug were to be discovered which attracted such and such a humour only, there would obviously be danger of the opinion gaining ground that there is in every body³ a faculty which attracts its own particular quality. He therefore says that safflower,⁴ the Cnidian berry,⁵ and Hippophaes,⁶ do not draw phlegm from the body, but actually make it. Moreover, he holds that the flower and scales of bronze, and burnt bronze itself, and germander,⁷ and wild mastich⁸ dissolve the body into water, and that dropsical patients derive benefit from these substances, not because they are purged by them, but because they are rid of substances which actually help to increase the disease; for, if the medicine does not evacuate⁹ the dropsical fluid contained in the body, but generates it, it aggravates the condition further. Moreover, scammony, according to the Asclepiadean argument, not only fails to evacuate⁹ the bile from the bodies of jaundiced subjects, but actually turns the useful blood into bile, and dissolves the body; in fact it does all manner of evil and increases the disease.

And yet this drug may be clearly seen to do good to numbers of people! "Yes," says he, "they derive

¹ Carthamus tinctorius. ⁵ Daphne Gnidium.
⁶ Euphorbia acanthothamnos. ⁷ Teucrium chamaedrys.
GALEN

λόγῳ τῆς κενώσεως. καὶ μὴν εἰ φλέγματος ἠγωγὸν αὐτοῖς δοῦσι φάρμακον, οὐκ ὄντισται. καὶ τοῦθεν οὕτως ἐναργεῖς ἐστιν, ὅστε καὶ οἱ ἀπὸ μόνης τῆς ἐμπειρίας ὁρμώμενοι γιγνώσκουσιν αὐτό. καίτοι τούτοις γε τοῖς ἀνδράσιν αὐτὸ δὴ τοῦτ' ἐστι φιλοσόφημα, τὸ μηδὲν λόγῳ πιστεύειν ἀλλὰ μόνοις τοῖς ἐναργῶς φαίνομένοις. ἐκεῖνοι μὲν οὖν σωφρονοῦσιν Ἄσκληπιάδης δὲ παραπαίει ταῖς αἰσθήσεις ἡμᾶς ἀπιστεῖν κελεύων, ἕνθα τὸ φαινόμενον ἀνατρέπει σαφῶς αὐτοῦ τὰς ὑποθέσεις. καίτοι μακρῷ γὰρ ἣν ἀμείωνον οὐχ ὡμός χωρεῖν τοῖς φαίνομένοις ἀλλ' ἐκεῖνοι ἀναθέσθαι τὸ πάν.

'Αρ' οὖν ταύτα μόνον ἐναργῶς μάχεται τοῖς Ἄσκληπιάδῳ δόγμασιν ἢ καὶ τὸ θέρους μὲν πλέονα κενοῦσθαι τὴν ἕλθῃν χολήν ὑπὸ τῶν αὐτῶν φαρμάκων, χειμώνος δὲ τὸ φλέγμα, καὶ νεανίσκῳ μὲν πλέονα τὴν χολήν, πρεσβύτη δὲ τὸ φλέγμα; φαίνεται ὅτι γὰρ ἔκαστον ἐλκεῖν τὴν οὔσαν, οὕτως αὐτὸ γεννᾶν τὴν οὐκ οὔσαν. εἰ γοῦν έθελήσας νεανίσκῳ τινὶ τῶν ἴσχυν καὶ θερμῶν ὁρὰ θέρους μήτ' ἀργῶς βεβιωκότι μήτ' ἐν πλησιμοφυίᾳ φλέγματος ἀγωγὸν δοῦναι φάρμακον, ὀλυγιστὸν μὲν καὶ μετὰ βίας πολλῆς ἐκκενώσεις τοῦ χυμοῦ, βλάψεις δ' ἐσχάτως τὸν ἄνθρωπον ἐμπαλινὶ δ' εἰ χολαγωγὸν δοῦσι, καὶ πάμπολυ κενώσεις καὶ βλάψεις οὐδέν.

'Αρ' ἀπιστοῦμεν ἐτι τῷ μή οὖχ ἔκαστον τῶν φαρμάκων ἐπάγεσθαι τῶν οἰκείου ἐαυτῷ χυμῶν;

1 Empiricist physicians.
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xiii

benefit certainly, but merely in proportion to the evacuation." . . . But if you give these cases a drug which draws off phlegm they will not be benefited. This is so obvious that even those who make experience alone their starting-point \(^1\) are aware of it; and these people make it a cardinal point of their teaching to trust to no arguments, but only to what can be clearly seen: In this, then, they show good sense; whereas Asclepiades goes far astray in bidding us distrust our senses where obvious facts plainly overturn his hypotheses. Much better would it have been for him not to assail obvious facts, but rather to devote himself entirely to these.

Is it, then, these facts only which are plainly irreconcilable with the views of Asclepiades? \(^1\) Is not also the fact that in summer yellow bile is evacuated in greater quantity by the same drugs, and in winter phlegm, and that in a young man more bile is evacuated, and in an old man more phlegm? Obviously each drug attracts something which already exists, and does not generate something previously non-existent. Thus if you give in the summer season a drug which attracts phlegm to a young man of a lean and warm habit, who has lived neither idly nor too luxuriously, you will with great difficulty evacuate a very small quantity of this humour, and you will do the man the utmost harm. On the other hand, if you give him a cholagogue, you will produce an abundant evacuation and not injure him at all.

Do we still, then, disbelieve that each drug attracts \(that\) humour \(which\) is proper to \(it\)? \(^2\) Possibly the

--

\(^2\) Note that drugs also have "natures"; cf. p. 66, note 3, and pp. 83-84.
ΓΑΛΕΝ

ίσως φήσουσιν οἱ ἀπ’ Ἀσκληπιάδου, μᾶλλον δ’ οὐκ ισως, ἀλλὰ πάντως ἀπιστεῖν ἐροῦσιν, ἴνα μὴ προδώσι τὰ φίλτατα.

ΧΙＶ

Πάλιν οὖν καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐφ’ ἐτέραν μεταβῶμεν ἄδολεσχίαν οὐ γὰρ ἐπιτρέπουσιν οἱ σοφισταὶ τῶν ἀξίων τι ζητημάτων προχειρίζεσθαι καίτοι παμπόλλων υπαρχόντων, ἀλλὰ κατατρίβειν ἀναγκάζοναι τὸν χρόνον εἰς τὴν τῶν σοφισμάτων, ὥν προβάλλουσι, λύσιν.

Τὸς οὖν ἡ ἄδολεσχία; ἢ ἐνδόξος αὐτή καὶ πολυθρύλητος λίθος ἢ τὸν σιδῆρον ἢ ἐπιστημωνεύη. τάχα γὰρ ἄν αὐτὴ ποτὲ τὴν ψυχὴν αὐτῶν ἐπιστάσαιτο πιστεύειν εἰναὶ τινας ἐν ἐκάστῳ τῶν σωμάτων ἐλκτικὰς τῶν οἰκείων ποιητήτων δυνάμεις.

Ἑπίκουρος μὲν οὖν καίτοι παραπλησίος Ἀσκληπιάδη στοιχεῖοις πρὸς τὴν φυσιολογίαν χρόμενος ὁμος ὁμολογεῖ, πρὸς μὲν τῆς ἰρακλείας λίθου τὸν σιδῆρον ἐλκεσθαι, πρὸς δὲ τῶν ἢλεκτρῶν τὰ κυρῆβια καὶ πειράται γε καὶ τὴν αὐτίαν ἀποδιδόναι τοῦ φαινομένου. τὰς γὰρ ἀπορρεούσας ἀτόμους ἀπὸ τῆς λίθου ταῖς ἀπορρεούσαις ἀπὸ τοῦ σιδηροῦ τοῖς σχήμασιν οἰκείας εἰναὶ φησιν, ὥστε περιπλέκεσθαι βαδίως. προσκρούοσας οὖν αὐτὰς τοῖς συγκρίμασιν ἐκατέρως τῆς τε λίθου καὶ τοῦ σιδηροῦ κάπετ’ εἰς τὸ μέσον ἀποταλ- λομένας οὕτως ἀλλήλαις τε περιπλέκεσθαι καὶ

1 Pun here. 2 Lit. physiology, i.e. nature-lore, almost our “Natural Philosophy”; cf. Introduction, p. xxvi.

70
adherents of Asclepiades will assent to this—or rather, they will—not possibly, but certainly—declare that they disbelieve it, lest they should betray their darling prejudices.

XIV

Let us pass on, then, again to another piece of nonsense; for the sophists do not allow one to engage in enquiries that are of any worth, albeit there are many such; they compel one to spend one's time in dissipating the fallacious arguments which they bring forward.

What, then, is this piece of nonsense? It has to do with the famous and far-renowned stone which draws iron [the lodestone]. It might be thought that this would draw their minds to a belief that there are in all bodies certain faculties by which they attract their own proper qualities.

Now Epicurus, despite the fact that he employs in his Physics elements similar to those of Asclepiades, yet allows that iron is attracted by the lodestone, and chaff by amber. He even tries to give the cause of the phenomenon. His view is that the atoms which flow from the stone are related in shape to those flowing from the iron, and so they become easily interlocked with one another; thus it is that, after colliding with each of the two compact masses (the stone and the iron) they then rebound into the middle and so become entangled with each other,

3 The ultimate particle of Epicurus was the ἄτομος or atom (lit. "non-divisible"), of Asclepiades, the ὄγκος or molecule. Asclepiades took his atomic theory from Epicurus, and he again from Democritus; cf. p. 49, note 5.

4 Lit. Herculean stone.
συνεπισπάσθαι τῶν σίδηρων. τὸ μὲν ὅσῳ τῶν ὑποθέσεων εἰς τὴν αἰτιολογίαν ἀπίθανον ἀντικρος δῆλον, ὦμως δ’ οὖν ὁμολογεῖ τὴν ὀλκήν. καὶ οὕτω γε καὶ κατὰ τὰ σώματα τῶν ζῴων φησὶ γίγνεσθαι τὰς τ’ ἀναδώσεις καὶ τὰς διακρίσεις τῶν περιττωμάτων καὶ τὰς τῶν καθαιρόντων φαρμάκων ἐνεργείας.

Ἀσκληπιάδης δὴ τὸ τῆς εἰρημένης αἰτίας ἀπίθανον μιᾷ ὁμολογεῖ τὴν ὀλκήν. ὦμως δηλοῦσθαι λέγειν ὑπὸ μηδενὸς μηδὲν ἀνασχυντήρας ἐτράπετο, δέον, εἰ μὴ ός Ἐπίκουρος εἰπεν ἡρέσκετο μὴ ἀλλα βελτίω λέγειν εἰχεν, ἀποστήναι τῶν ὑποθέσεων καὶ τὰν τε φύσιν εἰπεῖν τεχνικὴν καὶ τὴν οὐσίαν τῶν οὐντῶν ἐνουμένην τε πρὸς ἐαυτὴν αἰὲ καὶ ἀλλοουμένην ὑπὸ τῶν ἑαυτῆς μορίων εἰς ἀλληλα δρόντων τε καὶ πασχόντων. εἰ γὰρ ταῦθ’ ὑπέθετο, χαλεπὸν οὐδέν ἢν τὴν τεχνικὴν ἐκεῖνην φύσιν ὁμολογήσαι δύναμεις ἐχειν ἐπισταστικὴν μὲν τῶν οἰκεῖων, ἀποκριτικὴν δὲ τῶν ἀλλοτρίων. οὐ γάρ δι’ ἄλλο τί γ’ ἢν αὐτὴ τὸ τεχνικὴ τ’ εἶναι καὶ τοῦ ζῴου διασωστικὴ καὶ τῶν νοσημάτων κριτικὴ παρὰ τὸ προσέβαιν μὲν καὶ φυλάττειν τὸ οἰκεῖον, ἀποκρίνειν δὲ τὸ ἀλλότριον.

Ἀλλ’ Ἀσκληπιάδης κάνταθα τὸ μὲν ἀκόλουθον ταῖς ἄρχαίς αἰς ὑπέθετο συνειδέν, οὐ μὴν τὴν γε πρὸς τὸ φαινόμενον ἐναργῶς ἔδεσθη μάχην, ἀλλ’ ὀμόσε χωρεί καὶ περὶ τοῦτον πᾶσιν οὐκ ἰατροῖς μόνον ἀλλ’ ἡδή καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀνθρώποις.

1 Lit. aetiology. 2 Anadosis; cf. p. 62, note 1.
and draw the iron after them. So far, then, as his hypotheses regarding causation go, he is perfectly unconvincing; nevertheless, he does grant that there is an attraction. Further, he says that it is on similar principles that there occur in the bodies of animals the dispersal of nutriment and the discharge of waste matters, as also the actions of cathartic drugs.

Asclepiades, however, who viewed with suspicion the incredible character of the cause mentioned, and who saw no other credible cause on the basis of his supposed elements, shamelessly had recourse to the statement that nothing is in any way attracted by anything else. Now, if he was dissatisfied with what Epicurus said, and had nothing better to say himself, he ought to have refrained from making hypotheses, and should have said that Nature is a constructive artist and that the substance of things is always tending towards unity and also towards alteration because its own parts act upon and are acted upon by one another. For, if he had assumed this, it would not have been difficult to allow that this constructive nature has powers which attract appropriate and expel alien matter. For in no other way could she be constructive, preservative of the animal, and eliminative of its diseases, unless it be allowed that she conserves what is appropriate and discharges what is foreign.

But in this matter, too, Asclepiades realized the logical sequence of the principles he had assumed; he showed no scruples, however, in opposing plain fact; he joins issue in this matter also, not merely with all physicians, but with everyone else, and

\[3 \text{ cf. p. 45.} \quad 4 \text{ The } \textit{vis conservatrix et medicatrix Naturae}.\]
GALEN

οὔτε κρίσιν εἶναι τινα λέγων οὖθ’ ἠμέραν κρίσιμον οὖθ’ ὃλως οὔδεν ἐπὶ σωτηρία τοῦ ξύου πραγμα
tεύσασθαι τὴν φύσιν. ἀεὶ γὰρ τὸ μὲν ἀκόλουθον φυλάττειν βούλεται, τὸ δ’ ἐναργῶς φαινόμενον ἀνατρέπειν ἐμπαλιν ἔπικουρῳ. τιθέεις γὰρ ἐκείνος ἀεὶ τὸ φαινόμενον αἰτίαν αὐτοῦ ψυχράν ἀποδίδοις. 
tὰ γὰρ ἀποπαλλάμενα σμικρὰ σώματα τῆς ἡρα
cκλείας λίθου τοιούτοις ἑτέροις περιπλέκεσθαι μο
rίοις τοῦ σιδήρου κάπετα διὰ τῆς περιπλοκῆς 
tαύτης μηδαμοῦ φαινομένης ἐπιστάσθαι βαρεῖαν 
οὔτως οὐσίαν οὐκ οἶδ’ ὅπως ἄν τις πεισθείη. καὶ 
γὰρ εἰ τούτῳ συγχωρήσομεν, τὸ γε τῷ σιδήρῳ 
pάλιν ἑτέρου προστεθέν τι συνάπτεσθαι τὴν 
αὐτὴν αἰτίαν οὐκέτι προσίεται.

Τί γὰρ ἔρούμεν; ἡ δηλαδὴ τῶν ἀπορρεόντων 
tῆς λίθου μορίων ἕνα μὲν προσκρούσαντα τῷ 
σιδήρῳ πάλιν ἀποπάλλεσθαι καὶ ταῦτα μὲν εῖναι, 
δ’ ὥσ’ κρεμάνυσθαι συμβαίνει τὸν σιδήρον, τὰ δ’ 
eἰς αὐτὸν εἰσδυόμενα διὰ τῶν ἱκέων πόρων δι
eξέρχεσθαι τάχιστα κάπετα τῷ παρακειμένῳ 
σιδήρῳ προσκρούσαντα μὴ’ ἐκείνον διαδῦναι δύ
νασθαι, καὶ τοῖς γε πρὸ τοῦ διαδύναται, παλινδρο
mοῦντα δ’ αὐθεὶς ἐπὶ τὸν πρότερον ἑτέρας αὐθεὶς 
ἐργάζεσθαι ταῖς προτέραις ὁμολος περιπλοκῶς;

Ἐναργῶς γὰρ ἐνταῦθα τὸ ληρώδες τῆς αἰτίας 
ἐλέγχεται. γραφεῖα γοῦν οἴδ’ ποτὲ σιδηρᾶ πέντε 
κατὰ τὸ συνεχές ἀλληλοίς συναφθέντα, τοῦ πρώ
tου μὲν μόνου τῆς λίθου ψαυσαντος, ἐξ’ ἐκείνου

¹ cf. p. 61, note 3. The crisis or resolution in fevers was observed to take place with a certain regularity; hence arose the doctrine of “critical days.”
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xiv

maintains that there is no such thing as a crisis, or critical day,¹ and that Nature does absolutely nothing for the preservation of the animal. For his constant aim is to follow out logical consequences and to upset obvious fact, in this respect being opposed to Epicurus; for the latter always stated the observed fact, although he gives an ineffective explanation of it. For, that these small corpuscles belonging to the lodestone rebound, and become entangled with other similar particles of the iron, and that then, by means of this entanglement (which cannot be seen anywhere) such a heavy substance as iron is attracted—I fail to understand how anybody could believe this. Even if we admit this, the same principle will not explain the fact that, when the iron has another piece brought in contact with it, this becomes attached to it.

For what are we to say? That, forsooth, some of the particles that flow from the lodestone collide with the iron and then rebound back, and that it is by these that the iron becomes suspended? that others penetrate into it, and rapidly pass through it by way of its empty channels?² that these then collide with the second piece of iron and are not able to penetrate it although they penetrated the first piece? and that they then course back to the first piece, and produce entanglements like the former ones?

The hypothesis here becomes clearly refuted by its absurdity. As a matter of fact, I have seen five writing-stylets of iron attached to one another in a line, only the first one being in contact with the

² These were hypothetical spaces or channels between the atoms; cf. Introduction, p. xiv.
Δ' εἰς τὰλλα τῆς δυνάμεως διαδοθείσης· καὶ οὐκ ἔστιν εἰπεῖν, ὦς, εἰ μὲν τῷ κάτω τοῦ γραφείου πέρατι προσάγοις ἐτερον, ἐχεταί τε καὶ συνάπτεται καὶ κρέμαται τὸ προσενεχθέν· εἰ δ' ἄλλω τινὶ μέρει τῶν πλαγίων προσθείης, οὐ συνάπτεται. πάντῃ γὰρ ὅμοιος ἡ τῆς λίθου διαδίδοται δύναμις, εἰ μόνον ἄψαυτο κατὰ τι τοῦ πρῶτον γραφείου. καὶ μέντοι καὶ τούτου πάλιν εἰς τὸ δεύτερον ὅλον ἡ δύναμις ἀμα νοήματι διαρρεῖ καὶ ἐκείνον πάλιν εἰς τὸ τρίτον ὅλον· εἰ δὴ νοήσαις σμικράν τινα λίθου ἡρακλείαν ἐν οἴκῳ τινὶ κρεμαμένην, εἰτ' ἐν κύκλῳ ψαίνοντα πάμπολλα σιδήρια κάκεινων πάλιν ἐτερα κάκεινων ἀλλα καὶ τούτ' ἄχρι πλείους, ἀπαντά || δὴπου πύμπλαςθαι δεῖ τὰ σιδήρια τῶν ἀπορρέουντων τῆς λίθου σωμάτων. καὶ κινδυνεύει διαφορθήναι τὸ σμικρὸν ἐκείνο λιθίδιον εἰς τὰς ἀπορροάς διαλυθέν. καίτοι, καὶ εἰ μηδὲν παρακειτ' αὐτῷ σιδήριον, εἰς τὸν ἁέρα σκεδάνυνται, μάλιστ' εἰ καὶ θερμὸς υπάρχοι.

Νάλ, φησί, σμικρὰ γὰρ αὐτὰ χρή πάνυ νοεῖν, ὡστε τῶν ἐμφερομένων τῷ ἄερι ψηγμάτων τούτων δὴ τῶν σμικροτάτων ἐκείνων ἐνια μυριστοῦν εἶναι μέρος. εἰτ' ἐξ οὗτω σμικρῶν τοματέ λέγειν κρεμανυσσθαι βάρη τηλικαῦτα σιδήρου; εἰ γὰρ ἐκαστὸν αὐτῶν μυριστοῦν ἐστὶ μέρος τῶν ἐν τῷ ἄερι φερομένων ψηγμάτων, τηλίκου χρή νοήσαι τὸ πέρας αὐτῶν τὸ ἀγκιστροεῖδες, ὁ περιπλέκεται πρὸς ἀλληλα; πάντως γὰρ δὴπου τοῦτο σμικροτατόν ἐστιν ὅλον τοῦ ψηγματος.

1 He means the specific drawing power or faculty of the ledestone. 2 cf. our modern "radium-emanations."
lodestone, and the power being transmitted through it to the others. Moreover, it cannot be said that if you bring a second stylet into contact with the lower end of the first, it becomes held, attached, and suspended, whereas, if you apply it to any other part of the side it does not become attached. For the power of the lodestone is distributed in all directions; it merely needs to be in contact with the first stylet at any point; from this stylet again the power flows, as quick as a thought, all through the second, and from that again to the third. Now, if you imagine a small lodestone hanging in a house, and in contact with it all round a large number of pieces of iron, from them again others, from these others, and so on—all these pieces of iron must surely become filled with the corpuscles which emanate from the stone; therefore, this first little stone is likely to become dissipated by disintegrating into these emanations. Further, even if there be no iron in contact with it, it still disperses into the air, particularly if this be also warm.

"Yes," says Epicurus, "but these corpuscles must be looked on as exceedingly small, so that some of them are a ten-thousandth part of the size of the very smallest particles carried in the air." Then do you venture to say that so great a weight of iron can be suspended by such small bodies? If each of them is a ten-thousandth part as large as the dust particles which are borne in the atmosphere, how big must we suppose the hook-like extremities by which they interlock with each other to be? For of course this is quite the smallest portion of the whole particle.

3 cf. Ehrlich's hypothesis of "receptors" in explanation of the "affinities" of animal cells.
Galen

Εἰτὰ μικρῶν μικρῷ, κινούμενον κινούμενῳ περιπλακέν τὸν εὐθὺς ἀποστάλλεται. καὶ γὰρ δὴ καὶ ἄλλ’ ἀττα πάντως αὐτοῖς, τὰ μὲν ἀνωθέν, τὰ δὲ κάτωθεν, καὶ τὰ μὲν ἐμπροσθεν, τὰ δ’ ὅπισθεν, τὰ δ’ ἐκ τῶν δεξιῶν, τὰ δ’ ἐκ τῶν ἀριστερῶν ἡ ἐκρηγυμένα σείει τε καὶ βράττει καὶ μένειν οὐκ ἐάν. καὶ μέντοι καὶ πολλὰ χρῆ νοεῖν ἐξ ἀνάγκης ἠκατον ἐκείνῳ τῶν σμικρῶν σωμάτων ἐχειν ἀγκιστρώδη πέρατα. δὲ ἐνὸς μὲν γὰρ ἄλληλοις συνάπτεται, δὲ ἐτέρου δ’ ἐνὸς τοῦ μὲν ὑπερκειμένου τῇ λίθῳ, τοῦ δ’ ὑποκειμένου τῷ σιδηρῷ. εἰ γὰρ ἄνω μὲν ἔξαφθείῃ τῆς λίθου, κάτω δὲ τῷ σιδηρῷ μὴ συμπλακεῖσθη, πλέον οὐδέν. ἀστε τοῦ μὲν ὑπερκειμένου τὸ ἀνω μέρος ἐκκρέμασθαι χρῆ τῆς λίθου, τοῦ δ’ ὑποκειμένου τῷ κάτω πέρατι συνῆφθαι τὸν σίδηρον. ἐπεὶ δὲ κῶκ τῶν πλαγίων ἀλλῆλοις περιπλέκεται, πάντως ποι κανταῦθα ἔχει τὰ ἀγκιστρα. καὶ μέμνησό μοι πρὸ πάντων, ὅπως οὕτω σμικρὰ τὰς τοιαύτας καὶ τοσαῦτας ἀποφύγεις ἔχει. καὶ τούτου μᾶλλον ἔτι, πῶς, ἵνα τὸ δεύτερον σιδήριον συναφθῇ τῷ πρῶτῳ καὶ τῷ δευτέρῳ τὸ τρίτον κάκειν ὁ τέταρτος, ἀμα μὲν διεξέρχεσθαι χρῆ τοὺς πόρους ταυτί τὰ σμικρὰ καὶ ληψώδη ψήγματα, ἀμα δ’ ἀποπάλλεσθαι τοῦ μετ’ αὐτὸ || τεταγμένου, καὶ τοῖς κατὰ πάν ὁμοίων τῇ φύσιν ὑπάρχοντος.

Οὐδὲ γὰρ ἡ τοιαύτη πάλιν ὑπόθεσις ἀτολμος, ἀλλ’, εἰ χρῆ τάληθες εἰπεῖν, μακρῷ τῶν ἐμπροσθεν ἀνασχυντοτέρα, πέντε σιδηρίων ὁμοίων ἀλλή-
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xiv

Then, again, when a small body becomes entangled with another small body, or when a body in motion becomes entangled with another also in motion, they do not rebound at once. For, further, there will of course be others which break in upon them from above, from below, from front and rear, from right and left, and which shake and agitate them and never let them rest. Moreover, we must perforce suppose that each of these small bodies has a large number of these hook-like extremities. For by one it attaches itself to its neighbours, by another—the topmost one—to the lodestone, and by the bottom one to the iron. For if it were attached to the stone above and not interlocked with the iron below, this would be of no use.¹ Thus, the upper part of the superior extremity must hang from the lodestone, and the iron must be attached to the lower end of the inferior extremity; and, since they interlock with each other by their sides as well, they must, of course, have hooks there too. Keep in mind also, above everything, what small bodies these are which possess all these different kinds of outgrowths. Still more, remember how, in order that the second piece of iron may become attached to the first, the third to the second, and to that the fourth, these absurd little particles must both penetrate the passages in the first piece of iron and at the same time rebound from the piece coming next in the series, although this second piece is naturally in every way similar to the first.

Such an hypothesis, once again, is certainly not lacking in audacity; in fact, to tell the truth, it is far more shameless than the previous ones; according

¹ i.e. from the point of view of the theory.
λοις ἐφεξῆς τεταγμένων διὰ τοῦ πρώτου διαδύμενα βραδίως τῆς λίθου τὰ μόρια κατὰ τὸ δεύτερον ἀποπάλλεσθαι καὶ μὴ διὰ τούτου κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον ἔτοιμως διεξερχεσθαι. καὶ μὴν ἐκατέρως ἀτοπον. εἰ μὲν γὰρ ἀποπάλλεται, πῶς εἰς τὸ τρίτον ὁκέως διεξερχεται; εἰ δὲ οὐκ ἀποπάλλεται, πῶς κρεμάνυντα τὸ δεύτερον ἐκ τοῦ πρώτου; τὴν γὰρ ἀπόπαλσιν αὐτὸς ὑπέθετο δημιουργῆν τῆς ὀλκῆς.

'Αλλ', ὅπερ ἐφη, εἰς ἀδολεσχίαν ἀναγκαίον ἐμπίπτειν, ἐπειδὰν τις τοιούτοις ἀνδράσι διαλέγεται. σύντομον οὖν τινα καὶ κεφαλαιώδη λόγοι εἰπὼν ἀπαλλάττεσθαι βούλομαι. τοῖς Ἀσκληπιάδου γράμμασιν εἰ τις ἐπιμελῶς ὀμιλήσεις, τὴν τε πρὸς τὰς ἀρχὰς ἀκολουθίαν τῶν τοιούτων δοιγμάτων ἀκριβῶς ἀν ἐκμάθῃ καὶ τὴν πρὸς τὰ φαινόμενα μάχην. οὐ μὲν οὖν Ἐπίκουρος τὰ 52 φαινόμενα φυλάττειν βουλόμενος ἀσχημονεῖ || φιλοτιμούμενος ἐπιδείκνυειν αὐτὰ ταῖς ἀρχαῖς ὁμολογοῦντα: οὗ δ' Ἀσκληπιάδης τὸ μὲν ἀκόλουθον ταῖς ἀρχαῖς φυλάττει, τοῦ φαινόμενον δ' οὐδὲν αὐτῷ μέλει. ὅστις οὖν βούλεται τὴν ἀτοπίαν ἔξελεγχει τῶν ὑποθέσεων, εἰ μὲν πρὸς Ἀσκληπιάδην ὁ λόγος αὐτῷ γύρουτο, τῆς πρὸς τὸ φαινόμενον ὐπομμυνησκέτω μάχης: εἰ δὲ πρὸς Ἐπίκουρον, τῆς πρὸς τὰς ἀρχὰς διαφωνίας. οἱ δ' ἄλλαι σχεδὸν αἰρέσεις αἱ τῶν ὀμοίων ἀρχῶν ἐχόμεναι τελεῖς ἀπέσβησαν, αὐτὰς δ' ἐτι μόναι διαρκοῦσιν οὐκ ἄγεννοις. καίτοι τὰ μὲν Ἀσκληπιάδου Μηνόδοτος ὁ ἐμπερικὸς ἀφύκτωσ ἔξελεγχει, τὴν τε πρὸς τὰ φαινόμενα μάχην ὕπομμυνησκών αὐτὸν καὶ τὴν πρὸς ἀλληλα. τὰ δ' 80
to it, when five similar pieces of iron are arranged in a line, the particles of the lodestone which easily traverse the first piece of iron rebound from the second, and do not pass readily through it in the same way. Indeed, it is nonsense, whichever alternative is adopted. For, if they do rebound, how then do they pass through into the third piece? And if they do not rebound, how does the second piece become suspended to the first? For Epicurus himself looked on the rebound as the active agent in attraction.

But, as I have said, one is driven to talk nonsense whenever one gets into discussion with such men. Having, therefore, given a concise and summary statement of the matter, I wish to be done with it. For if one diligently familiarizes oneself with the writings of Asclepiades, one will see clearly their logical dependence on his first principles, but also their disagreement with observed facts. Thus, Epicurus, in his desire to adhere to the facts, cuts an awkward figure by aspiring to show that these agree with his principles, whereas Asclepiades safeguards the sequence of principles, but pays no attention to the obvious fact. Whoever, therefore, wishes to expose the absurdity of their hypotheses, must, if the argument be in answer to Asclepiades, keep in mind his disagreement with observed fact; or if in answer to Epicurus, his discordance with his principles. Almost all the other sects depending on similar principles are now entirely extinct, while these alone maintain a respectable existence still. Yet the tenets of Asclepiades have been unanswerably confuted by Menodotus the Empiricist, who draws his attention to their opposition to phenomena and to each other;
'Επικούρου πάλιν ὁ Ἀσκληπιάδης ἔχομενος ἂεὶ τῆς ἀκολουθίας, ἣς ἐκείνος οὐ πάνυ τι φαίνεται φροντίζων.
'Αλλ' οἱ νῦν ἀνθρωποί, πρὶν καὶ ταύτας ἐκμαθεῖν τὰς αἱρέσεις καὶ τὰς ἄλλας τὰς βελτίωσι κἀπειτα χρόνῳ πολλῷ κρίναι τε καὶ βασανίσαι τὸ καθ' ἐκάστην αὐτῶν ἀληθὲς τε καὶ ψεύδος, οἱ μὲν ἰατροὶς ἑαυτοὺς, οἱ δὲ φιλοσόφους ὀνομάζουσι μηδὲν εἰδότες. || οὐδὲν οὐν θαυμαστῶν ἐπίσης τοῖς ἀληθείς τὰ ψευδή τετιμήσατε. ὥστε γὰρ ἄν ἐκαστὸς πρῶτῳ περιτύχῃ διδασκάλῳ, τοιοῦτος ἐγένετο, μὴ περιμενον μηδὲν ἔτι παρ' ἄλλου μαθεῖν. ἔνοιο δ' αὑτῶν, εἰ καὶ πλείοσιν ἐντύχοιεν, ἀλλ' οὕτως γ' εἰσὶν ἀσύνετοι τε καὶ βραδείς τὴν διάνοιαν, ὡστε καὶ γεγαράκοτες οὐποί συνιασίν ἀκολουθίαν λόγον. πάλαι δὲ τοὺς τοιοῦτους ἐπὶ τὰς βαναύσους ἀπέλυσον τέχνας. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ἐς ὃ τι τελευτήσει θεὸς οἶδεν.

'Ἡμεῖς δ' ἐπεὶδή, καίτοι φεύγοντες ἀντιλέγειν τοῖς ἐν αὐτᾶς ταῖς ἀρχαῖς εὐθυς ἐσφαλμένοις, ὁμως ἡμαγκάσθημεν ὧν αὐτῆς τῶν πραγμάτων τῆς ἀκολουθίας εἰπεῖν τινα καὶ διαλεκθῆναι πρὸς αὐτοὺς, ἂτι καὶ τοῦτο προσθήσομεν τοῖς εἰρημένοις, ὡς οὐ μόνον τὰ καθαύροντα φάρμακα πέφυκεν ἐπιστάσθησα ἐς οἰκείας ποιότητας ἄλλα καὶ τὰ τοὺς σκόλοπας ἀνάγοντα καὶ τὰς τῶν βελῶν ἀκίδας εἰς πολὺ βάθος σαρκὸς ἐμπεπαρμένας ἐνίοτε. καὶ μέντοι καὶ ὡς τοὺς ίοὺς τῶν θηρίων ἢ τῶς ἐμπεφάρμαγμένους τοῖς βέλεσιν ἀνέλκει, καὶ τάυτα τὴν αὐτὴν ταῖς ἡρακλείαις λίθους ἐπιδείκνυται δύναμιν. ἔγονος οὖν οἶδα ποτε καταπεπαρμένον ἐν ποδὶ νεανίσκου σκόλοπα τοῖς
and, again, those of Epicurus have been confuted by Asclepiades, who adhered always to logical sequence, about which Epicurus evidently cares little.

Now people of the present day do not begin by getting a clear comprehension of these sects, as well as of the better ones, thereafter devoting a long time to judging and testing the true and false in each of them; despite their ignorance, they style themselves, some "physicians" and others "philosophers." No wonder, then, that they honour the false equally with the true. For everyone becomes like the first teacher that he comes across, without waiting to learn anything from anybody else. And there are some of them, who, even if they meet with more than one teacher, are yet so unintelligent and slow-witted that even by the time they have reached old age they are still incapable of understanding the steps of an argument. . . . In the old days such people used to be set to menial tasks. . . . What will be the end of it God knows!

Now, we usually refrain from arguing with people whose principles are wrong from the outset. Still, having been compelled by the natural course of events to enter into some kind of a discussion with them, we must add this further to what was said—that it is not only cathartic drugs which naturally attract their special qualities,¹ but also those which remove thorns and the points of arrows such as sometimes become deeply embedded in the flesh. Those drugs also which draw out animal poisons or poisons applied to arrows all show the same faculty as does the lodestone. Thus, I myself have seen a thorn which was embedded in a young man's foot fail to

¹ cf. p. 69, note 2.
GALEN

μὲν δακτύλωις ἐλκουσίν ἡμῖν βιαίως οὐκ ἀκολουθήσαντα, φαρμάκων δὲ ἐπιτεθέντος ἀλύπως τε καὶ διὰ ταχέων ἀνελθόντα. καὶ τοιοὺς τοῦτο τινες ἀντιλέγουσι φάσκοντες, ὅταν ἡ φλεγμονή λυθῇ τοῦ μέρους, αὐτόματον ἔξεναι τὸν σκόλοπα πρὸς οὔδενος ἀνελκόμενον. ἀλλ' οὕτω γε πρῶτον μὲν ἄγνοεῖν ἑσκασιν, ὡς ἄλλα μὲν ἐστὶ φλεγμονής, ἄλλα δὲ τῶν οὕτω καταπεπαρμένων ἐλκτικὰ φάρμακα: καὶ τοιούτῳ γ' εἰπτερ ἀφλεγμάτων γενομένων ἐξεκρίνετο τὰ παρὰ φύσιν, ὡς φλεγμονῆς ἐστὶ λυτικά, ταῦτ' εὐθὺς ἀν ἦν κάκεινων ἐλκτικά.

Δεύτερον δ', δ καὶ μάλλον ἄν τις θαυμάσειεν, ὡς οὐ μόνον ἄλλα μὲν τοὺς σκόλοπας, ἄλλα δὲ τοὺς ἰόνος ἐξάγει φάρμακα, ἄλλα καὶ αὐτῶν τῶν τοὺς ἰόνος ἐλκόμενον τὰ μὲν τὸν τῆς ἔχιδνης, τὰ δὲ τὸν τῆς τρυγόνος, τὰ δ' ἄλλον τινος ἐπισπάται καὶ σαφῶς ἐστὶν ἰδεῖν τοῖς φαρμάκοις ἐπικειμένοις αὐτοῖς. ἐνταῦθ' οὖν Ἐπίκουρον μὲν ἐπαινεῖν χρὴ τῆς πρὸς ἃ τὸ φαινόμενον αἴδοις, μέμφεσθαι δὲ τὸν λόγον τῆς αἰτίας. ὃν γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἐλκουσίς τοῖς δακτύλωις οὐκ ἀνηγάγομεν σκόλοπα, τοῦτον ύπὸ τῶν σμικρῶν ἔκεινων ἀνέλκεσθαι ψηγμάτων, πῶς οὐ παντάπασιν ἀτοπον εἶναι χρὴ νομίζειν;

'Αρ' οὖν ἢδη πεπείσμεθα τῶν οὖτων ἐκάστῳ δύναμιν τιν' ὑπάρχειν, ἢ τὴν οἰκείαν ἐλκεὶ ποιότητα, τὸ μὲν μᾶλλον, τὸ δ' ἦττον; 'Η καὶ τὸ τῶν πυρῶν ἐτί παράδειγμα προ-

---

1 That is to say, the two properties should go together in all cases—which they do not.

2 Trygon pastinaca.
come out when we exerted forcible traction with our fingers, and yet come away painlessly and rapidly on the application of a medicament. Yet even to this some people will object, asserting that when the inflammation is dispersed from the part the thorn comes away of itself, without being pulled out by anything. But these people seem, in the first place, to be unaware that there are certain drugs for drawing out inflammation and different ones for drawing out embedded substances; and surely if it was on the cessation of an inflammation that the abnormal matters were expelled, then all drugs which disperse inflammations ought, _ipso facto_, to possess the power of extracting these substances as well.¹

And secondly, these people seem to be unaware of a still more surprising fact, namely, that not merely do certain medicaments draw out thorns and others poisons, but that of the latter there are some which attract the poison of the viper, others that of the sting-ray,² and others that of some other animal; we can, in fact, plainly observe these poisons deposited on the medicaments. Here, then, we must praise Epicurus for the respect he shows towards obvious facts, but find fault with his views as to causation. For how can it be otherwise than extremely foolish to suppose that a thorn which we failed to remove by digital traction could be drawn out by these minute particles?

Have we now, therefore, convinced ourselves that everything which exists³ possesses a faculty by which it attracts its proper quality, and that some things do this more, and some less?

Or shall we also furnish our argument with the

³ _cf._ p. 66, note 3.
GALEN

χειρισόμεθα τῷ λόγῳ· φανήσονται γὰρ οἱ μαίαν καὶ τῶν γεωργῶν αὐτῶν ἀμαθέστεροι περὶ τὴν φύσιν οἱ μηδὲν ὅλως ὕπο μηδενὸς ἐλκεσθαι συγχωροῦντε· ὡς ἔγωγε πρῶτον μὲν ἀκούσας τὸ γιγνόμενον ἔθαύμασα καὶ αὐτὸς ἡβουλήθην αὐτόπτης αὐτῷ καταστήμα. μετὰ ταῦτα δὲ, ὡς καὶ τὰ τῆς πειρᾶς ὁμολογεῖ, τὴν αἰτίαν σκοπούμενον ἐν παμπόλλῳ χρόνῳ κατὰ πάσας τὰς αἰρέσεις οὐδεμίαν ἀλλην εὐρεῖν οἷός τ’ ἦν οὐδ’ ἀχρι τοῦ πιθανοῦ προϊόσθαι ἀλλὰ καταγελάστους τε καὶ σαφῶς ἐξελεγκχομένας τὰς ἄλλας ἀπάσας πλὴν τῆς τὴν ὅλην πρεσβευοῦσης.

Ἐστὶ δὲ τὸ γιγνόμενον τοιόνδε. κατακομίζουσιν ἢμῖν γεωργοὶ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν ἀγρῶν πυροús εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἐν ἀμάξαις τισίν, ὅταν ὑφελέσθαι βουληθῶσιν, ὡστε μὴ φωραθῆναι, κεραμίῃ ἄττα πληρώσαντες ὑδατος μέσου αὐτοῖς ἐνυπτασίν. ἔλκουσες οὐν ἐκεῖνοι διὰ τοῦ κεραμίου τὸ ὑγρὸν εἰς αὐτοὺς ὅγκον μὲν καὶ βάρος προσκτῶνται, κατάδηλοι δ’ οὐ πάνω γίγνονται τοῖς ὀρῶσιν, εἰ μη τις προπεπτυσμένος ἠδὴ περιεργότερον ἐπισκοποῖτο. καίτοι γ’ εἰ βουληθεῖς ἐν ἡλίῳ καταθείναι πάνυ θερμὰ ταύτων ἀγγείων, ἐλάχιστον παντελῶς εὐρῆσθαι τὸ δαπανώμενον ἐφ’ ἔκάστης ἡμέρας. οὕτως ἄρα καὶ τῆς ἡλιακῆς θερμασίας τῆς σφοδρᾶς ἰσχυρότεραι οἱ πυροὶ δύναμιν ἔχουσιν ἐλκειν εἰς ἑαυτοῦ τὴν πλησίαξουσαν ὑγρότητα. ἁλης οὖν ἐνταῦθα μακρὸς ἢ πρὸς τὸ λεπτομερές φορὰ τοῦ περιέχοντος ἡμᾶς ἀέρος καὶ μάλιστ’ ὅταν ἰκανῶς ἢ θερμός,

---

1 The way that corn can attract moisture.

86
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xiv

illustration afforded by corn? For those who refuse to admit that anything is attracted by anything else, will, I imagine, be here proved more ignorant regarding Nature than the very peasants. When, for my own part, I first learned of what happens, I was surprised, and felt anxious to see it with my own eyes. Afterwards, when experience also had confirmed its truth, I sought long among the various sects for an explanation, and, with the exception of that which gave the first place to attraction, I could find none which even approached plausibility, all the others being ridiculous and obviously quite untenable.

What happens, then, is the following. When our peasants are bringing corn from the country into the city in wagons, and wish to filch some away without being detected, they fill earthen jars with water and stand them among the corn; the corn then draws the moisture into itself through the jar and acquires additional bulk and weight, but the fact is never detected by the onlookers unless someone who knew about the trick before makes a more careful inspection. Yet, if you care to set down the same vessel in the very hot sun, you will find the daily loss to be very little indeed. Thus corn has a greater power than extreme solar heat of drawing to itself the moisture in its neighbourhood. Thus the theory that the water is carried towards the rarefied part of the air surrounding us (particularly when that is distinctly warm) is utter nonsense; for although it is

2 Specific attraction of the "proper" quality; cf. p. 85, note 3.
3 Theory of evaporation insufficient to account for it. cf. p. 104, note 1.
GALEN

πολύ μὲν ύπάρχοντος ἢ κατὰ τοὺς πυροὺς λεπτο-
merestέρου, δεχομένου δ’ οὐδὲ τὸ δέκατον μέρος
τῆς εἰς ἐκείνους μεταλαμβανομένης ύγρότητος.

XV

'Επεὶ δὲ ἰκανῶς ἠδολεσχήσαμεν οὐχ ἐκόντες,
ἀλλ', ὡς ἡ παροιμία φησί, μαίνομένοις ἀναγ-
57 κασθέντες συμμανήναι, πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν τῶν οὐρων
ἐπανέλθομεν διάκρισιν, ἐν γὰρ τῶν μὲν Ἀσκλη-
πιάδου λήρων ἐπιλαθώμεθα, μετὰ δὲ τῶν πε-
πεισμένων διηθείσθαι τὰ οὖρα διὰ τῶν νεφρῶν,
tίς ὁ τρόπος τῆς ἐνεργείας ἔστω, ἐπισκεψόμεθα·
πάντως γὰρ ἐξ αὐτῶν ἐπὶ τοὺς νεφροὺς φέρεται
tὰ οὖρα τούτο βέλτιον εἴναι νομίζοντα, καθάπερ
ἡμεῖς, ὁπόταν εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν ἀπίωμεν· ἢ, εἰ τοῦτ’
ἀδύνατον, ἔτερον τι χρὴ τῆς φορᾶς αὐτῶν ἔξευρεῖν
ἀιτίων. τί δὴ τούτ’ ἔστω; εἰ γὰρ μὴ τοῖς νεφροῖς
δῶσομεν τινα δύναμιν ἐλκτικήν τῆς τοιαύτης
ποιότητος, ὡς Ἰπποκράτης ἐνόμιζεν, οὐδὲν ἔτερον
ἐξευρήσομεν. ὅτι μὲν γὰρ ήτοι τούτους ἔλεκες
αὐτὸ προσήκειν ἡ τὰς φλέβας πέμπειν, εἴπερ γε μὴ
ἐξ ἐαυτοῦ φέρεται, παντὶ που δῆλον. ἀλλ’ εἰ μὲν
αἱ φλέβες περιστελλόμεναι προωθοίεν, οὐκ ἐκείνο
μόνον, ἀλλὰ σὺν αὐτῷ καὶ τὸ πάν αἷμα τὸ
περιεχόμενον ἐν ἑαυτοῖς εἰς τοὺς νεφροὺς ἐκ-
θλίψουσιν· εἰ δὲ τούτ’ ἀδύνατον, ὡς δείξομεν,
λεῖπεται τοὺς νεφροὺς ἔλκειν.
much more rarefied there than it is amongst the corn, yet it does not take up a tenth part of the moisture which the corn does.

XV

Since, then, we have talked sufficient nonsense—not willingly, but because we were forced, as the proverb says, "to behave madly among madmen"—let us return again to the subject of urinary secretion. Here let us forget the absurdities of Asclepiades, and, in company with those who are persuaded that the urine does pass through the kidneys, let us consider what is the character of this function. For, most assuredly, either the urine is conveyed by its own motion to the kidneys, considering this the better course (as do we when we go off to market! ¹), or, if this be impossible, then some other reason for its conveyance must be found. What, then, is this? If we are not going to grant the kidneys a faculty for attracting this particular quality,² as Hippocrates held, we shall discover no other reason. For, surely everyone sees that either the kidneys must attract the urine, or the veins must propel it—if, that is, it does not move of itself. But if the veins did exert a propulsive action when they contract, they would squeeze out into the kidneys not merely the urine, but along with it the whole of the blood which they contain.³ And if this is impossible, as we shall show, the remaining explanation is that the kidneys do exert traction.

¹ Playful suggestion of free-will in the urine.
² Specific attraction. cf. p. 87, note 2.
³ i.e. there would be no selective action.
GALEN

Πῶς οὖν ἄδύνατον τοῦτο; τῶν νεφρῶν ἡ θέσις ἀντιβαίνει. οὐ γὰρ δὴ οὕτω γʹ ὑπόκεινται τῇ 58 κοίλῃ φλεβῆ || καθάπερ τοῖς έξ έγκεφαλόν περιττώμασιν ἐν τῇ ρινῇ καὶ κατὰ τὴν υπερφαίν ὁ τοῖς ἡμοῖς ὁμοίως πόροι, ἀλλ' ἐκατέρθεν αὐτὴ παράκεινται. καὶ μὴν, εἰτέρ ὁμοίως τοῖς ἡμοῖς ὅσον ἂν ἡ λεπτότερον καὶ τελέως ορρῶδες, τοῦτο μὲν ἔτοίμως διαπέμπουσιν, τὸ δὲ παχύτερον ἀποστέγουσιν, ἀπαν ἐπ' αὐτοῦς ἑναὶ χρή τὸ αἷμα τὸ περιεχόμενον ἐν τῇ κοίλη φλεβῆ, καθάπερ εἰς τοὺς τρυγητοὺς ὁ πᾶς οἶνος ἐμβάλλεται. καὶ μὲν γε καὶ τὸ τοῦ γάλακτος τοῦ τυρουμένου παράδειγμα σαφῶς ἂν, ὃ βούλομαι λέγειν, ἐνδείξατο. καὶ γὰρ καὶ τοῦτο πάν ἐμβληθὲν εἰς τοὺς ταλάρους οὐ πάν διηθεῖται, ἀλλ' ὅσον μὲν ἄν ἡ λεπτότερον τῆς εὐρύτητος τῶν πλοκάμων, εἰς τὸ κάταντες φέρεται καὶ τοῦτο μὲν ὁρρὸς ἐπονομάζεται τὸ λοιπὸν δὲ τὸ παχὺ τὸ μέλλον ἔσεσθαι τυρός, ὡς ἂν οὐ παραδεχομένων αὐτὸ τῶν ἐν τοῖς ταλάροις πόρων, οὐ διεκπέπτει κάτω. καὶ τοίνυν, εἰτέρ οὕτω μέλλει διηθεῖσθαι τῶν νεφρῶν ὁ τοῦ αἵματος ὁρρὸς, ἀπαν ἐπ' αὐτοῦς ἥκειν χρῆ τὸ αἷμα καὶ μὴ τὸ μὲν ναὶ, τὸ δ' οὖν. ||

59 Πῶς οὖν ἔχει τὸ φαινόμενον ἐκ τῆς ἀνατομῆς; Τὸ μὲν ἔτερον μέρος τῆς κοίλης ἄνω πρὸς τὴν καρδίαν ἀναφέρεται, τὸ λοιπὸν δ' ἐπιβαίνει τῇ βάχαι καθ' ὅλης αὐτῆς ἐκτεινόμενον ἀχρὶ τῶν σκελῶν, ὅστε τὸ μὲν ἔτερον οὕτ' ἐγγὺς ἀφικνεῖται

---

1 Nasal mucus was supposed to be the non-utilizable part of the nutriment conveyed to the brain. cf. p. 214, note 3.
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xv

And how is propulsion by the veins impossible? The situation of the kidneys is against it. They do not occupy a position beneath the hollow vein [vena cava] as does the sieve-like [ethmoid] passage in the nose and palate in relation to the surplus matter from the brain;¹ they are situated on both sides of it. Besides, if the kidneys are like sieves, and readily let the thinner serous [whey-like] portion through, and keep out the thicker portion, then the whole of the blood contained in the vena cava must go to them, just as the whole of the wine is thrown into the filters. Further, the example of milk being made into cheese will show clearly what I mean. For this, too, although it is all thrown into the wicker strainers, does not all percolate through; such part of it as is too fine in proportion to the width of the meshes passes downwards, and this is called whey [serum]; the remaining thick portion which is destined to become cheese cannot get down, since the pores of the strainers will not admit it. Thus it is that, if the blood-serum has similarly to percolate through the kidneys, the whole of the blood must come to them, and not merely one part of it.

What, then, is the appearance as found on dissection?

One division of the vena cava is carried upwards ² to the heart, and the other mounts upon the spine and extends along its whole length as far as the legs; thus one division does not even come near the

¹ He means from its origin in the liver (i.e. in the three hepatic veins). His idea was that the upper division took nutriment to heart, lungs, head, etc., and the lower division to lower part of body. On the relation of right auricle to vena cava and right ventricle, cf. p. 321, notes 4 and 5.

²
GALEN

tῶν νεφρῶν, τὸ λοιπὸν δὲ πλησιάζει μέν, οὐ μὴν εἰς αὐτοὺς γε καταφύεται. ἐχρῆν δ', εἰπέρ ἐμελλεν ὡς δι' ἡμῶν αὐτῶν καθαρθήσεσθαι τὸ αἷμα, πάν ἐμπίπτειν εἰς αὐτοὺς κατάκτω μὲν φέρεσθαι τὸ λεπτὸν, ἑσχέσθαι δ' ἂν ὁ τὸ παχύν. νυν δ' οὖν οὕτως ἔχει· πλάνης γὰρ ἐκατέρωθεν τῆς κοίλης φλέβδος ὦ νεφροὶ κεῖνται. οὐκοῦν ὡς θῆμον διήθοισι, πεμποῦσης μὲν ἐκείνης, αὐτοὶ δ' οὐδεμίαν εἰσφέρομενοι δύναμιν, ἀλλ' ἐλκουσί δηλοῦντι· τοῦτο γὰρ ἐτί λείπεται.

Πῶς οὖν ἐλκουσίν; εἰ μέν, ὡς Ἕπικουρος οἴεται τὰς ὀλκάς ἀπάσας γίγνεσθαι κατὰ τὰς τῶν ἀτόμων ἀποπάλσεις τε καὶ περιπλοκάς, ἀμείνων ἦν ὄντως εἰπεῖν αὐτοὺς μηδ' ἐλκεῖν ὀλως· πολὺ γὰρ ἄν οὕτω γε τῶν ἐπὶ τῆς ἡρακλείας λίθου μικρὸν πρόσθεν εἰρήμενων ο λόγος ἐξεταζόμενος εὑρεθεὶς γελοιότερος· ἀλλ' ὡς Ἰπποκράτης ἡμοῦ-λετο. λεχθήσεται δὲ σαφέστερον ἕπι προϊόντι τῷ λόγῳ. νῦν γὰρ οὗ τοῦτο πρόκειται διδάσκειν, ἀλλ' ὡς οὕτ' ἄλλο τι δυνατὸν εἰπεῖν αὐτίον εἶναι τῆς τῶν οὐρων διακρίσεως πλην τῆς ὀλχῆς τῶν νεφρῶν οὖθ' οὕτω γίγνεσθαι τὴν ὀλκήν, ὡς οἱ μηδεμίαν οἰκείαν διδότες τῇ φύσει δύναμιν οἴνοτα γίγνεσθαι.

Τούτου γὰρ ὀμολογηθέντος, ὡς ἐστιν ἄλως τις ἐν τοῖς ὑπὸ φύσεως διοικουμένοις δύναμις ἐλκτική, ληρώδης νομίσοιτ' ἀν ὁ περὶ ἀναδόσεως τροφῆς ἄλλο τι λέγειν ἐπιχειρῶν.

1 We arrive at our belief by excluding other possibilities.
2 i.e. the mechanistic physicists. cf. pp. 45-47.
3 cf. p. 85, note 3.
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xv

kidneys, while the other approaches them but is certainly not inserted into them. Now, if the blood were destined to be purified by them as if they were sieves, the whole of it would have to fall into them, the thin part being thereafter conveyed downwards, and the thick part retained above. But, as a matter of fact, this is not so. For the kidneys lie on either side of the vena cava. They therefore do not act like sieves, filtering fluid sent to them by the vena cava, and themselves contributing no force. They obviously exert traction; for this is the only remaining alternative.

How, then, do they exert this traction? If, as Epicurus thinks, all attraction takes place by virtue of the *rebounds* and *entanglements* of atoms, it would be certainly better to maintain that the kidneys have no attractive action at all; for his theory, when examined, would be found as it stands to be much more ridiculous even than the theory of the lodestone, mentioned a little while ago. Attraction occurs in the way that Hippocrates laid down; this will be stated more clearly as the discussion proceeds; for the present our task is not to demonstrate this, but to point out that no other cause of the secretion of urine can be given except that of attraction by the kidneys,¹ and that this attraction does not take place in the way imagined by people who do not allow Nature a faculty of her own.²

For if it be granted that there is any attractive faculty at all in those things which are governed by Nature,³ a person who attempted to say anything else about the absorption of nutriment⁴ would be considered a fool.

¹ The subject of *anadosis* is taken up in the next chapter. cf. also p. 62, note 1.

²

³

⁴
Ἐρασίστρατος δ’ οὖν οἴδ’ ὅπως ἐτέρας μέν τις δόξαις εύθεσθιν ἀντείπει διὰ μακρῶν, ὑπερβή δὲ τελέως τὴν Ἰπποκράτους, οὐδ’ ἄχρι τοῦ μυημονεύ-σαι μόνον αὐτῆς, ὡς ἐν τοῖς περὶ καταπόσεως ἐποίησεν, ἀξιῶσας. ἐν ἑκείνοις μὲν γὰρ ἄχρι τοσούτου φαίνεται μυημονεύων, ὡς τοῦνομ’ εἰπεῖν τῆς ὁλίγης μόνον ὅδε πως γράφων.

“Ὀληκῇ μὲν οὖν τῆς κοιλίας οὐδεμία φαίνεται εἰναι”. περὶ δὲ τῆς ἂναδόσεως τὸν λόγον ποι- ούμενος οὐδ’ ἄχρι συλλαβῆς μιᾶς ἐμνημόνευσε τῆς Ἰπποκράτειου δόξης. καίτοι γ’ ἔπηρκεσεν ἃν ἢμῖν, εἰ καὶ τούτ’ ἔγραψε μόνον, ὡς Ἰππο- κράτης εἰπὼν “Σάρκες ὅλκοι καὶ ἐκ κοιλίας καὶ ἑξωθεν” ψεύδεται. οὔτε γὰρ ἐκ τῆς κοιλίας οὔτ’ ἑξωθένει ἔλεων δύνανται. εἰ δὲ καὶ στὶ μῆτρας αὐτιώμενος ἄρρωστον αὐχένα κακῶς εἶπεν “Οὐ γάρ δύναται αὐτῆς ὁ στόμαχος εἰρύσαι τὴν γονήν,” ἢ εἰ καὶ τι τοιούτων ἄλλο γράφειν ὁ Ἐρασί- στρατος ἧξιωσε, τότ’ ἂν καὶ ἡμεῖς πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀπολογούμενοι εἰπομεν:

ʼΩ γενναίε, μὴ ρητορικῶς ἢμῶν κατάτρεχε χωρίς ἀποδείξεως, ἀλλ’ εἰπέ τινα κατηγορίαν τοῦ δόγματος, ἢ ν’ ἰ πεισθῶμεν σοι ὡς καλῶς ἑξέλγχοι τὸν παλαιὸν λόγον ἢ μεταπείσωμεν

1 On Erasistratus v. Introd. p. xii. His view that the stomach exerts no holkê, or attraction, is dealt with more fully in Book III., chap. viii.

94
XVI

Now, while Erasistratus for some reason replied at great length to certain other foolish doctrines, he entirely passed over the view held by Hippocrates, not even thinking it worth while to mention it, as he did in his work "On Deglutition"; in that work, as may be seen, he did go so far as at least to make mention of the word attraction, writing somewhat as follows:

"Now, the stomach does not appear to exercise any attraction." But when he is dealing with ana-dosis he does not mention the Hippocratic view even to the extent of a single syllable. Yet we should have been satisfied if he had even merely written this: "Hippocrates lies in saying 'The flesh attracts both from the stomach and from without,' for it cannot attract either from the stomach or from without." Or if he had thought it worth while to state that Hippocrates was wrong in criticizing the weakness of the neck of the uterus, "seeing that the orifice of the uterus has no power of attracting semen," or if he had thought proper to write any other similar opinion, then we in our turn would have defended ourselves in the following terms:

"My good sir, do not run us down in this rhetorical fashion without some proof; state some definite objection to our view, in order that either you may convince us by a brilliant refutation of the ancient doctrine, or that, on the other hand, we may convert you from your ignorance." Yet why do I

2 i.e. the tissues. 3 cf. p. 291.
GALEN

όσο ἀγνοοῦντα. καίτοι τι λέγω ῥητορικῶς; μὴ γάρ, ἔπειδή τινες τῶν ῥήτοροι, ἃ μάλιστ' ἄδυνα
tούσι διαλύεσθαι, ταύτα διαγελάσαντες οὐδ' ἐπιχειροῦσιν ἀντιλέγειν, ἢδη ποι τοῦτο καὶ ήμεῖς ἡγώμεθ' εἶναι τὸ ῥητορικῶς. τὸ γὰρ διὰ λόγου 62 πιθανοῦ ἔστι τὸ ῥητορικῶς, τὸ δ' ἀνευ λόγου βωμολοχικῶν, οὐ ῥητορικῶν. οὐκον οὔτε ῥητο-
ρικῶς οὔτε διαλεκτικῶς ἀντείπειν ὁ Ἑρασίστρατος ἐν τῷ περί τῆς καταπόσεως λόγῳ. τί γὰρ φησιν;
"'Ὅλκη μὲν οὖν τῆς κοιλίας οὐδεμία φαίνεται εἶναι." πάλιν οὖν αὐτῷ παρ' ἡμῶν ἀντιμαρτύρων ὁ αὐτὸς λόγος ἀντιπαραβαλλέσθω· περιστολὴ μὲν οὖν τοῦ στομάχου οὐδεμία φαίνεται εἶναι. καὶ πῶς οὐ φαίνεται; τὰχ' ἄν ἴσως εἴποι τις τῶν ἀπ' αὐτοῦ· τὸ γὰρ ἀεὶ τῶν ἀνωθεν αὐτοῦ μερῶν συστελλομένων διαστέλλεσθαι τὰ κάτω πῶς οὐκ ἐστὶ τῆς περιστολῆς ἐνδεικτικῶν; ἀφθονία οὖν ἡμεῖς, καὶ πῶς οὐ φαίνεται, φήσομεν, ἡ τῆς κοιλίας ὅλκη; τὸ γὰρ ἀεὶ τῶν κάτωθεν μερῶν τοῦ στομάχου διαστελλομένων συστελλεῖσθαι τὰ ἄνω πῶς οὐκ ἐστὶ τῆς ὅλκης ἐνδεικτικῶν; εἰ δὲ σωφρονήσεις ποτε καὶ γνοίη τὸ φαινόμενον τοῦτο μηδὲν μᾶλλον τῆς ἐτέρας τῶν δοξῶν ὑπάρχειν ἐνδεικτικῶν ἀλλ' ἀμφοτέρων εἶναι κοινὸν, οὕτως ἂν ἢδη δείξαμεν αὐτῷ τὴν ὀρθὴν ὁδὸν τῆς τοῦ ἄληθος εὐρέσεως.

'Αλλὰ περὶ μὲν τῆς κοιλίας αὖθις. ἢ δὲ τῆς 63 τροφῆς ἀνάδοσις οὐδὲν δεῖται || τῆς πρὸς τὸ κενοῦ-
μενον ἀκολουθίας ἀπαξ γε τῆς ἐλκτικῆς δυνάμεως 96
say "rhetorical"? For we too are not to suppose that when certain rhetoricians pour ridicule upon that which they are quite incapable of refuting, without any attempt at argument, their words are really thereby constituted rhetoric. For rhetoric proceeds by persuasive reasoning; words without reasoning are buffoonery rather than rhetoric. Therefore, the reply of Erasistratus in his treatise "On Deglutition" was neither rhetoric nor logic. For what is it that he says? "Now, the stomach does not appear to exercise any traction." Let us testify against him in return, and set our argument beside his in the same form. Now, there appears to be no *peristalsis*\(^1\) of the gullet. "And how does this appear?" one of his adherents may perchance ask. "For is it not indicative of *peristalsis* that always when the upper parts of the gullet contract the lower parts dilate?" Again, then, we say, "And in what way does the attraction of the stomach not appear? For is it not indicative of attraction that always when the lower parts of the gullet dilate the upper parts contract?" Now, if he would but be sensible and recognize that this phenomenon is not more indicative of the one than of the other view, but that it applies equally to both,\(^2\) we should then show him without further delay the proper way to the discovery of truth.

We will, however, speak about the stomach again. And the dispersal of nutriment [anadosis] need not make us have recourse to the theory regarding the

1 *Peristalsis* may be used here to translate Gk. *peristolé*, meaning the contraction and dilation of muscle-fibres *circularly* round a lumen. cf. p. 263, note 2.

2 For a demonstration that this phenomenon is a conclusive proof neither of *peristolé* nor of real vital attraction, but is found even in dead bodies v. p. 267.
GALEN

ἐπὶ τῶν νεφρῶν ὤμολογημένης, ἦν καίτοι πάνυ σαφῶς ἀληθῆ γιγνώσκων ὑπάρχειν ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος οὔτ' ἐμνημονεύσεν οὔτ' ἀντείπεν οὔθ' ὅλως ἀπεφήνατο, τίν' ἔχει δόξαν ὑπὲρ τῆς τῶν οὐρῶν διακρίσεως.

'Ἡ διὰ τι προειπὼν εὐθὺς κατ' ἁρχὰς τῶν καθ' ὅλου λόγων, ὡς ὑπὲρ τῶν φυσικῶν ἐνεργειῶν ἔρει, πρῶτον τίνες τ' εἰς καὶ πῶς γίγνονται καὶ διὰ τίνων τόπων, ἐπὶ τῆς τῶν οὐρῶν διακρίσεως, ὅτι μὲν διὰ νεφρῶν, ἀπεφήνατο, τὸ δ' ὅπως γίγνεται παρέλπε; μάτην οὖν ἡμᾶς καὶ περὶ τῆς πέψεως ἐδίδαξεν, ὅπως γίγνεται, καὶ περὶ τῆς τοῦ χολώ-

dous περιττώματος διακρίσεως κατατρίβει. ἦρκει γὰρ εἰπεῖν κάνταὑθα τὰ μόρια, δι' ὅν γίγνεται, τὸ

d' ὅπως παραλιπεῖν. ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν ἐκείνων εἶχε λέγειν, οὖ μόνον δ' ὅν ὀργάνων ἀλλὰ καὶ καθ' ὅντωσα γίγνεται τρόπον, ὡσπερ οἴμαι καὶ περὶ τῆς ἀνάδοσιν: οὐ γὰρ ἠρκεσὲν εἰπεῖν αὐτῷ μὸνον,

ὅτι διὰ φλεβῶν, ἀλλὰ καὶ πῶς ἐπεξήλθεν, ὅτι τῇ

64 πρὸς || τὸ κενοῦμενον ἀκολουθία: περὶ δὲ τῶν

οὐρῶν τῆς διακρίσεως, ὅτι μὲν διὰ νεφρῶν γίγνε-

ται, γράφει, τὸ δ' ὅπως οὐκέτι προστίθησιν.

οὐδὲ γὰρ οἴμαι τῇ πρὸς τὸ κενοῦμενον ἀκολουθία

ἡν εἰπεῖν: οὔτω γὰρ ἀν οὐδεὶς ὑπ' ἱσχυρίας

ἀπέθανεν οὐδέποτε μὴ δυναμένον πλείονος ἐπιρ-

---

1 This was Erasistratus's favourite principle, known in Latin as the "horror vacui" and in English as "Nature's abhorrence of a vacuum," although these terms are not an exact translation of the Greek. τὸ κενοῦμενον probably means
natural tendency of a vacuum to become refilled, when once we have granted the attractive faculty of the kidneys. Now, although Erasistratus knew that this faculty most certainly existed, he neither mentioned it nor denied it, nor did he make any statement as to his views on the secretion of urine.

Why did he give notice at the very beginning of his "General Principles" that he was going to speak about natural activities—firstly what they are, how they take place, and in what situations—and then, in the case of urinary secretion, declared that this took place through the kidneys, but left out its method of occurrence? It must, then, have been for no purpose that he told us how digestion occurs, or spends time upon the secretion of biliary superfluities; for in these cases also it would have been sufficient to have named the parts through which the function takes place, and to have omitted the method. On the contrary, in these cases he was able to tell us not merely through what organs, but also in what way it occurs—as he also did, I think, in the case of anadosis; for he was not satisfied with saying that this took place through the veins, but he also considered fully the method, which he held to be from the tendency of a vacuum to become refilled. Concerning the secretion of urine, however, he writes that this occurs through the kidneys, but does not add in what way it occurs. I do not think he could say that this was from the tendency of matter to fill a vacuum, for, if this were so, nobody would have ever died of retention of urine, since no more can the vacuum, not the matter evacuated, although Galen elsewhere uses κενός in the latter (non-classical) sense, e.g. pp. 67, 215. Akolouthia is a following-up, a sequence, almost a consequence. 2 v. p. 123. 3 cf. Book II., chap. i.
ΓΑΛΕΝ

Φιλήματι ποτε περα τὸ κενούμενον ἀλλής γὰρ αἰτίας μηδεμίας προστεθείσης, ἀλλὰ μόνης τῆς πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίας ποδηγούσης τὸ συνεχές, οὐκ ἐγχωρεῖ πλέον ἐπιρρήναι ποτε τοῦ κενούμενου. ἀλλ' οὖν ἄλλην τινὰ προσβείναι πιθανήν αἰτίαν εἰχεν, ὡς ἐπὶ τῆς ἀναδόσεως τῆς ἐκθέσεως τῆς γαστρὸς. ἀλλ' αὕτη ἡ ἐπὶ τοῦ κατὰ τὴν κοίλην αἴματος ἀπολαύσει τελέως, οὐ τῷ μὴκε μόνον τῆς ἀποστάσεως ἐκλυθεῖσα, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῷ τὴν καρδίαν ὑπερκείμενην ἐξαρτάζειν αὐτῆς σφοδρῶς καθ' ἐκάστην διαστολὴν οὐκ ὀλίγον αἷμα.

Μόνη δὴ τις ἔτι καὶ πάντων ἐρήμων ἀπελεύθερο

τῶν σοφισμάτων ἐν τοῖς κατω τῆς κοίλης ἢ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθία, διὰ τε τοῦ ἐπὶ ταῖς ἰαχυρίαις ἀποθνῄσκοντας ἀπολαύσει τὴν πιθανότητα καὶ διὰ τὴν τῶν νεφρῶν θέσιν οὐδὲν ἤττον. εἰ μὲν γὰρ ἀπαν ἐπὶ αὐτοῦ ἐφέρετο τὸ αἷμα, δεόντως ἄν τις ἔταν ἐφασκέν αὐτῷ καθαίρεσθαι. νυνὶ δὲ, οὐ γὰρ ὅλον ἀλλὰ τοσοῦτον αὐτοῦ μέρος, ὅσον αἱ μέχρι νεφρῶν δέχονται φλέβες, ἐπὶ αὐτοῦ ἔρχεται, μόνον ἐκεῖνο καθαρθήσεται. καὶ τὸ μὲν ὀργῶδες αὐτοῦ καὶ λεπτὸν ὅλον δὲ ἡθμῶν τινῶν τῶν νεφρῶν διαδύσεται τὸ δ' αἰματωδῶς τε καὶ παχὺ κατὰ τὰς φλέβας ὑπομένου ἔμποδον στήσεται τῷ κατόπιν ἐπιρρέοντι. παλινδρομεῖν οὖν αὐτὸ πρότερον ἐπὶ τὴν κοίλην ἀναγκαῖον καὶ κενὰς οὕτως ἐργάζεσθαι τὰς ἐπὶ τοὺς νεφρῶς ἰούσας φλέβας, αἱ δὲυτερον οὐκέτι

1 Vital factor necessary over and above the mechanical.

100
flow into a vacuum than has run out. For, if no other factor comes into operation 1 save only this tendency by which a vacuum becomes refilled, no more could ever flow in than had been evacuated. Nor could he suggest any other plausible cause, such, for example, as the expression of nutriment by the stomach 2 which occurs in the process of anadosis; this had been entirely disproved in the case of blood in the vena cava; 3 it is excluded, not merely owing to the long distance, but also from the fact that the overlying heart, at each diastole, robs the vena cava by violence of a considerable quantity of blood.

In relation to the lower part of the vena cava 4 there would still remain, solitary and abandoned, the specious theory concerning the filling of a vacuum. This, however, is deprived of plausibility by the fact that people die of retention of urine, and also, no less, by the situation of the kidneys. For, if the whole of the blood were carried to the kidneys, one might properly maintain that it all undergoes purification there. But, as a matter of fact, the whole of it does not go to them, but only so much as can be contained in the veins going to the kidneys; 5 this portion only, therefore, will be purified. Further, the thin serous part of this will pass through the kidneys as if through a sieve, while the thick sanguineous portion remaining in the veins will obstruct the blood flowing in from behind; this will first, therefore, have to run back to the vena cava, and so to empty the veins going to the kidneys; these veins will no longer be able to

---

4 i.e. the part below the liver; cf. p. 91, note 2.
5 Renal veins.
παρακομοῦσιν ἐπ’ αὐτοὺς ἀκάθαρτον αἷμα· κατειληφότος γὰρ αὐτὰς τοῦ πρωτέου πάροδος οὐδεμία λέλειπται. τίς οὖν ἢ μὲν ἢ δύναμις ἀπαρέξει πάλιν ὅπισώ τῶν νεφρῶν τὸ καθαρόν αἷμα; τίς δὲ τούτο μὲν διαδεξαμένη κελεύει πάλιν πρὸς τὸ κάτω μέρος ἱέναι τῆς κοίλης, ἐτέρῳ δ’ ἄνωθεν ἐπιφερομένῳ προστάξει, πρὶν ἐπὶ τοὺς νεφροὺς ἀπελθεῖν, μὴ φέρεσθαι κάτω;

Ταῦτά οὖν ἀπαντα συνιδών ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος ἀποριών μεστα καὶ μίαν μόνην δόξαν εὔπορον εύφων ἐν ἀπασί την τῆς ὀλκῆς, οὔτ’ ἀπορείσθαι βουλόμενος οὔτε τὴν Ἰπποκράτους ἑθέλων λέγειν ἀμείνον ὑπέλαβε σιωπητέον εἶναι περὶ τοῦ τρόπου τῆς διακρίσεως.

'Αλλ’ εἰ κάκεινος ἐσύγχυσε, ἡμεῖς ού σιωπήσομεν; ἴσων γὰρ, ὡς οὐκ ἐνδέχεται παρελθόντα τὴν Ἰπποκράτειον δόξαν, εἴθ’ ἔτερον τι περὶ νεφρῶν ἐνεργείας εἰπόντα μὴ οὗ καταγέλαστον εἶναι παντᾶπασι. διὰ τούτ’ Ἐρασίστρατος μὲν ἐσιώπησεν, Ἀσκληπιάδης δ’ ἐφεύσατο παραπλησίως οἰκέταις λάλοις μὲν τὰ πρόσθεν τοῦ βίου καὶ πολλὰ πολλάκις ἐγκλήματα διαλυσαμένοις ύπὸ περιττῆς πανουρρίας, ἐπ’ αὐτοφόρῳ δὲ ποτὲ κατειλημμένοις, εἰτ’ οὐδὲν ἐξευρίσκουσι σόφισμα κάπετ’ ἑναυθὰ τοῦ μὲν αἰδημονεστέρου σιωπῶντος, οἷον ἀποπληξία τινὶ κατειλημμένου, τοῦ δ’ ἀναίρεστωτέρου κρύπτοντος μὲν ἔθ’ ύπὸ μάλης τοῦ ξητούμενος, ἐξομυνένου δὲ καὶ μηδ’ ἐωρακέναι πῶς τοῦ λεοπόντος. οὕτω γὰρ τοι καὶ ὁ Ἀσκληπιάδης ἔπελεπτότων αὐτῶν τῶν τῆς πανουρρίας σοφισμάτων καὶ μήτε τῆς πρὸς τὸ λεπτομερὲς
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xvi

conduct a second quantity of unpurified blood to the kidneys—occupied as they are by the blood which had preceded, there is no passage left. What power have we, then, which will draw back the purified blood from the kidneys? And what power, in the next place, will bid this blood retire to the lower part of the vena cava, and will enjoin on another quantity coming from above not to proceed downwards before turning off into the kidneys?

Now Erasistratus realized that all these ideas were open to many objections, and he could only find one idea which held good in all respects—namely, that of attraction. Since, therefore, he did not wish either to get into difficulties or to mention the view of Hippocrates, he deemed it better to say nothing at all as to the manner in which secretion occurs.

But even if he kept silence, I am not going to do so. For I know that if one passes over the Hippocratic view and makes some other pronouncement about the function of the kidneys, one cannot fail to make oneself utterly ridiculous. It was for this reason that Erasistratus kept silence and Asclepiades lied; they are like slaves who have had plenty to say in the early part of their career, and have managed by excessive rascality to escape many and frequent accusations, but who, later, when caught in the act of thieving, cannot find any excuse; the more modest one then keeps silence, as though thunderstruck, whilst the more shameless continues to hide the missing article beneath his arm and denies on oath that he has ever seen it. For it was in this way also that Asclepiades, when all subtle excuses had failed him and there was no longer any room for nonsense about "conveyance towards the
GALEN

форас ἐχούσης ἔτι χώραν ἐνταύθοι ληψεῖσθαι μήδ’ ὡς ὑπὸ τῶν νεφρῶν γεννᾶται τοιτὶ τὸ περὶ-
τώμα, καθάπερ ὑπὸ τῶν ἐν ἡπατί πόρων ἡ χολή,
δυνατόν ὃν εἰπόντα μὴ οὐ μέγιστον ὀφλεῖν γέλι-
ώτα, ἐξομυνταί τε καὶ ψεύδεται φανερῶς, οὐ
dιήκειν λέγων ἐπὶ τοὺς νεφροὺς τὸ οὖρον ἀλλ’
ἀτμοειδῶς εὐθὺς ἐκ τῶν κατὰ τὴν κοίλην μερῶν
eἰς τὴν κύστιν ἀθροίζεσθαι.

Οὕτωι μὲν οὖν τοῖς ἐπ’ αὐτοφώρῳ κατειλημ-
mένοις οἰκήταις ομοίως ἐκπλαγέντες ο μὲν ἐσιώπη-
σεν, ο δ’ ἀναισχύντως ψεύδεται.

XVII

Τῶν δὲ νεωτέρων ὡσι τοῖς τούτων ὀνόμασιν
ἔαυτοὺς ἐσέμμυναν Ἐρασιστρατείους τε καὶ Ἀσ-
kληπιαδεῖους ἐπονομάσαντες, ὀμοίως τοῖς ὑπὸ τοῦ
βελτίστου Μενάνδρου κατὰ τὰς κωμῳδίας εἰσαγο-
mένους οἰκέταις. Δάοις τέ τισι καὶ Γέταις, οὔδὲν
ἣνομένοις σφίς πεπράχθαι γενναίον, εἰ μὴ τρίς
ἐξαπατήσειαν τὸν δεσπότην, οὕτω καὶ αὐτοῖ κατὰ
πόλλης σχολῆς ἀναίσχυντα σοφίσματα συνέβε-
σαν, οἱ μὲν, ἵνα μὴ ὅλως ἐξελεγχθῇ ποτ’

68 Ἀσκληπιάδης ψευδόμενος, οἱ δ’, ἵνα κακῶς εἰπω-
sεν, ἃ καλῶς ἐσιώπησεν Ἐρασιστράτος.

Ἀλλὰ τῶν μὲν Ἀσκληπιιαδεῖων ἄλις. οἱ δ’
Ἐρασιστράτειοι λέγειν ἐπιχειροῦντες, ὅπως οἱ
νεφροὶ διηθοῦσι τὸ οὖρον, ἀπαντά δρῶσὶ τε καὶ

---

1 cf. p. 87, note 3.
2 κοίλην: the usual reading is κοῖλαν, which would make

104
rarefied part [of the air];"  

and when it was impossible without incurring the greatest derision to say that this superfluity [i.e. the urine] is generated by the kidneys as is bile by the canals in the liver—he, then, I say, clearly lied when he swore that the urine does not reach the kidneys, and maintained that it passes, in the form of vapour, straight from the region of the vena cava,  

to collect in the bladder.

Like slaves, then, caught in the act of stealing, these two are quite bewildered, and while the one says nothing, the other indulges in shameless lying.

XVII

Now such of the younger men as have dignified themselves with the names of these two authorities by taking the appellations "Erasistrateans" or "Asclepiadeans" are like the Davi and Getae—the slaves introduced by the excellent Menander into his comedies. As these slaves held that they had done nothing fine unless they had cheated their master three times, so also the men I am discussing have taken their time over the construction of impudent sophisms, the one party striving to prevent the lies of Asclepiades from ever being refuted, and the other saying stupidly what Erasistratus had the sense to keep silence about.

But enough about the Asclepiadeans. The Erasistrateans, in attempting to say how the kidneys let the urine through, will do anything or suffer anything it "from the region of the alimentary canal." cf. p. 118, note 1.
GALEN

πάσχουσι καὶ παντοῖοι γίγνονται πιθανὸν ἐξευ-

πεῖν τι ξητοῦντες αὐτῶν ὀλίκης μὴ δεόμενον.

Οἱ μὲν δὴ πλησίον Ἐρασιστράτου τοῖς χρόνοις

γενόμενοι τὰ μὲν ἄνω τῶν νεφρῶν μόρια καθαρὸν

αἷμα λαμβάνειν φασί, τὸ δὲ βάρος ἔχειν τὸ

ὐδατῶδες περίττωμα βρίδειν τε καὶ ὑπορρέιν

κάτω· διηθούμενον δὲ ἐνταῦθα κατὰ τοὺς νεφροὺς

αὐτῶν χρηστὸν οὖτω γενόμενον ἀπασί τοῖς κάτω

τῶν νεφρῶν ἐπιπέμπεσθαι τὸ αἷμα.

Καὶ μέχρι γέ τινος εὐδοκίμησεν ἢδε ἡ δόξα καὶ

ήκμασε καὶ ἀληθῆς ἐνομίσθη· χρόνῳ δ᾽ ὑστερον

καὶ αὐτοῖς τοῖς Ἐρασιστρατείοις ὑποττὸς ἐφάνη

καὶ τελευτῶντες ἀπέστησαν αὐτῆς. αἰτεῖσθαι

γὰρ ἔδοκοι δύο ταῦτα μήτε συγχωρούμενα πρὸς

τινὸς ἀλλʼ οὐδ’ ἀποδειχθῆναι δυνάμενα, πρῶτον

μὲν τὸ βάρος τῆς ὀρφώδους ὑγρότητος ἐν τῇ

κοίλῃ || φλεβὶ γεννώμενον, ὡσπερ οὐκ ἔξ ἄρχης

ὑπάρχον, ὅποτ’ ἐκ τῆς κοιλίας εἰς ἡπαρ ἀνεφέρετο.

τί δὴ οὖν οὐκ εὐθὺς ἐν ἐκείνοις τοῖς χωρίοις

ὑπέρρει κάτω; πῶς δ’ ἂν τῷ δόξειν εὐλόγως

εἰρήσθαι συντελεῖν εἰς τὴν ἀνάδοσιν ἡ ὑδατώδης

ὑγρότης, εἴπερ οὗτως ἐστὶ βαρεία;

Δεύτερον δ’ ἀτοποῦν, ὅτι κἂν κάτω συγχωρηθῇ

φέρεσθαι πᾶσα καὶ μὴ κατ’ ἄλλο χωρίον ἡ τὴν

κοίλην φλέβα, τίνα τρόπον εἰς τοὺς νεφροὺς

ἐμπεσεῖται, χαλεπόν, μᾶλλον δ’ ἀδύνατον εἶπεῖν,

μὴ’ ἐν τοῖς κάτω μέρεσι κειμένων αὐτῶν τῆς

φλεβὸς ἀλλ’ ἐκ τῶν πλαγίων μὴ’ ἐμφυομένης

εἰς αὐτοὺς τῆς κοίλης ἀλλ’ ἀπόφυσιν τίνα μόνον

106
or try any shift in order to find some plausible explanation which does not demand the principle of attraction.

Now those near the times of Erasistratus maintain that the parts above the kidneys receive pure blood, whilst the watery residue, being heavy, tends to run downwards; that this, after percolating through the kidneys themselves, is thus rendered serviceable, and is sent, as blood, to all the parts below the kidneys.

For a certain period at least this view also found favour and flourished, and was held to be true; after a time, however, it became suspect to the Erasistrateans themselves, and at last they abandoned it. For apparently the following two points were assumed, neither of which is conceded by anyone, nor is even capable of being proved. The first is the heaviness of the serous fluid, which was said to be produced in the vena cava, and which did not exist, apparently, at the beginning, when this fluid was being carried up from the stomach to the liver. Why, then, did it not at once run downwards when it was in these situations? And if the watery fluid is so heavy, what plausibility can anyone find in the statement that it assists in the process of anadosis?

In the second place there is this absurdity, that even if it be agreed that all the watery fluid does fall downwards, and, only when it is in the vena cava,\(^1\) still it is difficult, or, rather, impossible, to say through what means it is going to fall into the kidneys, seeing that these are not situated below, but on either side of the vena cava, and that the vena cava is not inserted into them, but merely sends a branch\(^2\)

---

\(^1\) Not at an earlier stage, when it is still on its way from the alimentary canal to the liver.  
\(^2\) i.e. a renal vein.
GALEN
eis ekateron pempoúsas, ósper kai eis tálha pánta mória.
Tis oúv díadeíaeména taúttn diá kата-
gnoseísan; émow mén hliðiwterá makrò faínetai
thìs protéras. Hkmase ði oúv kai aúthi potè.
fasì gár, eis kata thìs gíh ekxuðeíi meiwghmenón
élaiou ñdáti, diáforon ekateron ñdon badiexísthai
kai rúísexthai to ñev tíðe, to ðe tíðe. ñavmaistôn
ouí ouðén einaí fasn, eis to ñev ñdáti ñdades ñgíth
70 eis touísv neífróus rëi, to ði aíma dia thìs koilìhs
féreíai, kátw. kateíngostai oúv ñdè kai ñdè
ñ ñdaxa. dia tî gár ápò thìs koilìhs muðríwn
ékpefeukuiów phlebów aíma mèn eis tás állass
ápasas, ði ñbðððh ñgîntìs eis tás ñpti tous
nefrón pheroména ektrépetai; toutñ’ autò to
çhtoûmenon ouí eiríkasiq, állass to gígnýmenon
eiptóntes móvon ñointai thìn aútìan ápòde dáñvèi.
Páliñ ouí, to trítou tò soñhìri, thìn xheíntsth
ápasòn dozxan éxeirhmenèn thìn ypto Lúkou tou
Makedónos, euðokímosan de diá thò kainòv ñðà
légymen. ápethímatò gár dh ði Lúkous ñutòs,
òsper éx ñðútou tívòs xhrísomón ápothegeðhmenos,
perìttwma thìs tòwn nefróû thréñeðos einaí to
óúron. ðòi mèn ouí autò to pinómenon ñpan
óuroñ gínyetai, plèn eì ti metà tòwn diaxhorm-
mátow ñptìlhe ñ h eìs ñððwta ápethórìsenha ñ eìs
thìn ñðhloñ diañovñ, ènarchìs ènveíkynñai to
plèthos tòwn kath èkásth thìmèan ouýromènwn.
èn xheímoñi dh málìsta mátheín èstìì ëpì tòwn
àrgouñntón mèn, koðouñzomènwn dh, kai málìstì
71 eì lepòtòs ði oíños eìth kai pórimos. ouýrouñ || gár
into each of them, as it also does into all the other parts.

What doctrine, then, took the place of this one when it was condemned? One which to me seems far more foolish than the first, although it also flourished at one time. For they say, that if oil be mixed with water and poured upon the ground, each will take a different route, the one flowing this way and the other that, and that, therefore, it is not surprising that the watery fluid runs into the kidneys, while the blood falls downwards along the vena cava. Now this doctrine also stands already condemned. For why, of the countless veins which spring from the vena cava, should blood flow into all the others, and the serous fluid be diverted to those going to the kidneys? They have not answered the question which was asked; they merely state what happens and imagine they have thereby assigned the reason.

Once again, then (the third cup to the Saviour!), let us now speak of the worst doctrine of all, lately invented by Lycus of Macedonia, but which is popular owing to its novelty. This Lycus, then, maintains, as though uttering an oracle from the inner sanctuary, that urine is residual matter from the nutrition of the kidneys! Now, the amount of urine passed every day shows clearly that it is the whole of the fluid drunk which becomes urine, except for that which comes away with the dejections or passes off as sweat or insensible perspiration. This is most easily recognized in winter in those who are doing no work but are carousing, especially if the wine be thin and diffusible;

1 In a toast, the third cup was drunk to Zeus Sôter (the Saviour).
2 An anatomist of the Alexandrian school.
3 cf. nasal mucus, p. 90, note 1.
οὺτοὶ διὰ ταχέων ὀλίγου δεῖν, ὀσονπερ καὶ πίνουσιν. ὤτι δὲ καὶ ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος οὕτως ἐγένεσθεν, οἱ τὸ πρῶτον ἄνεγκροτες αὐτοῦ σὐγγραμμα τῶν καθόλου λόγων ἐπίστανταί. ὥσθ' ὁ Δύκος οὕτ' ἀληθὴν φαίνεται λέγων οὕτ' Ἐρασί-στράτεια, δῆλον δ' ὡς οὐδ' Ἀσκληπιάδεια, πολὺ δὲ μᾶλλον οὐδ' Ἰπποκράτεια. λευκῷ τοῖνυν κατὰ τὴν παροιμίαν ἔοικε κόρακι μήτ' αὐτοῖς τοῖς κόρα-ξιν ἀναμιχθῆναι δυναμένω διὰ τὴν χρόαν μήτε ταῖς περιστεραῖς διὰ τὸ μέγεθος, ἀλλ' οὕτι ποι τοῦτον γ' ἔνεκα παροπτέος' ἵσως γάρ τι λέγει θαυμαστῶν, δ' μηδὲς τῶν ἑμπροσθὲν ἔγνως.

Τὸ μὲν οὖν ἀπαντά τὰ τρεφόμενα μόρια ποιεῖν τι περίττωμα συγχωροῦμενον, τὸ δὲ τοὺς νεφροὺς μόνους, οὕτω σμικρὰ σώματα, χόας ὅλους τέτ-ταρας ἢ καὶ πλείους ἱσχεῖν ἐνίοτε περιττώματος οὗθ' ὁμολογούμενον οὕτε λόγον ἔχουν τὸ γὰρ ἐκάστον τῶν μειζόνων σπλάγχνων περίττωμα πλείου ἀναγκαῖον ὑπάρχειν. οἷον αὐτίκα τὸ τοῦ τυεύμονον, εἴπερ ἀνάλογον τῷ μεγέθει τοῦ 72 σπλάγχνου γίγνοντο, πολλαπλάσιον ἐσται δή-που τοῦ κατὰ τοὺς νεφροὺς, ὅσθ' ὅλος μὲν ὁ θῶραξ ἐμπληθησθῆται, πυγησθεῖ τ瑧 αὐτίκα τὸ ἔφοι. ἀλλ' εἰ ἵσων φήσει τις γίγνεσθαι τὸ καθ' ἐκάστο τῶν ἄλλων μορίων περίττωμα, διὰ ποιῶν κύστεων ἐκκρίνεται; εἰ γὰρ οἱ νεφροὶ τοῖς κωθω-νιζομένοις τρεῖς ἢ τέταρτας ἐνίοτε χόας ποιοῦσι περιττώματος, ἐκάστο τῶν ἄλλων σπλάγχνων πολλὰ πλείους ἐσονται καὶ πίθου τινὸς οὕτω μεγίστου δεήσει τῷ δεξομένου τὰ πάντων περιτ-

---

1 "Sur l’Ensemble des Choses" (Darembourg).
these people rapidly pass almost the same quantity as they drink. And that even Erasistratus was aware of this is known to those who have read the first book of his "General Principles." Thus Lycus is speaking neither good Erasistratism, nor good Asclepiadism, far less good Hippocratism. He is, therefore, as the saying is, like a white crow, which cannot mix with the genuine crows owing to its colour, nor with the pigeons owing to its size. For all this, however, he is not to be disregarded; he may, perhaps, be stating some wonderful truth, unknown to any of his predecessors.

Now it is agreed that all parts which are undergoing nutrition produce a certain amount of residue, but it is neither agreed nor is it likely, that the kidneys alone, small bodies as they are, could hold four whole congii, and sometimes even more, of residual matter. For this surplus must necessarily be greater in quantity in each of the larger viscera; thus, for example, that of the lung, if it corresponds in amount to the size of the viscus, will obviously be many times more than that in the kidneys, and thus the whole of the thorax will become filled, and the animal will be at once suffocated. But if it be said that the residual matter is equal in amount in each of the other parts, where are the bladders, one may ask, through which it is excreted? For, if the kidneys produce in drinkers three and sometimes four congii of superfluous matter, that of each of the other viscera will be much more, and thus an enormous barrel will be needed to contain the waste products of them all.

About twelve quarts. This is about five times as much as the average daily excretion, and could only be passed if a very large amount of wine were drunk.
τάματα. καίτοι πολλάκις, ὅσον ἔπιε τις, ὀλύγον
deīν οὕρησεν ἀπαν, ὡς ἂν ἐπὶ τοὺς νεφροὺς φερο-
mένου τοῦ πόματος ἀπαντος.

'Εσοικέν οὖν ὁ τὸ τρῆτον ἐξαπατῶν οὗτος οὐδὲν
ἀνύειν ἀλλ' εὐθὺς γεγονέναι κατάφυρος καὶ μένειν
ἐτι τὸ ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἀπορον Ἑρασίστρατῳ τε καὶ τοῖς
ἀλλοις ἀπασί πλὴν Ἰπποκράτῳ. διατρίβω δ' ἐκὼν
ἐν τῷ τόπῳ σαφῶς εἰδῶς, ὅτι μηδὲν εἰπεῖν
ἐχει μηδεὶς ἀλλος περὶ τῆς τῶν νεφρῶν ἐνεργείας,
ἀλλ' ἀναγκαῖον ἢ τῶν μαγείρων ἀμαθεστέρων
φαίνεσθαι μηδ' ὅτι δηθεῖται δ' αὐτῶν τὸ οὖρον

73 ὁμολογοῦντας ἢ || τούτῳ συγχωρήσανται μηδὲν
ἐτ' ἐχεῖν εἰπεῖν ἑτερον αἰτίου τῆς διακρίσεως
πλὴν τῆς ὀλκῆς.

'Αλλ' εἰ μὴ τῶν οὖρων ἡ φορὰ τῇ πρὸς τὸ
κενούμενον ἀκολουθίᾳ γίγνεται, δήλον, ὡς οὐδ' ἡ
tου αἵματος οὐδ' τῆς χολῆς ἢ εἰπερ ἐκείνων καὶ
tούτου: πάντα γὰρ ὁσαύτως ἀναγκαιον ἐπιτε-
λείσθαι καὶ κατ' αὐτὸν τὸν Ἑρασίστρατον.

Εἰρήσεται δ' ἐπὶ πλέον ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν ἐν τῷ μετὰ
ταῦτα γράμματι.
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, I. xvii

Yet one often urinates practically the same quantity as one has drunk, which would show that the whole of what one drinks goes to the kidneys.

Thus the author of this third piece of trickery would appear to have achieved nothing, but to have been at once detected, and there still remains the original difficulty which was insoluble by Erasistratus and by all others except Hippocrates. I dwell purposely on this topic, knowing well that nobody else has anything to say about the function of the kidneys, but that either we must prove more foolish than the very butchers if we do not agree that the urine passes through the kidneys; or, if one acknowledges this, that then one cannot possibly give any other reason for the secretion than the principle of attraction.

Now, if the movement of urine does not depend on the tendency of a vacuum to become refilled, it is clear that neither does that of the blood nor that of the bile; or if that of these latter does so, then so also does that of the former. For they must all be accomplished in one and the same way, even according to Erasistratus himself.

This matter, however, will be discussed more fully in the book following this.

BOOK II
"Οτι μὲν οὖν ἀναγκαῖον ἐστιν οὐκ Ἕρασιστράτῳ μόνῳ ἄλλα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπασιν, ὅσοι μέλλουσι περὶ διακρίσεως οὐρων ἐρεῖν τι χρηστῶν, ὀμολογήσαι δύναμιν τιν' ὑπάρχειν τοῖς νεφρῶις ἐλκουσαν εἰς ἑαυτοὺς ποιότητα τοιαύτην, οὔτα ἐν τοῖς οὐρωις ἐστιν, διὰ τοῦ πρόσθεν ἔπιδεδεικτα γράμματος, ἀναμμηνησκόντων ἃ μ' αὐτῷ καὶ τοῦθ' ἡμῶν, ὡς οὐκ ἄλλοις μὲν εἰς τὴν κύστιν φέρεται τὰ οὐρα διὰ τῶν νεφρῶν, ἄλλως δ' εἰς ἀπαντα τοῦ ξύφου τὰ μόρια τὸ αἶμα, κατ' ἄλλον δέ τινα τρόπον ἡ ἕαυθη χολή διακρίνεται. δεικ-75 θείσης γὰρ ἑναργοῦ ἐστὶ ἐνὸς ὀούτωσον οργάνου τῆς ἐλκτικῆς τε καὶ ἐπισταστικῆς οὐσιασμοινὸς δυνάμεως οὐδὲν ἐτι χαλεπῶς ἐπὶ τὰ λοιπά μεταφέρειν αὐτήν: οὐ γὰρ δὲ τοῖς μὲν νεφρῶις ἡ φύσις ἐδοκεί τίνα τοιαύτην δύναμιν, οὔτε δὲ γε καὶ τοῖς τὸ χολῶδες ὑγρὸν ἐλκουσιν ἀγγείοις οὐδὲ τούτοις μὲν, οὔκετι δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων μορίων ἐκάστῳ. καὶ μὴν εἰ τούτ' ἁληθεῖς ἐστιν, θαυμάζειν χρὴ τοῦ Ἕρασιστράτου ψεοιδῆς οὕτω λόγους ύπέρ ἀνα-

1 cf. p. 89. 2 This term is nowadays limited to the drawing action of a blister. cf. p. 223.

II6
BOOK II

I

In the previous book we demonstrated that not only Erasistratus, but also all others who would say anything to the purpose about urinary secretion, must acknowledge that the kidneys possess some faculty which attracts to them this particular quality existing in the urine.¹ Besides this we drew attention to the fact that the urine is not carried through the kidneys into the bladder by one method, the blood into parts of the animal by another, and the yellow bile separated out on yet another principle. For when once there has been demonstrated in any one organ, the drawing, or so-called epispastic² faculty, there is then no difficulty in transferring it to the rest. Certainly Nature did not give a power such as this to the kidneys without giving it also to the vessels which abstract the biliary fluid,³ nor did she give it to the latter without also giving it to each of the other parts. And, assuredly, if this is true, we must marvel that Erasistratus should make statements concerning the delivery of nutriment from the food-canal⁴ which are

³ The radicles of the hepatic ducts in the liver were supposed to be the active agents in extracting bile from the blood. cf. pp. 145–149. ⁴ Anadosis; cf. p. 13, note 5.
The term κοιλία is used both specifically for the stomach proper and also (as probably here) in a somewhat wider sense for the stomach region, including the adjacent part of the small intestine; this was the part of the alimentary canal
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. 1

so false as to be detected even by Asclepiades. Now, Erasistratus considers it absolutely certain that, if anything flows from the veins, one of two things must happen: either a completely empty space will result, or the contiguous quantum of fluid will run in and take the place of that which has been evacuated. Asclepiades, however, holds that not one of two, but one of three things must be said to result in the emptied vessels: either there will be an entirely empty space, or the contiguous portion will flow in, or the vessel will contract. For whereas, in the case of reeds and tubes it is true to say that, if these be submerged in water, and are emptied of the air which they contain in their lumens, then either a completely empty space will be left, or the contiguous portion will move onwards; in the case of veins this no longer holds, since their coats can collapse and so fall in upon the interior cavity. It may be seen, then, how false this hypothesis—by Zeus, I cannot call it a demonstration!—of Erasistratus is.

And, from another point of view, even if it were true, it is superfluous, if the stomach has the power of compressing the veins, as he himself supposed, and the veins again of contracting upon their contents and propelling them forwards. For, apart from other considerations, no plethora would ever take place in the body, if delivery of nutriment resulted merely from the tendency of a vacuum to become refilled. Now, if the compression of the stomach becomes weaker the further it goes, and cannot reach to an from which nutriment was believed to be absorbed by the mesenteric veins; cf. p. 309, note 2.

2 cf. p. 100, note 2; p. 167, note 2.

3 A characteristic "lesion" in Erasistratus's pathology.
GALEN

μέχρι παντὸς ἀδυνατός ἔστων εξικνεῖσθαι καὶ διὰ τοῦτ’ ἄλλης τινὸς δεῖ μηχανής εἰς τὴν πάντη φορὰν τοῦ αἵματος, ἀναγκαία μὲν ἡ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκόλουθα προσεξεύρηται: πλῆθος δ’ 77 ἐν οὐδενὶ τῶν μεθ’ ἤπαρ ἔσται || μορίων, ἢ, εἴπερ ἅρα, περὶ τὴν καρδίαν τε καὶ τὸν πνεύμονα. μόνη γὰρ αὐτή τῶν μεθ’ ἦπαρ εἰς τὴν δέξιαν αὐτῆς κοιλίαν ἔλκει τὴν τροφήν, εἰτὰ διὰ τῆς φλεβὸς τῆς ἀρτηριώδους ἐκτέμπει τῷ πνεύμονι: τῶν γὰρ ἀλλῶν οὐδὲν οὐδ’ αὐτὸς ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος ἐκ καρδίας βούλεται τρέφεσθαι διὰ τὴν τῶν ὑμένων ἐπίφυσιν. εἰ δὲ γ’, ἵνα πλῆθος γενήται, φυλάξομεν ἀχρι παντὸς τὴν ῥώμην τῆς κατὰ τὴν κοιλίαν ἐνθλύσεως, οὐδὲν ἐτι δεόμεθα τῆς πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκόλουθα, μάλιστ’ εἰ καὶ τὴν τῶν φλεβῶν συνυποθοίμεθα περιστολήν, ὡς αὐ καὶ τοῦτ’ αὐτῷ πάλιν ἀρέσκει τῷ Ἐρασίστράτῳ.

II

Ἀναμνηστέον οὖν αὕθεις αὐτῶν, καὶ μὴ βούληται, τῶν νεφρῶν καὶ λεκτέου, ὡς ἐλεγχος οὕτω φανερώτατος ἀπάντων τῶν ἀποχωροῦντων τῆς ὀλίγης: οὕδεις γὰρ οὐδὲν οὔτ’ εἰπε πιθανόν, ἀλλ’ οὐδ’ ἐξευρεῖν εἰχε κατ’ οὐδένα τρόπον, ὡς

1 A certain subordinate place allowed to the horror vacui.
2 i.e. the parts to which the veins convey blood after it leaves the liver—second stage of anadosis; cf. p. 91, note 2; p. 13, note 5.
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. 1.—11

indefinite distance, and if, therefore, there is need of some other mechanism to explain why the blood is conveyed in all directions, then the principle of the refilling of a vacuum may be looked on as a necessary addition;¹ there will not, however, be a plethora in any of the parts coming after the liver,² or, if there be, it will be in the region of the heart and lungs; for the heart alone of the parts which come after the liver draws the nutriment into its right ventricle, thereafter sending it through the arterioid vein ³ to the lungs (for Erasistratus himself will have it that, owing to the membranous excrescences,⁴ no other parts save the lungs receive nourishment from the heart). If, however, in order to explain how plethora comes about, we suppose the force of compression by the stomach to persist indefinitely, we have no further need of the principle of the refilling of a vacuum, especially if we assume contraction of the veins in addition—as is, again, agreeable to Erasistratus himself.

II

Let me draw his attention, then, once again, even if he does not wish it, to the kidneys, and let me state that these confute in the very clearest manner such people as object to the principle of attraction. Nobody has ever said anything plausible, nor, as we previously showed, has anyone been able to discover,

¹ What we now call the pulmonary artery. Galen believed that the right ventricle existed for the purpose of sending nutrient blood to the lungs.

² Lit. owing to the ongrowth (epiphysis) of membranes; he means the tricuspid valve; cf. p. 314, note 2; p. 321, note 4.
Galen

ἐμπροσθεν ἐδείκνυμεν, ἔτερον αὐτιον οὐρων δια-
κρίσεως, ἀλλ’ ἀναγκαίοι η μαίνεσθαι δοκεῖν, εἴ
78 φήσαμεν ἄτμοει|δῶς εἰς τὴν κύστιν ἱέναι τὸ οὐρων
ἡ ἀσχημονεῖν τῆς πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολούθιας
μνημονεύοντας, ληρόδους μὲν οὐσίας κατὶ τοῦ
ἀίματος, ἀδυνάτου δὲ καὶ ἠλθίου παντάπασιν
ἐπὶ τῶν οὐρων.

"Εν μὲν δὴ τούτω σφάλμα τῶν ἀποστάντων τῆς
ἐλκής" ἔτερον δὲ τὸ περὶ τῆς κατὰ τὴν ἕλθην
χολὴν διακρίσεως: οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδ’ ἐκεῖ παραρρέ-
οντοι τοῦ αἵματος τὰ στόματα τῶν χοληδόχων
ἀγγείων ἀκριβῶς διακριθήσεται τὸ χολῶδες
περίττωμα. καὶ μὴ διακρινόθη, φασίν, ἀλλὰ
συναναφερέσθω τῷ αἵματι πάντη τοῦ σώματος.
ἀλλ’, ὡς σοφώτατοι, προνοητικὴν τοῦ ζῴου καὶ
τεχνικὴν αὐτὸς ο Ἐρασίστρατος ὑπέθετο τὴν
φυσιν. ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ χολῶδες ύγρόν ἀχρηστὸν
ἐίναι παντάπασι τοῖς ζῴοις ἐφασκεν. οὐ συμβαίνει
δ’ ἀλλήλοις ἀμφότερα. πῶς γὰρ ἄν
ἐτι προνοεῖσθαι τοῦ ζῷου δόξειν ἐπιτρέπουσα
συναναφέρεσθαι τῷ αἵματι μοχθηρῶν οὕτω χυμῶν;

Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν σμικρά: τὸ δὲ μέγιστον καὶ
σαφέστατον πάλιν ἐνταῦθ’ ἀμάρτημα καὶ δὴ
φράσω. εἴπερ γὰρ δ’ οὔδέν ἀλλ’ ἢ ὡς παχύτερον
79 μὲν ἔστι τὸ αἷμα, λεπτότερα δ’ ἢ ἔ ἔ
ξανθὴν χολὴ
cαὶ τὰ μὲν τῶν φλεβῶν εὐρύτερα στόματα, τὰ
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II.

by any means, any other cause for the secretion of urine; we necessarily appear mad if we maintain that the urine passes into the kidneys in the form of vapour, and we certainly cut a poor figure when we talk about the tendency of a vacuum to become refilled;¹ this idea is foolish in the case of blood, and impossible, nay, perfectly nonsensical, in the case of the urine.²

This, then, is one blunder made by those who dissociate themselves from the principle of attraction. Another is that which they make about the secretion of yellow bile. For in this case, too, it is not a fact that when the blood runs past the mouths [stomata] of the bile-ducts there will be a thorough separation out [secretion] of biliary waste-matter. "Well," say they, "let us suppose that it is not secreted but carried with the blood all over the body." But, you sapient folk, Erasistratus himself supposed that Nature took thought for the animals' future, and was workmanlike in her method; and at the same time he maintained that the biliary fluid was useless in every way for the animals. Now these two things are incompatible. For how could Nature be still looked on as exercising forethought for the animal when she allowed a noxious humour such as this to be carried off and distributed with the blood? . . .

This, however, is a small matter. I shall again point out here the greatest and most obvious error. For if the yellow bile adjusts itself to the narrower vessels and stomata, and the blood to the wider ones, for no other reason than that blood is thicker and bile thinner, and that the stomata of the veins are

¹ Horror vacui. ² But Erasistratus had never upheld this in the case of urinary secretion. cf. p. 99.
Galen

dè tòn χοληδόχων ἀγγείων στενότερα, διὰ τοῦθ' ἢ μὲν χολή τοῖς στενότεροις ἀγγείοις τε καὶ στόμασιν ἐναρμόττει, τὸ δ' ἅλμα τοῖς εὐρυτέροις, δήλου, ὡς καὶ τὸ ὑδάτωδες τοῦτο καὶ ὀρρώδες περίττωμα τοσοῦτο πρότερον εἰσρυμησαί τοῖς χοληδόχωις ἀγγείοις, ὅσῳ λεπτότερον ἐστὶ τῆς χολῆς. πῶς οὖν οὐκ εἰσρεῖ; ὅτι παχύτερον ἐστὶ νὴ Δία τὸ οὐρον τῆς χολῆς: τούτο γὰρ ἑτολμησεῖ τις εἰπεῖν τῶν καθ' ἡμᾶς Ἐρασιστρατείων ἀποστὰς δηλονότι τῶν αἰσθήσεων, αἵς ἐπιστευσαν ἐπὶ τε τῆς χολῆς καὶ τοῦ αἷματος. εἴτε γὰρ ὅτι μᾶλλον ἡ χολή τοῦ αἷματος Ῥεῖ, διὰ τοῦτο λεπτοτέραν αὐτὴν ἡμῖν ἐστὶ νομιστέον, εἴθ' ὅτι δι' ὀθόνης ἢ ράκους ἢ τινος ἡμοῦ ῥᾶν διεξέρχεται καὶ ταύτης τὸ ὀρρώδες περίττωμα, κατὰ ταύτα τὰ γνωρίσματα παχυτέρα τῆς ὑδατώδους υγρότητος καὶ αὕτη γενησαί. πάλιν γὰρ οὐδ' ἐνταῦθα λόγοι οὐδεὶς ἐστίν, δἐ ἀποδείξει λεπτοτέραν τὴν χολήν τῶν ὀρρωδῶν περιττωμάτων.

Ἀλλ' ὅταν τις ἀναίσχυντῆς περιπλέκων τε καὶ μῆτω καταπεπτωκέναι συγχρωτών, || ὁμοίως ἔσται τοῖς ἱδιωτικῶς τῶν παλαιστῶν, οὗ καταβληθέντες ὑπὸ τῶν παλαιστρικῶν καὶ κατὰ τῆς γῆς ὑπτυοι κείμενοι τοσοῦτον δέουσι τὸ πτώμα γνωρίζειν, ὡστε καὶ κρατοῦσι τῶν αἰχένων αὐτούς τοὺς καταβαλόντας οὐκ ἑώντες ἀπαλλάττεσθαι, καὶ τούτω ὕπολαμβάνουσι.

1 This was the characteristically “anatomical” explanation of bile-secretion made by Erasistratus. cf. p. 170; note 2.
wider and those of the bile-ducts narrower, then it is clear that this watery and serous superfluity, too, will run out into the bile-ducts quicker than does the bile, exactly in proportion as it is thinner than the bile! How is it, then, that it does not run out? “Because,” it may be said, “urine is thicker than bile!”

This was what one of our Erasistrateans ventured to say, herein clearly disregarding the evidence of his senses, although he had trusted these in the case of the bile and blood. For, if it be that we are to look on bile as thinner than blood because it runs more, then, since the serous residue passes through fine linen or lint or a sieve more easily even than does bile, by these tokens bile must also be thicker than the watery fluid. For here, again, there is no argument which will demonstrate that bile is thinner than the serous superfluities.

But when a man shamelessly goes on using circumlocutions, and never acknowledges when he has had a fall, he is like the amateur wrestlers, who, when they have been overthrown by the experts and are lying on their backs on the ground, so far from recognizing their fall, actually seize their victorious adversaries by the necks and prevent them from getting away, thus supposing themselves to be the winners!

Why, then, says Galen, does not urine, rather than bile, enter the bile-ducts?

Urine, or, more exactly, blood-serum.
ΓΑΛΕΝ

III

Δήρως οὖν μακρὸς ἀπασα πόρων ὑπόθεσις εἰς φυσικὴν ἐνέργειαν. εἰ μὴ γὰρ δύναμις τις σύμφυτος ἐκάστῳ τῶν ὀργάνων ὑπὸ τῆς φύσεως εὑθὺς ἐξ ἀρχῆς δοθεῖ, διαρκείν οὖ δυνήσεται τὰ ζῶα, μὴ ὅτι τοσούτων ἄρθρων ἐτῶν ἀλλ' οὐδ' ἕμερῶν ὀλιγίστων· ἀνεπιτρόπευτα γὰρ εἰσάγαντες αὐτὰ καὶ τέχνης καὶ προοίμια ἔρημα μόναις ταῖς τῶν ύλῶν οἰκιζόμενα ῥοπαις, οὐδαμοὶ δυνάμεως οὐδεμᾶς τῆς μὲν ἔλκούσης τὸ προσήκον ἑαυτῆ, τῆς δ' ἀπωθούσης τὸ ἀλλότριον, τῆς δ' ἀλλοιούσης τε καὶ προσφυούσης τὸ θρέψαν, οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως οὐκ ἂν εἴηςεν καταγέλαστοι περὶ τε τῶν φυσικῶν ἐνεργείων διαλεγόμενοι καὶ πολὺ μᾶλλον ἔτι περὶ τῶν ψυχικῶν καὶ || συμπάσης γε τῆς ζωῆς.

Οὐδὲ γὰρ ζην οὖδὲ διαμένειν οὐδενί τῶν ζῴων οὖδ' εἰς ἐλάχιστον χρόνον ἔσται δυνατόν, εἰ τοσάττα κεκτημένον εὖ ἑαυτῷ μόρια καὶ οὕτω διαφέροντα μὴν' ἐλκτικὴ τῶν οἰκείων χρῆσται δυνάμει μὴν' ἀποκριτικὴ τῶν ἀλλοτρίων μητ' ἀλλοιωτικὴ τῶν θρεψάντων. καὶ μὴν εἰ ταύτας ἔχοιςεν, οὔδεν ἔτι πόρων μικρῶν ἢ μεγάλων ἢν ὑποθέσεως ἀναποδείκτων καμβανομένων εἰς οὕρον καὶ χολῆς διάκρισιν δεόμεθα καὶ τινῷς ἐπικαίρου θέσεως, ἐν δ' μόνῳ σωφρονεῖν ἑσίκειν ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος ἀπαντά καλῶς τεθναί τε καὶ διαπλασιαστικὴν εἰς τὸ ἑαυτόν.
III

Thus, every hypothesis of *channels*¹ as an explanation of natural functioning is perfect nonsense. For, if there were not an inborn faculty given by Nature to each one of the organs at the very beginning, then animals could not continue to live even for a few days, far less for the number of years which they actually do. For let us suppose they were under no guardianship, lacking in creative ingenuity² and forethought; let us suppose they were steered only by material forces,³ and not by any special faculties (the one attracting what is proper to it, another rejecting what is foreign, and yet another causing alteration and adhesion of the matter destined to nourish it); if we suppose this, I am sure it would be ridiculous for us to discuss natural, or, still more, psychical, activities—or, in fact, life as a whole.⁴

For there is not a single animal which could live or endure for the shortest time if, possessing within itself so many different parts, it did not employ faculties which were attractive of what is appropriate, eliminative of what is foreign, and alterative of what is destined for nutrition. On the other hand, if we have these faculties, we no longer need channels, little or big, resting on an unproven hypothesis, for explaining the secretion of urine and bile, and the conception of some favourable situation (in which point alone Erasistratus shows some common sense, since he does regard all the parts of the body as entiated physiological from physical processes (both are "natural"⁵) yet separates them definitely from the psychical. *cf.* p. 2, footnote. A psychical function or activity is, in Latin, *actio animalis* (from *anima* = *psyche*).
GALEN

θήναι τὰ μόρια τοῦ σώματος υπὸ τῆς φύσεως οἴόμενος.

‘Αλλ’ εἰ παρακολουθήσει τὰ εαυτοὶ φύσιν ὠνομάζοντι τεχνικῆν, εὐθὺς μὲν ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἀπαντὰ καλὸς διαπλάσασάν τε καὶ διαθεῖσαν τοῦ ξύλου τὰ μόρια, μετὰ δὲ τὴν τοιαύτην ἐνέργειαν, ὡς οὐδὲν ἔλειπεν, ἐτὶ προσαγαγοῦσαν εἰς φῶς αὐτὸ σὺν τις δυνάμεις, ὃν ἀνευ ξὴν οὐκ ἡδύματο, καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα κατὰ βραχὺ προσαυξῆσασαν ἄχρη τοῦ πρέπουτος μεγέθους, οὐκ οἶδα πῶς ὑπομένειν πόρων σμικρότησιν || ἢ μεγέθεσιν ἢ τισιν ἄλλαις οὐτω ληρώδεσιν ὑποθέσεσι φυσικὰς ἐνέργειας ἐπιτρέπειν. ἡ γὰρ διαπλάττουσα τὰ μόρια φύσις ἐκεῖνη καὶ κατὰ βραχὺ προσαυξοῦσα πάντως δῆτον δὲ ὅλων αὐτῶν ἐκτέταται καὶ γὰρ ὅλα δὲ ὅλων οὐκ ἔξωθεν μόνον αὐτὰ διαπλάττει τε καὶ τρέφει καὶ προσαυξεῖ. Πραξιτέλης μὲν γὰρ ἡ Φειδίας ἡ τις ἄλλος ἀγαλματοποιῶς ἔξωθεν μόνον ἐκόσμοις τὰς ὕλας, καθὰ καὶ ψαύειν αὐτῶν ἡδύναντο, τὸ βάθος δὲ ἀκόσμητον καὶ ἀργόν καὶ ἀτεχίνου καὶ ἀπρονότου ἀπέλιπον, ὡς ἀν μὴ δυνάμειν κατέλθειν εἰς αὐτὸ καὶ καταδύναι καὶ θυγεῖν ἀπάντων τῆς ὕλης τῶν μερῶν. ἡ φύσις δ’ οὐχ οὕτως, ἄλλὰ τὸ μὲν ὅστοι μέρος ἀπαν ὅστοιν ἀποτελεῖ, τὸ δὲ σαρκὸς σάρκα, τὸ δὲ πιμελῆς πιμελὴν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἐκαστον’ οὐδὲν γὰρ ἐστὶν ἀψαυστὸν αὐτὴ μέρος οὐδ’ ἀνεξήργαστον οὐδ’ ἀκόσμητον. ἄλλα τὸν μὲν κηρὸν ὁ Φειδίας οὐκ ἡδύματο ποιεῖν ἐλέφαντα καὶ χρυσόν, ἄλλ’ οὐδὲ τὸν χρυσὸν κηρόν’ ἐκαστον γὰρ αὐτῶν μένον, οἰον ἦν ἐξ ἀρχῆς, ἔξωθεν μόνον ἡμιφεισμένον εἰδός τι
having been well and truly placed and shaped by Nature).

But let us suppose he remained true to his own statement that Nature is "artistic"—this Nature which, at the beginning, well and truly shaped and disposed all the parts of the animal, and, after carrying out this function (for she left nothing undone), brought it forward to the light of day, endowed with certain faculties necessary for its very existence, and, thereafter, gradually increased it until it reached its due size. If he argued consistently on this principle, I fail to see how he can continue to refer natural functions to the smallness or largeness of canals, or to any other similarly absurd hypothesis. For this Nature which shapes and gradually adds to the parts is most certainly extended throughout their whole substance. Yes indeed, she shapes and nourishes and increases them through and through, not on the outside only. For Praxiteles and Phidias and all the other statuaries used merely to decorate their material on the outside, in so far as they were able to touch it; but its inner parts they left unembellished, unwrought, unaffected by art or forethought, since they were unable to penetrate therein and to reach and handle all portions of the material. It is not so, however, with Nature. Every part of a bone she makes bone, every part of the flesh she makes flesh, and so with fat and all the rest; there is no part which she has not touched, elaborated, and embellished. Phidias, on the other hand, could not turn wax into ivory and gold, nor yet gold into wax: for each of these remains as it was at the commencement, and becomes a perfect statue

1 The stage of organogenesis or diaplasis; cf. p. 25, note 4.
83 καὶ σχῆμα τεχνικόν, ἀγαλμα τέλειον || γέγονεν. ἢ 
φύσις δ’ οὐδεμιᾶς ἔτι φυλάττει τῶν ὕλῶν τὴν 
ἀρχαίαν ἰδέαν, αἶμα γὰρ ἂν ἦν οὗτως ἀπαντά 
τοῦ ζῷου τὰ μόρια, τὸ παρὰ τῆς κυνύσης ἐπιρ- 
ρέουν τῷ σπέρματι, δίκην κηροῦ τινος ὑλή μία καὶ 
μονοειδῆς ὑποβεβλημένη τῷ τεχνίτη. γίγνεται 
δ’ εξ αὐτῆς οὐδὲν τῶν τοῦ ζῷου μορίων οὔτ’ ἐρυθ- 
ρόν οὖτως οὐθ’ ὑγρόν. ὁστοὺν γὰρ καὶ ἀρτηρία 
καὶ φλέψ καὶ νεῦρον καὶ χόνδρος καὶ πιμελή καὶ 
ἀδὴν καὶ ὑμῆν καὶ μυελὸς ἀναιμά μὲν, εξ’ αἵματος 
δὲ γέγονεν.

Τίνος ἀλλοιώσαντος καὶ τίνος πήξαντος καὶ 
tίνος διαπλάσαντος ἐδεόμην ἂν μοι τὸν Ἐρασί- 
στρατον αὐτὸν ἀποκρίνασθαι. πάντως γὰρ ἂν 
eἰπεν ἢτοι τὴν φύσιν ἢ τὸ σπέρμα, ταὐτὸν μὲν 
λέγων καθ’ ἐκάτερον, διαφόροις δ’ ἐπινοοῖαις ἐρμη- 
νεύων: δ’ γὰρ ἦν πρότερον σπέρμα, τοῦθ’ ὅταν 
ἀρξηται φύειν τε καὶ διαπλάττει τὸ ζῷον, φύσις 
tος γίγνεται. καθάπερ γὰρ ὁ Φειδίας εἰχε μὲν τὰs 
δυνάμεις τῆς τέχνης καὶ πρὶν ψαύειν τῆς ὑλῆς, 
ἐνήργηε δ’ αὐταῖς περὶ τὴν ὑλὴν—ἀπασά γὰρ 
δύναμις ἀργεῖ ἀποροῦσα τῆς οἰκείας ὑλῆς—, οὔτω 
84 καὶ τὸ σπέρμα τὰς μὲν δυνάμεις οἰκοθεν ἐκεκτῆτο, 
tὰς δ’ ἐνεργείας οὐκ ἐκ τῆς ὑλῆς ἔλαβεν, ἀλλὰ 
περὶ τὴν ὑλὴν ἐπεδείξατο.

Καὶ μὴν εἰ πολλῷ μὲν ἐπικλύξοιτο τῷ αἴματι 
tὸ σπέρμα, διαφθεῖροιτ’ ἂν· εἰ δ’ ὅλως ἀποροίη

1 The spermatozoon now becomes an "organism" proper.
2 Galen attributed to the sperma or semen what we should
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. III

simply by being clothed externally in a form and artificial shape. But Nature does not preserve the original character of any kind of matter; if she did so, then all parts of the animal would be blood—that blood, namely, which flows to the semen from the impregnated female and which is, so to speak, like the statuary’s wax, a single uniform matter, subjected to the artificer. From this blood there arises no part of the animal which is as red and moist [as blood is], for bone, artery, vein, nerve, cartilage, fat, gland, membrane, and marrow are not blood, though they arise from it.

I would then ask Erasistratus himself to inform me what the altering, coagulating, and shaping agent is. He would doubtless say, “Either Nature or the semen,” meaning the same thing in both cases, but explaining it by different devices. For that which was previously semen, when it begins to procreate and to shape the animal, becomes, so to say, a special nature.¹ For in the same way that Phidias possessed the faculties of his art even before touching his material, and then activated these in connection with this material (for every faculty remains inoperative in the absence of its proper material), so it is with the semen: its faculties it possessed from the beginning;² while its activities it does not receive from its material, but it manifests them in connection therewith.

And, of course, if it were to be overwhelmed with a great quantity of blood, it would perish, while if it were to be entirely deprived of blood to the fertilized ovum: to him the maternal contribution is purely passive—mere food for the sperm. The epoch-making Ovum Theory was not developed till the seventeenth century. cf. p. 19, note 3.
GALEN

παντάπασιν ἄργοιν, οὐκ ἂν γένοιτο φύσις. ἤν' οὖν μήτε φθείρηται καὶ γίγνεται φύσις ἀντὶ σπέρματος, ὀλέγον ἐπιρρέειν ἀναγκαῖον αὐτῷ τοῦ αἴματος, μᾶλλον δ' οὐκ ὄλγον λέγειν χρή, ἀλλὰ σύμμετρον τῷ πλῆθει τοῦ σπέρματος. τίς οὖν ὁ μετρῶν αὐτὸ τοῦ ποσόν τῆς ἐπιρροῆς; τίς ὁ κολύμων ἱέναι πλέον; τίς ὁ προτρέπων, ἤν ἐνδεἐστερον μὴ ἤτ; τίνα ξητῆσομεν ἑνταῦθα τρίτον ἐπιστάτην τοῦ ξύλου τῆς γενέσεως, δι' χορηγήσει τῷ σπέρματι τὸ σύμμετρον αἴμα; τό ἂν εἶπεν ΄Ερασίστратος, εἰ ξύλον ταύτ' ἡρωτῆθη; τὸ σπέρμα αὐτὸ δηλονότι· τοῦτο γάρ ἔστιν ὁ τεχνίτης ὁ ἀναλογόν τῷ Φειδίᾳ, τὸ δ' ἄιμα τῇ κηρῷ προσέοικεν.

Ὅκουν πρέπει τὸν κηρὸν αὐτὸν ἐαυτῷ τὸ μέτρον ἐξευρίσκειν, ἀλλὰ τὸν Φειδίαν. ἐλέξει δὴ τοσοῦτον αἴματος ὁ τεχνίτης εἰς ἑαυτόν, ὅποσον ἐδίκη. ἀλλ' ἐνταῦθα χρὴ προσέχειν ἢδη τὸν νοῦν καὶ σκοπεῖν, μή πως λάθωμεν τῷ σπέρματι λογισμὸν τινα καὶ νοῦν χαρισάμενοι· οὕτω ήταν ὅτι οὗτε σπέρμα ποιῆσαιμεν οὔτε φύσιν ἄλλη ἢδη ξύλον αὐτό. καὶ μὴν εἰ φυλάξομεν ἀμφότερα, τὴν β' ὰλκὴν τοῦ συμμέτρου καὶ τὸ χωρίς λογισμοῦ, δύναμιν τινα, καθάπερ ἢ λίθος ἐλκτικὴν εἰχε τοῦ σιδήρου, καὶ τῷ σπέρματι φήσομεν ύπάρχειν αἴματος ἐπισταστικήν. ἡναγκάσθημεν οὖν πάλιν κανταῦθα, καθάπερ ἢδη πολλάκις ἐμπροσθεν, ἐλκτικὴν τινα δύναμιν ὑμολογῆσαι κατὰ τὸ σπέρμα.

1 i.e. we should be talking psychology, not biology; cf. stomach, p. 307, note 3.
2 Attraction now described not merely as qualitative but also as quantitative. cf. p. 85, note 3.
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. 111

it would remain inoperative and would not turn into a nature. Therefore, in order that it may not perish, but may become a nature in place of semen, there must be an afflux to it of a little blood—or, rather, one should not say a little, but a quantity commensurate with that of the semen. What is it then that measures the quantity of this afflux? What prevents more from coming? What ensures against a deficiency? What is this third overseer of animal generation that we are to look for, which will furnish the semen with a due amount of blood? What would Erasistratus have said if he had been alive, and had been asked this question? Obviously, the semen itself. This, in fact, is the artificer analogous with Phidias, whilst the blood corresponds to the statuary's wax.

Now, it is not for the wax to discover for itself how much of it is required; that is the business of Phidias. Accordingly the artificer will draw to itself as much blood as it needs. Here, however, we must pay attention and take care not unwittingly to credit the semen with reason and intelligence; if we were to do this, we would be making neither semen nor a nature, but an actual living animal.\footnote{He still tends either to biologize physics, or to physicize biology—whichever way we prefer to look at it. \textit{cf.} Book I., chap. xiv.} And if we retain these two principles—that of proportionate attraction\footnote{And if we retain these two principles—that of proportionate attraction, and that of the non-participation of intelligence—we shall ascribe to the semen a faculty for attracting blood similar to that possessed by the lodestone for iron.} and that of the non-participation of intelligence—we shall ascribe to the semen a faculty for attracting blood similar to that possessed by the lodestone for iron.\footnote{And if we retain these two principles—that of proportionate attraction, and that of the non-participation of intelligence—we shall ascribe to the semen a faculty for attracting blood similar to that possessed by the lodestone for iron.} Here, then, again, in the case of the semen, as in so many previous instances, we have been compelled to acknowledge some kind of attractive faculty.
ΓΑΛΕΝ

Τι δ' ἦν τὸ σπέρμα; ἡ ἀρχὴ τοῦ ξίφου δηλονότι ἡ δραστική· ἡ γὰρ υλικὴ τὸ καταμηνίνου ἔστιν. εἰτ' αὐτὴς τῆς ἀρχῆς πρῶτη ταύτη τῇ δυνάμει χρωμένης, ἵνα γεννηται τῶν ὑπ' αὐτῆς τι δεδημουργημένων, ἀμοιροῦν εἶναι τῆς οἰκείας δυνάμεως οὐκ ὑδεχέται. πῶς οὖν Ἐρασίστρατος αὐτὴν οὖν οδεῖν, εἰ δὴ πρῶτη μὲν αὐτὴ τοῦ σπέρματος ἐνέργη ἑαυτῷ σύμμετρον ἀμάτος ἐπιστάσθαι πρὸς ἑαυτό; σύμμετρον δ' ἂν εἴη τὸ λεπτὸν οὕτω καὶ ἀτμῶδες, ὥστε εὐθὺς εἰς πάν μόριον ἐλκόμενον τοῦ σπέρματος δροσειδῶς μηδαμοῦ τῆς || ἑαυτοῦ παρεμφαίωνεν ἰδέαν. οὖτω γὰρ αὐτοῦ καὶ κρατήσει ῥαδίως τὸ σπέρμα καὶ ταχεώς ἤλιομολοσεῖ καὶ τροφὴν ἑαυτῷ ποιήσεται κἀπεῖτ' ὡμαί δεύτερον ἐπισπάσται καὶ τρίτον, ὡς οὐκ εἶναι ἑαυτῷ καὶ πλήθος ἀξιόλογον ἐργάσασθαι τραφέντι. καὶ μὴν ἢδη καὶ ἡ ἀλλοιωτικὴ δύναμις ἐξεύρηται μηδ' αὐτῇ πρὸς Ἐρασίστρατον γεγραμμένη. τρίτη δ' ἂν ἡ διαπλαστική φανεῖ, καθ' ἢ πρῶτον μὲν οἶνον ἐπίπαγον τίνα λεπτὸν ὑμένα περιτίθεσιν ἑαυτῷ τὸ σπέρμα, τὸν ύφ' Ἰπποκράτους ἔπι τῆς ἐκταῖας γονῆς, ἢν ἐκπαιδεύειν ἐλεγεί τῆς μουσουργοῦ, τῶ τῶν ὁμοίων εἰκασθέντα χιτῶν, μετὰ δὲ τούτον ἢδη καὶ τὰλλ', ὅσα πρὸς ἐκείνου λέγεται διὰ τοῦ περὶ φύσις παιδίου συγγράμματος.

Ἀλλ' εἰ τῶν διαπλασθεῖστων ἐκαστον οὖτω μείνει σμικρόν, ως ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἐγενετο, τι ἂν εἴη πλέον; αὐξάνεσθαι τοῖνυν αὐτὰ χρῆ. πῶς οὖν

1 Aristotelian and Stoic duality of an active and a passive principle.
2 Note that early embryonic development is described as a process of nutrition. cf. p. 130, note 2.
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. III

And what is the semen? Clearly the active principle of the animal, the material principle being the menstrual blood. Next, seeing that the active principle employs this faculty primarily, therefore, in order that any one of the things fashioned by it may come into existence, it [the principle] must necessarily be possessed of its own faculty. How, then, was Erasistratus unaware of it, if the primary function of the semen be to draw to itself a due proportion of blood? Now, this fluid would be in due proportion if it were so thin and vaporous, that, as soon as it was drawn like dew into every part of the semen, it would everywhere cease to display its own particular character; for so the semen will easily dominate and quickly assimilate it—in fact, will use it as food. It will then, I imagine, draw to itself a second and a third quantum, and thus by feeding it acquires for itself considerable bulk and quantity. In fact, the alterative faculty has now been discovered as well, although about this also Erasistratus has not written a word. And, thirdly the shaping faculty will become evident, by virtue of which the semen firstly surrounds itself with a thin membrane like a kind of superficial condensation; this is what was described by Hippocrates in the sixth-day birth, which, according to his statement, fell from the singing-girl and resembled the pellicle of an egg. And following this all the other stages will occur, such as are described by him in his work "On the Child’s Nature."

But if each of the parts formed were to remain as small as when it first came into existence, of what use would that be? They have, then, to grow.

3 On the alterative and shaping faculties cf. p. 18, note 1.
αὐξηθήσεται; πάντη διατεινόμενα θ ἀμα καὶ
tρεφόμενα. καὶ μοι τῶν ἐμπροσθεν εἰρημένων
ἐπὶ τῆς κύστεως, ἢν οἱ παιδες ἐμφυσώστες ἔτρι-
87 βον, ἀναμνησθεὶς μαθήσῃ μᾶλλον || καὶ τῶν νῦν
ῥηθησομένων.

Ἐννόησον γὰρ ἰη τὴν καρδίαν οὐτω μὲν μικράν
εἶναι κατ’ ἀρχάς, ὡς κέγχρου μηδὲν διαφέρειν ἦ,
ei βούλει, κυαμοῦ, καὶ ξήτησον, ὅπως ἂν ἄλλως
αὐτὴ γένοιτο μεγάλη χωρὶς τοῦ πάντη διατεινο-
μένην τρέφοντας δι’ ὀλης έαντής, ὃς ὁλίγῳ πρόσ-
θεν ἔδεικνυσ τὸ σπέρμα τρεφόμενον. ἀλλ’ οὐδὲ
tοῦτ’ Ἐρασίστρατος οἴδεν ὅ την τέχνην τῆς
φύσεως ὕμνων, ἀλλ’ οὕτως αὐξάνεσθαι τὰ ζῶα
νομίζει καθάπερ τινα κρησέραν ἢ σειρὰν ἢ σάκκον
ἢ τάλαρον, ὃν ἐκάστῳ κατὰ τὸ πέρας ἐπιπλεκο-
μένων ὁμοίων ἐτέρων τοῖς ἐξ ἀρχής αὐτὰ συντι-
θείσων ἢ πρόσθεσις γίγνεται.

Ἀλλὰ τούτο γ’ οὐκ αὐξηθείς ἐστιν ἀλλὰ γένε-
σις, ὁ σοφώτατε γίγνεται γὰρ ὁ θύλακος ἔτι καὶ
ὁ σάκκος καὶ θοιμάτιον καὶ ἡ οἰκία καὶ τὸ πλοῖον
καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἐκαστὸν, ὅταν μηδέπω τὸ προσ-
ήκον εἰδος, οὐ χάριν ὑπὸ τοῦ τεχνίτου δημιουρ-
γείται, συμπεπληρωμένον ἡ. ποτ’ οὔτ’ αὐξάνεται;
ὅταν ἤδη τέλειος ὄν τὸ τάλαρον, ὡς ἔχειν πυθμένα
tε τινα καὶ στόμα καὶ οἷον γαστέρα καὶ τὰ
tούτων μεταξύ, μείζων ἀπασί τούτοις γέννηται.

καὶ πῶς || ἔσται τούτο; φήσει τις. πῶς δ’ ἄλλως
ἢ εἰ ζῶον ἔξαίφυς ἢ φυτὸν ὁ τάλαρος ἢμῖν
gένοιτο; μόνων γὰρ τῶν ζωτῶν ἡ αὐξηθείς. σῦ
δ’ ἵσωσι οἴει τὴν οἰκίαν οἰκοδομουμένην αὐξάνε-
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. III

Now, how will they grow? By becoming extended in all directions and at the same time receiving nourishment. And if you will recall what I previously said about the bladder which the children blew up and rubbed,¹ you will also understand my meaning better as expressed in what I am now about to say.

Imagine the heart to be, at the beginning, so small as to differ in no respect from a millet-seed, or, if you will, a bean; and consider how otherwise it is to become large than by being extended in all directions and acquiring nourishment throughout its whole substance, in the way that, as I showed a short while ago, the semen is nourished. But even this was unknown to Erasistratus—the man who sings the artistic skill of Nature! He imagines that animals grow like webs, ropes, sacks, or baskets, each of which has, woven on to its end or margin, other material similar to that of which it was originally composed.

But this, most sapient sir, is not growth, but genesis! For a bag, sack, garment, house, ship, or the like is said to be still coming into existence [undergoing genesis] so long as the appropriate form for the sake of which it is being constructed by the artificer is still incomplete. Then, when does it grow? Only when the basket, being complete, with a bottom, a mouth, and a belly, as it were, as well as the intermediate parts, now becomes larger in all these respects. "And how can this happen?" someone will ask. Only by our basket suddenly becoming an animal or a plant; for growth belongs to living things alone. Possibly you imagine that a house grows when it is being built, or a basket when being

¹ pp. 27–29.
GALEN

σθαί καὶ τὸν τάλαρον πλεκόμενον καὶ θοιμάτων υφαινόμενον. ἀλλ' οὖν ὃδ' ἔχει· τοῦ μὲν γὰρ ἢ δὴ συμπεπληρωμένου κατὰ τὸ εἴδος ἡ αὐξησις, τοῦ δ' ἐτι γιγνομένου ἡ εἰς τὸ εἴδος ὅδος οὐκ αὐξησις ἀλλὰ γένεσις ονομάζεται· αὐξάνεται μὲν γὰρ τὸ ὄν, γίγνεται δὲ τὸ οὖκ ὄν.

IV

Καὶ ταῦτ' Ἐρασίστρατος οὖν οίδεν, ὅν οὐδὲν λανθάνει, εἴπερ ὅλως ἀληθεύουσιν οἱ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ φάσκοντες ὁμιληκέναι τοῖς ἐκ τοῦ περιπάτου φιλοσόφους αὐτόν. ἀλλὰ μὲν οὖν τὸν τὴν φύσιν ὑμνεῖν ώς τεχνικὴν καὶ γωνίαν τὰ τοῦ περιπάτου δόγματα, τῶν δ' ἄλλων οὐδὲν οὐδ' ἐγγύς. εἰ γὰρ τις ὁμιλήσει τοῖς Ἀριστοτέλους καὶ Θεοφράστου γράμματι, τῆς Ἰπποκράτους ἀν αὐτὰ δόξει φυσιολογίας ὑπομνήματα συγκείσθαι, τὸ θερμὸν καὶ τὸ ψυχρὸν τῷ καὶ τὸ ἔρημον καὶ τὸ ὕγρον εἰς ἄλληλα δρόντα καὶ πᾶσχοντα καὶ τούτων αὐτῶν δραστικότατον μὲν τὸ θερμὸν, δεύτερον δὲ τῇ δυνάμει τὸ ψυχρὸν Ἰπποκράτους ταῦτα σύμπαντα πρῶτον, δεύτερον δ' Ἀριστοτέλους εἰπόντος. τρέφοσθαι δὲ δ' όλων αὐτῶν τὰ τρεφόμενα καὶ κερανυσθαι δ' όλων τὰ κερανυμένα καὶ ἀλλοιοῦσθαι δ' όλων τὰ ἀλλοιούμενα, καὶ ταῦθ' Ἰπποκράτεια τ' ἀμα καὶ Ἀριστοτέλεια. καὶ τὴν πέψιν ἀλλοιωσιν τιν'


138
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. III.—IV

plaited, or a garment when being woven? It is not so, however. Growth belongs to that which has already been completed in respect to its form, whereas the process by which that which is still becoming attains its form is termed not growth but genesis. That which is, grows, while that which is not, becomes.

IV

This also was unknown to Erasistratus, whom nothing escaped, if his followers speak in any way truly in maintaining that he was familiar with the Peripatetic philosophers. Now, in so far as he acclaims Nature as being an artist in construction, even I recognize the Peripatetic teachings, but in other respects he does not come near them. For if anyone will make himself acquainted with the writings of Aristotle and Theophrastus, these will appear to him to consist of commentaries on the Nature-lore [physiology]¹ of Hippocrates—according to which the principles of heat, cold, dryness and moisture act upon and are acted upon by one another, the hot principle being the most active, and the cold coming next to it in power; all this was stated in the first place by Hippocrates and secondly by Aristotle.² Further, it is at once the Hippocratic and the Aristotelian teaching that the parts which are being nourished receive that nourishment throughout their whole substance, and that, similarly, processes of mingling and alteration involve the entire substance.³ Moreover, that digestion is a species of

³ For definitions of alteration and mingling (crasis, "temperament") cf. Book I., chaps. ii. and iii.
ΓΑΛΕΝ

υπάρχειν καὶ μεταβολὴν τοῦ τρέφοντος εἰς τὴν οἰκείαν τοῦ τρεφομένου ποιότητα, τὴν δ' ἐξαιμάτωσιν ἀλλοίωσιν εἶναι καὶ τὴν θρέψιν ὀσαύτως καὶ τὴν αὐξησιν ἐκ τῆς πάντη διατάσεως καὶ θρέψεως γίγνεσθαι, τὴν δ' ἀλλοίωσιν ὑπὸ τοῦ θερμοῦ μάλιστα συντελεῖσθαι καὶ διὰ τοῦτο καὶ τὴν πέψιν καὶ τὴν θρέψιν καὶ τὴν τῶν χυμῶν ἀπάντων γένεσιν, ἦδη δὲ καὶ τοῖς περιττόμασι τὰς ποιότητας ὑπὸ τῆς ἐμφύτου θερμασίας ἐγκυγνεσθαί, ταῦτα σύμπαντα καὶ πρὸς τούτοις ἐπετέλλα τὰ τε τῶν προειρημένων δυνάμεων καὶ τὰ || τῶν νοσημάτων τῆς γενέσεως καὶ τὰ τῶν ιαμάτων τῆς εὐρέσεως Ἰπποκράτης μὲν πρῶτος ἀπάντων ὄν ἵσμεν ὀρθῶς εἶπεν, Ἀριστοτέλης δὲ δεύτερος ὀρθῶς ἔξηγησατο. καὶ μήν εἰ ταῦτα σύμπαντα τοῖς ἐκ τοῦ περιπάτου δοκεῖ, καθάπερ οὖν δοκεῖ, μηδὲν δ' αὐτῶν ἀρέσκει τῷ Ἑρασιστράτῳ, τί ποτε βούλεται τοῖς Ἑρασιστράτειοις ὑπὸ τοὺς φιλοσόφους ἐκείνους τοῦ τῆς αἱρέσεως αὐτῶν ἡγεμόνος ὀμιλία; θεαμάζομαι μὲν γὰρ αὐτὸν ὡς θεόν καὶ πάντως ἀληθεῖν νομίζομαι. εἰ δ' οὕτως ἔχει ταῦτα, πάμπολυ δὴ τῆς ἀληθείας ἐσφάλθαι χρὴ νομίζειν τοὺς ἐκ τοῦ περιπάτου φιλοσόφους, οἷς μηδὲν ὁ Ἑρασιστράτου υπελάμβανεν ἀρέσκει. καὶ μὴν ὡσπερ τῶν εὐγένειαν αὐτῷ τῆς φυσιολογίας τὴν πρὸς τοὺς ἀνδρὰς ἐκείνους συνουσίαν ἐκπορίζουσιν.

Πάλιν οὖν ἀναστρέψωμεν τῶν λόγων ἐτέρως ἢ ὡς ὅλως πρόσθεν ἐτύχουμεν εἰπόντες. εἰπέρ γὰρ οὐ ἐκ τοῦ περιπάτου καλῶς ἐφυσιολογήσαν, οὐδὲν ἄν εἰς ἀγρυδέστερον Ἑρασιστράτου καὶ δίδωμι τοῖς Ἑρασιστράτειοις αὐτοῖς τὴν ἀφεσίν.
alteredation—a transmutation of the nutriment into the proper quality of the thing receiving it; that blood-production also is an alteration, and nutrition as well; that growth results from extension in all directions, combined with nutrition; that alteration is effected mainly by the warm principle, and that therefore digestion, nutrition, and the generation of the various humours, as well as the qualities of the surplus substances, result from the innate heat;¹ all these and many other points besides in regard to the aforesaid faculties, the origin of diseases, and the discovery of remedies, were correctly stated first by Hippocrates of all writers whom we know, and were in the second place correctly expounded by Aristotle. Now, if all these views meet with the approval of the Peripatetics, as they undoubtedly do, and if none of them satisfy Erasistratus, what can the Erasistrateans possibly mean by claiming that their leader was associated with these philosophers? The fact is, they revere him as a god, and think that everything he says is true. If this be so, then we must suppose the Peripatetics to have strayed very far from truth, since they approve of none of the ideas of Erasistratus. And, indeed, the disciples of the latter produce his connection with the Peripatetics in order to furnish his Nature-lore with a respectable pedigree.

Now, let us reverse our argument and put it in a different way from that which we have just employed. For if the Peripatetics were correct in their teaching about Nature, there could be nothing more absurd than the contentions of Erasistratus. And, I will leave it to the Erasistrateans themselves to decide;

¹ i.e. are associated with oxidation? cf. p. 41, note 3.
ΓΑΛΕΝ

91 ἢ γὰρ τὸν πρῶτον λόγον ἢ τούτον || προσήσονται. λέγει δ’ ὁ μὲν πρῶτος οὐδὲν ὀρθῶς ἐγνωκέναι περὶ φύσεως τοὺς περιπατητικούς, ὃ δὲ δεύτερος 'Ερασίστρατος. ἐμὸν μὲν οὖν ὑπομνησάι τῶν δογμάτων τῇ μάχῃ, ἐκεῖνων δ’ ἡ αἱρέσις.

‘Αλλ’ οὖκ ἂν ἀποσταίην τοῦ θαυμάζεων 'Ερασίστρατον οὐκοῦν σωπάτωσαν περὶ τῶν ἐκ τοῦ περιπατόν φιλοσόφων. παμπόλλων γὰρ ὄντων δογμάτων φυσικῶν περὶ τε γένεσιν καὶ φθοράν τῶν ξύσων καὶ ἰγκειῶν καὶ νόσους καὶ τὰς θεραπείας αὐτῶν ἐν μόνω εὐρεθήσεται ταύτων 'Ερασίστρατῳ κάκεινος τὸς ἀνδράσι, τὸ τινος ἑνεκα πάντα ποιεῖν τὴν φύσιν καὶ μάθην μηδέν.

‘Αλλ’ καὶ αὐτὸ τοῦτο μέχρι λόγον κοινόν, ἔργῳ δὲ μυριάκις 'Ερασίστρατος αὐτὸ διαφθείρει· μάτην μὲν γὰρ ὁ σπλήν ἐγένετο, μάτην δὲ τὸ ἐπίπλοου, μάτην δ’ αἰ εἰς τοὺς νεφροὺς ἀρτηρίας καταφυόμεναι, σχεδὸν ἀπασών τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς μεγάλης ἀρτηρίας ἀποβλαστανουσῶν οὐσαι μέγισται, μάτην δ’ ἀλλὰ μυρία κατὰ γε τὸν 'Ερασίστρατειον λόγον· ἀπερ εἰ μὲν οὐδ’ ὀλὼς γεγνώσκει, βραχεὶ μαγείρου σοφῶτερός ἐστιν ἐν ταῖς ἀνατομαίς, εἰ δ’ εἰδὼς οὐ λέγει τῇν χρείαν αὐτῶν, οἶται || δηλούντι παραπλησίας τῷ σπληνι μάτην αὐτὰ γεγονέναι. καίτοι τι τάυτ’ ἐπεξ- ἔρχομαι τῆς περὶ χρείας μορίων πραγματείας ὃντα μελλούσης ἡμῖν ἵδια περαίνεσθαι;

1 “Useless” organs; cf. p. 56, note 2. For fallacy of Erasistratus’s view on the spleen v. p. 205.
142
they must either advance the one proposition or the other. According to the former one the Peripatetics had no accurate acquaintance with Nature, and according to the second, Erasistratus. It is my task, then, to point out the opposition between the two doctrines, and theirs to make the choice. . . .

But they certainly will not abandon their reverence for Erasistratus. Very well, then; let them stop talking about the Peripatetic philosophers. For among the numerous physiological teachings regarding the genesis and destruction of animals, their health, their diseases, and the methods of treating these, there will be found one only which is common to Erasistratus and the Peripatetics—namely, the view that Nature does everything for some purpose, and nothing in vain.

But even as regards this doctrine their agreement is only verbal; in practice Erasistratus makes havoc of it a thousand times over. For, according to him, the spleen was made for no purpose, as also the omentum; similarly, too, the arteries which are inserted into kidneys—although these are practically the largest of all those that spring from the great artery [aorta]! And to judge by the Erasistratean argument, there must be countless other useless structures; for, if he knows nothing at all about these structures, he has little more anatomical knowledge than a butcher, while, if he is acquainted with them and yet does not state their use, he clearly imagines that they were made for no purpose, like the spleen. Why, however, should I discuss these structures fully, belonging as they do to the treatise "On the Use of Parts," which I am personally about to complete?
GALEN

Πάλιν οὖν ἀναλάβωμεν τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον εἰπόντες τέ τι βραχὺ πρὸς τοὺς Ἐρασίστρατείους ἐτι τῶν ἐφεξῆς ἐχώμεθα. δοκούσι γάρ μοι μηδὲν ἀνεγγικέναι τῶν Ἀριστοτέλους οὕτων συγγραμμάτων, ἀλλ' ἄλλων ἀκούοντες, ὡς δεινὸς ἦν περὶ φύσιν ὁ ἀνθρώπος καὶ ὡς οἱ ἀπὸ τῆς στοάς κατ᾽ ἕχων τῆς ἐκείνου φυσιολογίας βαδίζουσιν, εἰθ᾽ ευρόντες ἐν τι τῶν περιφερομένων δογμάτων κοινῶν αὐτῷ πρὸς Ἐρασίστρατον ἀναπλάσαι τινὰ συνουσίαν αὐτοῦ πρὸς ἐκείνους τοὺς ἄνδρας. ἀλλ' ὁτι μὲν τῆς Ἀριστοτέλους φυσιολογίας οὐδὲν Ἐρασίστράτῳ μέτεστιν, ὁ κατάλογος τῶν προερχόμενων ἐνδείκνυται δογμάτων, ἃ πρῶτον μὲν Ἰπποκράτους ἦμι, δευτέρου δ' Ἀριστοτέλους, τρίτων δὲ τῶν Στωϊκῶν, ἔνος μόνου μετατιθεμένου τοῦ τάς ποιότητας εἶναι σῶματα.

Τάχι δ' ἂν τῆς λογικῆς ἐνεκα θεωρίας ὁμιλήκεναι φαίνει τῶν Ἐρασίστρατον τοῖς ἐκ τοῦ περιπάτου φιλοσόφους, οὐκ εἰδότες, ὡς ἐκεῖνοι μὲν ψεύδεις καὶ ἀπεράντους οὐκ ἐγραψαν λόγους, τὰ δ' Ἐρασίστράτεια βιβλία παμπόλλους ἔχει τοὺς τοιούτους.

Τάχι δ' ἂν οὖν ἡδη τῆς θαυμάξου καὶ διαπορείη, τί παθῶν ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος εἰς τοσοῦτον τῶν Ἰπποκράτους δογμάτων ἀπετράπετο καὶ διὰ τί τῶν ἐν ἡπατί πόρων τῶν χοληδόχων, ἄλος γὰρ ἡδη νεφρῶν, ἀφελόμενος τῆς ἐλκτικῆς δύναμιν ἐπίκαιρον αἰτιᾶται θέσιν καὶ στομάτων

1 The Stoics. 2 The Peripatetics (Aristotelians). 3 Aristotle regarded the qualitative differences apprehended by our senses (the cold, the warm, the moist, and the dry) as fundamental, while the Stoics held the four corporeal elements

144
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. iv

Let us, then, sum up again this same argument, and, having said a few words more in answer to the Erasistrateans, proceed to our next topic. The fact is, these people seem to me to have read none of Aristotle’s writings, but to have heard from others how great an authority he was on “Nature,” and that those of the Porch follow in the steps of his Nature-lore; apparently they then discovered a single one of the current ideas which is common to Aristotle and Erasistratus, and made up some story of a connection between Erasistratus and these people. That Erasistratus, however, has no share in the Nature-lore of Aristotle is shown by an enumeration of the aforesaid doctrines, which emanated first from Hippocrates, secondly from Aristotle, thirdly from the Stoics (with a single modification, namely, that for them the qualities are bodies).

Perhaps, however, they will maintain that it was in the matter of logic that Erasistratus associated himself with the Peripatetic philosophers? Here they show ignorance of the fact that these philosophers never brought forward false or inconclusive arguments, while the Erasistratean books are full of them.

So perhaps somebody may already be asking, in some surprise, what possessed Erasistratus that he turned so completely from the doctrines of Hippocrates, and why it is that he takes away the attractive faculty from the biliary passages in the liver—for we have sufficiently discussed the kidneys—alleging [as the cause of bile-secretion] a favourable situation, the narrowness of vessels, and a (earth, air, fire, and water) to be still more fundamental. cf. p. 8, note 3. ⁴ Lit. bile-receiving (choledochous).
Galen

στενότητα καὶ χώραν τινὰ κοινήν, εἰς ἂν παράγουσι μὲν αἱ ἀπὸ τῶν πυλῶν τὸ ἀκάθαρτον αἷμα, μεταλαμβάνουσι δὲ πρότεροι μὲν οἱ πόροι τῆς χολῆς, δεύτεραι δὲ αἱ ἀπὸ τῆς κοίλης φλεβῶς τὸ καθαρὸν αἷμα. πρὸς γὰρ τῷ μηδὲν ἀν βλαβήναι τὴν ὅλην εἰπὼν ἄλλων μυρίων ἐμελλεν ἀμφισβητούμενων ἀπαλλάξεσθαι λόγων.

V

'Ως νῦν ὡς πόλεμος οὐ σμικρός ἐστι τοῖς Ἑρασιστρατείοις οὐ πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους μόνον ἄλλα καὶ πρὸς ἄλληλους, οὐκ ἔχουσιν, ὅπως ἐξηγήσωνται τὴν ἐκ τοῦ πρώτου τῶν καθόλου λόγων λέξιν, ἐν ἡ φησιν. "Εἰς τὸ τῇ αὐτῷ δ' ἀνεστομωμένων ἑτέρων δύο ἀγγείων τῶν τ' ἐπὶ τὴν χοληδόχου τεινόντων καὶ τῶν ἐπὶ τὴν κοίλην φλέβα συμβαίνει τῆς ἀναφερομένης ἐκ τῆς κοιλίας τροφῆς τὰ ἐναρμόζοντα ἐκατέρως τῶν στομάτων εἰς ἑκάτερα τῶν ἀγγείων μεταλαμβάνεσθαι καὶ τὰ μέν ἐπὶ τὴν χοληδόχου φέρεσθαι, τὰ δ' ἐπὶ τὴν κοίλην φλέβα περαιούσθαι." τὸ γὰρ "εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ ἀνεστομωμένων," δ' κατ' ἀρχὰς τῆς λέξεως γέγραπται, τί ποτε χρῆ νοῆσαι, χαλεπὸν εἰπεῖν. ἦτοι γὰρ οὕτως εἰς ταῦταν, ὅστε τῷ τῆς ἐν τοῖς σιμοῖς φλεβῶς πέρατι συνάπτειν δύο ἐτερα πέρατα, τὸ τ' ἐν τοῖς

1 Jecoris portae, the transverse fissure, by which the portal vein enters the liver.

146
common space into which the veins from the gateway [of the liver]¹ conduct the unpurified blood, and from which, in the first place, the [biliary] passages take over the bile, and secondly, the [branches] of the vena cava take over the purified blood. For it would not only have done him no harm to have mentioned the idea of attraction, but he would thereby have been able to get rid of countless other disputed questions.

V

At the actual moment, however, the Erasistrateans are engaged in a considerable battle, not only with others but also amongst themselves, and so they cannot explain the passage from the first book of the “General Principles,” in which Erasistratus says, “Since there are two kinds of vessels opening² at the same place, the one kind extending to the gall-bladder and the other to the vena cava, the result is that, of the nutriment carried up from the alimentary canal, that part which fits both kinds of stomata is received into both kinds of vessels, some being carried into the gall-bladder, and the rest passing over into the vena cava.” For it is difficult to say what we are to understand by the words “opening at the same place” which are written at the beginning of this passage. Either they mean there is a junction³ between the termination of the vein which is on the concave surface of the liver⁴ and two other vascular terminations (that of the vessel on the convex surface of the liver⁵

¹ Lit. “anastomosing.”
² More literally, “synapse.”
³ The portal vein.
⁴ The hepatic vein or veins.
κυρτοῖς καὶ τὸ τοῦ χοληδόχου πόρου, ἢ, εἰ μὴ
οὕτω, χώραν τινὰ κοινὴν ἐπινοῆσαι χρῆ τῶν
τριῶν ἀγγείων οἷον δεξαμενήν τινα, πληρουμένην
μὲν ὑπὸ τῆς κάτω φλεβὸς, ἐκκενουμένην δὲ εἰς τὸ
toὺς χοληδόχους πόρους καὶ τὰς τῆς κοίλης
ἀποσχίδας καθ᾽ ἐκατέραν δὲ τῶν ἔξηγήσεων
ἀτοπα πολλά, περὶ ὧν εἰ πάντων λέγοιμι, λάθοιμι
ἀν ἐμαυτὸν ἔξηγήσεις Ἑρασιστράτου γράφων,
οὐχ, ὅπερ ἐξ ἀρχῆς προθέμην, περαιών.
κοινὸν δὲ ἀμφοτέραις ταῖς ἔξηγήσεσιν ἀτοποῦν τὸ μὴ
καθαίρεσθαι πάν τὸ αἷμα. χρῆ γὰρ ὡς εἰς
ἡθμόν τινα τὸ χοληδόχου ἀγγείον ἐμπίπτειν
ἀυτό, οὐ παρέρχεσθαι καὶ παραρρεῖν ὁκέως εἰς
τὸ μεῖζον στόμα τῇ ῥύμῃ τῆς ἀνάδοσεως φερό-
μενον.

Ἀρ’ οὖν ἐν τούτοις μόνον ἀπορίας ἀφύκτοις ὁ
Ἑρασιστράτου λόγος ἐνέχεται μὴ βουληθέντος
χρῆσασθαι ταῖς ἐλκτικαῖς δυνάμεσιν εἰς μηδὲν, ἢ
σφοδρότατα μὲν ἐν τούτοις καὶ σαφῶς οὕτως, ὡς
ἀν μηδὲ παιδα λαθεῖν;

VI

Εἰ δ’ ἐπισκοποῖτό τις ἐπιμελῶς, οὐδ’ ἐν περὶ
θρέψεως αὐτοῦ λόγος, διὰ ἐν τῷ δευτέρῳ τῶν
καθόλου λόγων διεξέρχεται, ταῦτα αὐτὰς ἀπορίας
ἐκφεύγει. τῇ γὰρ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθία
συγχωρηθέντος ἕνος λήμματος, ὡς πρόσθεν
ἐδείκνυμεν, ἐπέραπε τὶ περὶ φλεβῶν μόνων καὶ
tοῦ κατ’ αὐτὰς αἵματος. ἐκρέοντος γὰρ τινός

1 The portal vein. 2 cf. p. 120, note 1.

148
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. v.–vi

and that of the bile-duct), or, if not, then we must suppose that there is, as it were, a common space for all three vessels, which becomes filled from the lower vein,¹ and empties itself both into the bile-duct and into the branches of the vena cava. Now, there are many difficulties in both of these explanations, but if I were to state them all, I should find myself inadvertently writing an exposition of the teaching of Erasistratus, instead of carrying out my original undertaking. There is, however, one difficulty common to both these explanations, namely, that the whole of the blood does not become purified. For it ought to fall into the bile-duct as into a kind of sieve, instead of going (running, in fact, rapidly) past it, into the larger stoma, by virtue of the impulse of anadosis.

Are these, then, the only inevitable difficulties in which the argument of Erasistratus becomes involved through his disinclination to make any use of the attractive faculty, or is it that the difficulty is greatest here, and also so obvious that even a child could not avoid seeing it?

VI

And if one looks carefully into the matter one will find that even Erasistratus’s reasoning on the subject of nutrition, which he takes up in the second book of his “General Principles,” fails to escape this same difficulty. For, having conceded one premise to the principle that matter tends to fill a vacuum, as we previously showed, he was only able to draw a conclusion in the case of the veins and their contained blood.² That is to say, when
GALEN

κατὰ τὰ στόματι αὐτῶν καὶ διαφορομένου καὶ μὴ ἀθρόως τόπου κενοῦ δυναμένου γενέσθαι μὴ τῶν φλεβῶν συμπεσεῖν, τοῦτο γὰρ ἢν τὸ παραλειπόμενον, ἀναγκαῖον ἢν ἔπεσθαι τὸ σύνεχεῖς ἀναπληροῦν τοῦ κενοῦ μένου τῆς βάσιν. αἱ μὲν δὴ φλέβες ἡμῖν οὖτω θρέψονται τοῦ περιεχόμενον καὶ αὐτὰς αἰματος ἀπολαύουσαι τὰ δὲ νεῦρα πῶς; οὐ γὰρ δὴ κἂν τούτως ἐστὶν αἷμα. πρό- χειρον μὲν γὰρ ἢν εἰπεῖν, ἐλκοντα παρὰ τῶν φλεβῶν· ἀλλ’ οὐ βούλεται· τὶ ποτ’ οὖν καν- ταῦθα ἐπίτευχναι; φλέβας ἔχειν ἐν ἑαυτῷ καὶ ἀρτηρίας τὸ νεῦρον ὥσπερ τινὰ σειράν ἐκ τριῶν ἰμάντων διαφέροντων τῇ φύσει πεπλεγ- μένην. φήθη γὰρ ἐκ ταύτης τῆς ὑποθέσεως ἐκφεύξεσθαι τῷ λόγῳ τῆς ὀλκῆς· οὐ γὰρ ἀν ἐτὶ δείησθαι τὸ νεῦρον ἐν ἑαυτῷ περιέχον αἷματος ἀγγείον ἐπιρρήτου τινὸς ἐξωθέν ἐκ τῆς παρακειμένης φλεβῶς τῆς ἀληθινῆς αἷματος ἑτέρου, ἀλλ’ ἰκανὸν αὐτῷ πρὸς τὴν θρέψιν ἔσεσθαι τὸ κατεψυχομένου ἀγγείου ἐκεῖνο τὸ λόγῳ θεωρητῶν.

Ἀλλὰ κανταῦθα πάλιν αὐτῶν ὀμοία τις ἀπορία διεδέξατο. τούτι γὰρ τὸ σμικρὸν ἄγγειον ἐαυτὸ μὲν θρέψει, τὸ παρακειμένου μέντοι νεῦρον ἐκεῖνο τὸ ἀπλοῦν ἢ τὴν ἀρτηρίαν οὐ χάρον τί ἐστι τρέψεως ἄνευ τοῦ σύμφυτον των υπάρχειν αὐτοῖς ὀλκῆς τῆς τροφῆς. τῇ μὲν γὰρ πρὸς τὸ κενοῦ- μενον ἀκολουθία πῶς ἂν ἔτι δύνατο τὴν τροφῆν ἐπιστάσθαι τὸ ἀπλοῦν νεῦρον, ὥσπερ αἱ φλέβες

1 cf. p. 272, note 1.
2 i.e. one might assume an attraction.
blood is running away through the stomata of the veins, and is being dispersed, then, since an absolutely empty space cannot result, and the veins cannot collapse (for this was what he overlooked), it was therefore shown to be necessary that the adjoining quantum of fluid should flow in and fill the place of the fluid evacuated. It is in this way that we may suppose the veins to be nourished; they get the benefit of the blood which they contain. But how about the nerves?¹ For they do not also contain blood. One might obviously say that they draw their supply from the veins.² But Erasistratus will not have it so. What further contrivance, then, does he suppose? He says that a nerve has within itself veins and arteries, like a rope woven by Nature out of three different strands. By means of this hypothesis he imagined that his theory would escape from the idea of attraction. For if the nerve contain within itself a blood-vessel it will no longer need the adventitious flow of other blood from the real vein lying adjacent; this fictitious vessel, perceptible only in theory,³ will suffice it for nourishment.

But this, again, is succeeded by another similar difficulty. For this small vessel will nourish itself, but it will not be able to nourish this adjacent simple nerve or artery, unless these possess some innate proclivity for attracting nutriment. For how could the nerve, being simple, attract its nourishment, as do the composite veins, by virtue of the tendency

³ i.e. visible to the mind’s eye as distinguished from the bodily eye. cf. p. 21, note 4. Theoretum without qualification means merely visible, not theoretic. cf. p. 205, note 1.
According to the Pneumatist school, certain of whose ideas were accepted by Erasistratus, the air, breath, pneuma, or spirit was brought by inspiration into the left side of the heart, where it was converted into natural, vital, and psychic pneuma; the latter then went to the brain, whence it was distributed through the nervous system; practically
of a vacuum to become refilled? For, although according to Erasistratus, it contains within itself a cavity of sorts, this is not occupied with blood, but with *psychic pneuma*,¹ and we are required to imagine the nutriment introduced, not into this cavity, but into the vessel containing it, whether it needs merely to be nourished, or to grow as well. How, then, are we to imagine it introduced? For this simple vessel [*i.e. nerve*] is so small—as are also the other two—that if you prick it at any part with the finest needle you will tear the whole three of them at once. Thus there could never be in it a perceptible space entirely empty. And an emptied space which merely existed in theory could not compel the adjacent fluid to come and fill it.

At this point, again, I should like Erasistratus himself to answer regarding this small elementary nerve, whether it is actually one and definitely continuous, or whether it consists of many small bodies, such as those assumed by Epicurus, Leucippus, and Democritus.² For I see that the Erasistrateans are at variance on this subject. Some of them consider it one and continuous, for otherwise, as they say, he would not have called it *simple*; and some venture to resolve it into yet other elementary bodies. But if it be one and continuous, then what is evacuated from it in the so-called *insensible transpiration* of the

---

¹ *Psychic pneuma* is in Latin *spiritus animalis* (*anima = psyche*); cf. p. 126, note 4. Introduction, p. xxxiv.

² Observe that Erasistratus’s "simple nerve" may be almost looked on as an anticipation of the *cell*. The question Galen now asks is whether this vessel is a "unit mass of living matter," or merely an agglomeration of *atoms* subject to mechanical law. *cf.* Galen’s "fibres," p. 329.
GALEN

οὐδεμίαν ἐν ἑαυτῷ καταλείψει χώραν κενήν. οὐτω γὰρ οὐχ ἐν ἄλλα πολλὰ γενήσεται, διειργόμενα δὴ τοὺς ταῖς κεναῖς χώραις. οἱ δὲ ἐκ πολλῶν σύγκειται, τῇ κηπαίᾳ κατὰ τὴν παροιμίαν πρὸς Ἀσκληπιάδην ἀπεχωρήσαμεν ἀναρμά τινα στοιχεία τυθέμενοι. πάλιν οὐν ἀτεχνὸς ἡμιν ἡ φύσις λεγέσθω τοῖς γὰρ τοιούτοις στοιχείοις ἔξ ἀνάγκης τοῦθ’ ἐπεται.

Διὸ δὴ μοι καὶ δοκοῦσιν ἁμαθῶς πάνυ τὴν εἰς τὰ τοιαύτα στοιχεία τῶν ἀπλῶν ἀγγείων εἰσάγειν διάλυσιν ἐνιοῦ τῶν Ἐρασίστρατείων. ἐμοὶ γοῦν οὐδὲν διαφέρει. καθ’ ἐκατέρους γὰρ ἄτοπος ὁ τῆς θρέψεως ἐσται λόγος, ἐκείνοις τοῖς ἀπλοῖς ἀγγείοις τοῖς σμικροῖς τοῖς συντιθεῖσι τὰ μεγάλα  ||

te καὶ αἰσθητὰ νεῦρα κατὰ μὲν τοὺς συνεχῆ φυλάττονται αὐτὰ μὴ δυναμένης γενέσθαι τῆς πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίας, ὅτι μηδὲν ἐν τῷ συνεχεί γίγνεται κενόν, κἂν ἄπορρέῃ τι συνέρχεται γὰρ πρὸς ἀλληλα τὰ καταλειπόμενα μόρια, καθάπερ ἐπὶ τοῦ ὑδάτος ὀρᾶται, καὶ πάλιν ἐν γίγνεται πάντα τὴν χώραν τοῦ διαφορηθέντος αὐτὰ καταλαμβάνοντα. κατὰ δὲ τοὺς ἐτέρους, ὅτι τῶν στοιχείων ἐκείνων οὐδὲν δεῖται τῆς πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολούθιας. ἐπὶ γὰρ τῶν αἰσθητῶν μόνων, οὐκ ἐπὶ τῶν λόγω θεωρητῶν ἔχει δύναμιν, ὥς αὐτὸς ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος ὀμολογεῖ διαρρήκτην, οὗ περὶ τοῦ τοιούτου κενοῦ φάσκων ἐκάστοτε ποιεῖσθαι τὸν λόγον, ὁ κατὰ βραχὺ παρέσταται τοῖς σώμασιν, ἀλλὰ περὶ τοῦ σαφοῦς καὶ αἰσθητοῦ καὶ ἀθρόου καὶ μεγάλου καὶ ἐναργοῦς καὶ ὁποῖος ἄν ἄλλως ὄνομάζειν ἔθελη. Ἐρασίστρατος μὲν γὰρ αὐτὸς αἰσθητῶν ἀθρόώς οὐ φησὶ δύνασθαι

154
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. vi

physicians will leave no empty space in it; otherwise it would not be one body but many, separated by empty spaces. But if it consists of many bodies, then we have "escaped by the back door," as the saying is, to Asclepiades, seeing that we have postulated certain inharmonious elements. Once again, then, we must call Nature "inartistic"; for this necessarily follows the assumption of such elements.

For this reason some of the Erasistrateans seem to me to have done very foolishly in reducing the simple vessels to elements such as these. Yet it makes no difference to me, since the theory of both parties regarding nutrition will be shown to be absurd. For in these minute simple vessels constituting the large perceptible nerves, it is impossible, according to the theory of those who would keep the former continuous, that any "refilling of a vacuum" should take place, since no vacuum can occur in a continuum even if anything does run away; for the parts left come together (as is seen in the case of water) and again become one, taking up the whole space of that which previously separated them. Nor will any "refilling" occur if we accept the argument of the other Erasistrateans, since none of their elements need it. For this principle only holds of things which are perceptible, and not of those which exist merely in theory; this Erasistratus expressly acknowledges, for he states that it is not a vacuum such as this, interspersed in small portions among the corpuscles, that his various treatises deal with, but a vacuum which is clear, perceptible, complete in itself, large in size, evident, or however else one cares to term it (for, what Erasistratus himself says is, that "there cannot be a
γενέσθαι κενόν· ἐγώ δ' ἔκ περιουσίασ εὐπορήσας ὁνομάτων ταύτων δηλοῦν ἐν γε τῷ νῦν προκειμένῳ λόγῳ δυναμένων καὶ τάλλα προσέθηκα.

100 Κάλλιον οὖν μοι δοκεῖ καὶ || ἡμᾶς τι συνεισενέγκασθαι τοῖς Ἐρασιστρατείοις, ἐπειδή κατὰ τούτῳ γεγόναμεν, καὶ συμβουλεύσαι τοῖς τὸ πρῶτον ἐκεῖνο καὶ ἀπλοῦν ὑπ' Ἐρασιστράτου καλούμενον ἀγγείον εἰς ἐτέρ' ἀττα σώματα στοιχείωδη διαλύσωσιν ἀποστήναι τῆς ὑπολήψεως, ὡς πρὸς τῷ μηδὲν ἔχειν πλέον ἐτί καὶ διαφερομένοις Ἐρασιστράτῳ. ὅτι μὲν οὖν οὐδὲν ἔχει πλέον, ἐπιδεδεικταὶ σαφῶς· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἡ ἑυνήθη διαφυγεῖν τὴν περὶ τῆς θρέψεως ἀπορίαν ἡ ὑπόθεσις· ὅτι δ' οὐδ' Ἐρασιστράτῳ σύμφωνός ἐστιν, δ' ἐκεῖνος ἀπλοῦν καὶ πρῶτον ὁνομάξει, σύνθετον ἀποφαίνονσα, καὶ τὴν τῆς φύσεως τέχνην ἀναιροῦσα, πρόδηλον καὶ τοῦτ' εἶναι μοι δοκεῖ. εἰ μή γὰρ κἂν τοῖς ἀπλοῖς τούτοις ἐνωσὶν των τῆς οὐσίας ἀπολείψωμεν, ἀλλ' εἰς ἀναρμα καὶ ἀμέριστα καταβησόμεθα στοιχεῖα, παντάπασιν ἀναιρήσωμεν τῆς φύσεως τὴν τέχνην, ὡσπερ καὶ πάντες οἱ ἐκ ταύτης ὁμωμένοι τῆς ὑποθέσεως ἰατροί· καὶ φιλόσοφοι. δευτέρα γὰρ τῶν τού ζῴου μορίων κατὰ τήν τοιαύτην ὑπόθεσιν ἡ φύσις, οὐ πρῶτη 101 γέγυνει. διαπλάττειν δὲ || καὶ δημουργεῖν οὗ τοῦ δευτέρου γεγονότος, ἀλλὰ τοῦ προϋπάρχοντος ἐστιν· ὅστ' ἀναγκαῖον ἐστιν εὐθὺς ἐκ σπερμάτων ὑποθέσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις τῆς φύσεως, ἀς δια-

1 cf. Book I., chap. xii.
2 i.e. in biology we must begin with living substance—with something which is specifically alive—here with the “unit mass of living matter.” cf. p. 73, note 3.

156
perceptible space which is entirely empty"; while I, for my part, being abundantly equipped with terms which are equally elucidatory, at least in relation to the present topic of discussion, have added them as well).

Thus it seems to me better that we also should help the Erasistrateans with some contribution, since we are on the subject, and should advise those who reduce the vessel called primary and simple by Erasistratus into other elementary bodies to give up their opinion; for not only do they gain nothing by it, but they are also at variance with Erasistratus in this matter. That they gain nothing by it has been clearly demonstrated; for this hypothesis could not escape the difficulty regarding nutrition. And it also seems perfectly evident to me that this hypothesis is not in consonance with the view of Erasistratus, when it declares that what he calls simple and primary is composite, and when it destroys the principle of Nature's artistic skill.¹ For, if we do not grant a certain unity of substance² to these simple structures as well, and if we arrive eventually at inharmonious and indivisible elements,³ we shall most assuredly deprive Nature of her artistic skill, as do all the physicians and philosophers who start from this hypothesis. For, according to such a hypothesis, Nature does not precede, but is secondary to the parts of the animal.⁴ Now, it is not the province of what comes secondarily, but of what pre-exists, to shape and to construct. Thus we must necessarily suppose that the faculties of Nature, by which she

---
³ "Ad elementa quae nec coalescere possunt nec in partes dividi" (Linacre). On the two contrasted schools cf. p. 45.
⁴ cf. loc. cit.
πλάττει τε καὶ αὐξάνει καὶ τρέφει τὸ ξύον· ἀλλ' ἐκεῖνοι τῶν σωμάτων τῶν ἁνάρμων καὶ ἀμερῶν οὐδὲν ἐν ἔαυτῷ διαπλαστικῆν ἔχει δύναμιν ἡ αὐξητικὴν ἡ θρητικὴν ἡ δῶλος τεχνικῆν· ἀπαθὲς γὰρ καὶ ἀμετάβλητον ὑπόκειται. τῶν δ' εἰρημένων οὐδὲν ἀνευ μεταβολῆς καὶ ἀλλοιώσεως καὶ τῆς δι' ὀλων κράσεως γίγνεται, καθάπερ καὶ διὰ τῶν ἐμπροσθεν ἐνεδεξάμεθα. καὶ διὰ ταύτην τὴν ἀνάγκην οὐκ ἔχουσες, ὡπως τὰ ἀκόλουθα τοῖς στοιχείοις, οἷς ὑπέθεντο, φυλάττοιεν, οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν τοιοῦτων αἱρέσεων ἀπαντεῖς ἀτεχνον ἡγαγκάσθησαι ἀποφήμαση τὴν φύσιν. καὶ τοῖς ταύτα γ' οὐ παρ' ἡμῶν ἔχρην μανθάνειν τούς Ἑρασιστρατεύουσας, ἀλλ' παρ' αὐτῶν τῶν φιλοσόφων, οἷς μάλιστα δοκεῖ πρῶτων ἐπισκοπεῖσθαι τὰ στοιχεῖα τῶν ὀντῶν ἀπάντων.

Οὖκον οὖν Ἑρασιστρατὸν ἂν τις ὀρθῶς ἄχρι τοσαύτης ἀμαθίας νομίζων προῆκεν, ως μηδὲ 102 ταύτην γνωρίσαι δυνηθῇ τὴν ἀκολουθίαν, ἀλλ' ἂμα μὲν ὑποθέσθαι τεχνικὴν τὴν φύσιν, ἄμα δ' εἰς ἀπαθῆ καὶ ἁναρμα καὶ ἀμετάβλητα στοιχεία καταθρᾶσαι τὴν οὐσίαν. καὶ μὴν εἰ δώσει τιν' ἐν τοῖς στοιχείοις ἀλλοιωσῶν τε καὶ μεταβολὴν καὶ ἐνωσίαν καὶ συνέχειαν, ἐν ἀσύνθετον αὐτὸ τὸ ἀπλοῦν ἀγγείου ἐκείνο, καθάπερ καὶ αὐτὸς ὄνομάζει, γενήσεται. ἀλλ' ἡ μὲν ἄπλη φλέψ ἐξ αὐτῆς τραφήσεται, τὸ νεῦρον δὲ καὶ ἡ ἀρτηρία παρά τῆς φλεβὸς.

2 "At corporum quae nec una committi nec dividi possunt nullum in se formatricem, auctricem, nutricem, aut
shapes the animal, and makes it grow and receive nourishment, are present from the seed onwards; whereas none of these inharmonious and non-partite corpuscles contains within itself any formative, incremental, nutritive, or, in a word, any artistic power; it is, by hypothesis, unimpressionable and untransformable, whereas, as we have previously shown, none of the processes mentioned takes place without transformation, alteration, and complete intermixture. And, owing to this necessity, those who belong to these sects are unable to follow out the consequences of their supposed elements, and they are all therefore forced to declare Nature devoid of art. It is not from us, however, that the Erasistrateans should have learnt this, but from those very philosophers who lay most stress on a preliminary investigation into the elements of all existing things.

Now, one can hardly be right in supposing that Erasistratus could reach such a pitch of foolishness as to be incapable of recognizing the logical consequences of this theory, and that, while assuming Nature to be artistically creative, he would at the same time break up substance into insensible, inharmonious, and untransformable elements. If, however, he will grant that there occurs in the elements a process of alteration and transformation, and that there exists in them unity and continuity, then that simple vessel of his (as he himself names it) will turn out to be single and uncompounded. And the simple vein will receive nourishment from itself, and the nerve and artery from the vein. How, and in what

in summa artificem facultatem habet; quippe quod impatibile esse immutibileque praesumitur” (Linacre).

3 Book I., chaps. v.–xi.
πώς καὶ τίνα τρόπον; ἐν τούτῳ γὰρ δὴ καὶ πρόσθεν γευόμενοι τῷ λόγῳ τῆς τῶν Ἑρασίστρατείων διαφωνίας ἐμμημονεύσαμεν, ἐπεδείξαμεν δὲ καὶ καθ’ ἐκατέρως μὲν ἀποροῦν εἶναι τὴν τῶν ἀπλῶν ἐκείνων ἀγγείων θρέψιν, ἀλλὰ καὶ κρίναι τὴν μάχην αὐτῶν οὐκ ὤκυνεσαμεν καὶ τιμήσαι τὸν Ἑρασίστρατον εἰς τὴν βελτίωνα μεταστήσαντες αἵρεσιν.

Αὕτης οὖν ἐπὶ τὴν ἐν ἀπλοῦν ἠμωμένον εὐαυτὸ πάντη τὸ στοιχεῖωδες ἐκεῖνο νεῦρον ὑποτιθεμένην αἵρεσιν ὁ λόγος μεταβὰς ἐπισκοπεῖσθω, πῶς τραφήσεται τὸ γὰρ εὐρεθὲν ἐνταῦθα κοινὸν ἄν ήδη καὶ τῆς Ἰπποκράτους αἵρεσεως γένοιτο. 103 Κάλλιον δ’ ἂν μοι δοκῶ τὸ ξητοῦμενον ἐπὶ τῶν νευσικότων καὶ σφόδρα καταλελεπτυσμένων βασανισθῆναι. πάντα γὰρ τούτοις ἐναργῶς φαίνεται τὰ μόρια τοῦ σώματος ἄτροφα καὶ λεπτὰ καὶ πολλῆς προσθήκης τε καὶ ἀναθρέψεως δεύμενα. καὶ τοίνυν καὶ τὸ νεῦρον τούτο τὸ αἰσθητὸν, ἐφ’ οὔτε ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἐποιησάμην τὸν λόγον, ἰσχυὸν μὲν ἰκανῶς γέγονεν, δεῖται δὲ θρέψεως. ἔχει δ’ ἐν εὐαυτῷ μέρη πάμπολλα μὲν ἐκεῖνα τὰ πρῶτα καὶ ἀόρατα νεῦρα τὰ σμικρὰ καὶ τινὰς ἀρτηρίας ἀπλὰς ὀλίγας καὶ φλέβας ὀμοιώς. ἀπαντᾷ οὖν αὐτοῦ τὰ νεῦρα τὰ στοιχείωδη καταλελέπτυνται δηλούοντι καὶ αὐτά, ἢ, εἰ μηδ’ ἐκεῖνα, οὔτε τὸ ὅλον. καὶ τοίνυν καὶ θρέψεως οὐ τὸ μὲν ὅλον δεῖται νεῦρον, ἐκαστὸν δ’ ἐκείνων οὐ δεῖται. καὶ μὴν εἰ δεῖται μὲν ἀναθρέψεως, οὔτεν δ’ ἡ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθία

160
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. vi

way? For, when we were at this point before, we drew attention to the disagreement among the Erasistrateans,¹ and we showed that the nutrition of these simple vessels was impracticable according to the teachings of both parties, although we did not hesitate to adjudicate in their quarrel and to do Erasistratus the honour of placing him in the better sect.²

Let our argument, then, be transferred again to the doctrine which assumes this elementary nerve³ to be a single, simple, and entirely unified structure, and let us consider how it is to be nourished; for what is discovered here will at once be found to be common also to the school of Hippocrates.

It seems to me that our enquiry can be most rigorously pursued in subjects who are suffering from illness and have become very emaciated, since in these people all parts of the body are obviously atrophied and thin, and in need of additional substance and feeding-up; for the same reason the ordinary perceptible nerve, regarding which we originally began this discussion, has become thin, and requires nourishment. Now, this contains within itself various parts, namely, a great many of these primary, invisible, minute nerves, a few simple arteries, and similarly also veins. Thus, all its elementary nerves have themselves also obviously become emaciated; for, if they had not, neither would the nerve as a whole; and of course, in such a case, the whole nerve cannot require nourishment without each of these requiring it too. Now, if on the one hand they stand in need of feeding-up, and if on the

² On account of his idea of a simple tissue not susceptible of further analysis.
GALEN

βοηθεῖν αὐτοῖς δύναται διὰ τε τάς ἐμπροσθεν εἰρημένας ἀπορίας καὶ διὰ τὴν ὑπόγυιον ἱσχύω-
τητα, καθάπερ δεῖξω, ξητητέον ἥμιν ἐστιν ἐτέραν αἰτίαν θρέψεως.

Πῶς οὖν ἢ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθία
τρέφειν ἀδύνατος ἐστὶ τὸν οὕτω διακείμενον;

104 διὶ τοσοῦτον ἀκολουθεῖν || ἀναγκάζει τῶν συν-
εχῶν, ὅσον ἀπορρεῖ. τοῦτο δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τῶν
εὐεκτούντων ἰκανῶν ἐστὶν εἰς τὴν θρέψιν, ἵσα
γὰρ ἐπὶ αὐτῶν εἶναι χρῆ τοῖς ἀπορρέουσι τὰ
προστιθέμενα ἐπὶ δὲ τῶν ἐσχάτων ἱσχύων καὶ
πολλῆς ἀναθρέψεως δεσμένων εἰ μὴ πολλαπλά-
σιον εἰῇ τὸ προστιθέμενον τοῦ κενούμενον, τὴν
ἐξ ἁρχῆς ἔξιν ἀναλαβεῖν οὐκ ἂν ποτὲ δύναντο.
δῆλον οὖν, ὡς Ἕλκειν αὐτὰ δεῖσει τοσοῦτῳ
πλεῖον, ὅσῳ καὶ δεῖται πλεῖονος. Ἐρασίστρατος
δὲ κάνταύθα πρότερον ποιήσας τὸ δεύτερον οὐκ
οἶδ᾽ ὅπως οὐκ αἰσθάνεται. διὸτι γὰρ, φησὶ,
πολλῇ πρόσθεσις εἰς ἀναθρέψιν γίγνεται τοῖς
νευσθηκόσι, διὰ τοῦτο καὶ ἢ πρὸς ταύτην ἀκολου-
θία πολλῇ. πῶς δὲ ἂν πολλὴ πρόσθεσις γένοιτο
μὴ προηγουμένης ἀναδόσεως δαψιλοῖσι; εἰ δὲ
τὴν διὰ τῶν φλεβῶν φορὰν τῆς τροφῆς ἀνάδοσιν
καλεῖ, τὴν δὲ εἰς ἐκάστον τῶν ἀπλῶν καὶ ἀοράτων
ἐκεῖνων νεύρων καὶ ἀρτηριῶν μετάληψιν οὐκ
ἀνάδοσιν ἀλλὰ διάδοσιν, ὡς τινες ἄνομαξειν
105 ἡξίωσαν, εἶτα || τὴν διὰ τῶν φλεβῶν μόνη τῇ

1 The horror vacui.

162
other the principle of the refilling of a vacuum\textsuperscript{1} can give them no help—both by reason of the difficulties previously mentioned and the actual thinness, as I shall show—we must then seek another cause for nutrition.

How is it, then, that the tendency of a vacuum to become refilled is unable to afford nourishment to one in such a condition? Because its rule is that only so much of the contiguous matter should succeed as has flowed away. Now this is sufficient for nourishment in the case of those who are in good condition, for, in them, what is \textit{presented}\textsuperscript{2} must be equal to what has flowed away. But in the case of those who are very emaciated and who need a great restoration of nutrition, unless what was presented were many times greater than what has been emptied out, they would never be able to regain their original habit. It is clear, therefore, that these parts will have to exert a greater amount of \textit{attraction}, in so far as their requirements are greater. And I fail to understand how Erasistratus does not perceive that here again he is putting the cart before the horse. Because, in the case of the sick, there must be a large amount of \textit{presentation}\textsuperscript{2} in order to feed them up, he argues that the factor of “refilling”\textsuperscript{1} must play an equally large part. And how could much \textit{presentation} take place if it were not preceded by an abundant \textit{delivery}\textsuperscript{3} of nutriment? And if he calls the conveyance of food through the veins \textit{delivery}, and its assumption by each of these simple and visible nerves and arteries not \textit{delivery} but \textit{distribution},\textsuperscript{4} as some people have thought fit to name it, and then ascribes conveyance

\textsuperscript{3} \textit{Anadosis}, “absorption”; cf. p. 13, note 5.  \textsuperscript{4} Lit. \textit{diadosis}.  

\textsuperscript{163}
πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθία φησὶ γίγνεσθαι, τὴν εἰς τὰ λόγῳ θεωρητὰ μετάληψιν ἢ μίν ἡξηγησάθω. ὅτι μὲν γὰρ οὐκέτι ἐπὶ τούτων ἢ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθία λέγεσθαι δύναται καὶ μάλιστ' ἐπὶ τῶν ἐσχάτως ἰσχυῶν, ἀποδεικται. τί δὲ φησιν ἐπ' αὐτῶν ἐν τῷ δευτέρῳ τῶν καθόλου λόγων ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος, ἦξιον ἐπακοῦσαι τῇς λέξεως. Ὁτι δ' ἐσχάτως τε καὶ ἀπλοὶς, λεπτοὶς τε καὶ στενοῖς οὐσιν, ἐκ τῶν παρακειμένων ἁγγείων ἢ πρόσθεσις συμβαίνει εἰς τὰ κενώματα τῶν ἀπενεχθέντων κατὰ τὰ πλάγια τῶν ἁγγείων ἐλκομένης τῆς τροφῆς καὶ καταχωρίσμενης." ἐκ ταύτης τῆς λέξεως πρῶτον μὲν τὸ κατὰ τὰ πλάγια προσέματα τε καὶ ἀποδέχομαι· κατὰ μὲν γὰρ αὐτὸ τὸ στόμα τὸ ἀπλούς νεύρων οὐκ ἄν δύναιτό δεχόμενον τὴν τροφὴν οὕτως εἰς ὅλον ἕναντο διανέμειν· ἀνάκειται γὰρ ἐκεῖνο τῷ ψυχικῷ πνεύματι· κατὰ δὲ τὸ πλάγιον ἐκ τῆς παρακειμένης φλεβὸς τῆς ἀπλῆς ἐγχώρει λαβεῖν αὐτὸ. δεύτερον δ' ἀποδέχομαι τῶν ἐκ τῆς Ἐρασίστράτου λέξεως ὄνομάτων τὸ 108 ἑγγραμμένον ἐφεξῆς τῷ κατὰ τὰ πλάγια. || τὰ γὰρ φησι· "Κατὰ τὰ πλάγια τῶν ἁγγείων ἐλκομένης τῆς τροφῆς." ὅτι μὲν οὖν ἔλκεται, καὶ ἡμεῖς ὁμολογοῦμεν, ὅτι δ' οὗ τῇ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθία, δεδεικται πρόσθεν.

VII

Ἐξεύρωμεν οὖν κοινῆ, πῶς ἔλκεται. πῶς δ' ἄλλως ἢ ός ὁ σίδηρος ὑπὸ τῆς ἤρακλείας λίθου

1 i.e. let him explain the diadosis.
through the veins to the principle of vacuum-refilling alone, let him explain to us the assumption of food by the hypothetical elements. For it has been shown that at least in relation to these there is no question of the refilling of a vacuum being in operation, and especially where the parts are very attenuated. It is worth while listening to what Erasistratus says about these cases in the second book of his "General Principles": "In the ultimate simple [vessels], which are thin and narrow, presentation takes place from the adjacent vessels, the nutriment being attracted through the sides of the vessels and deposited in the empty spaces left by the matter which has been carried away." Now, in this statement firstly I admit and accept the words "through the sides." For, if the simple nerve were actually to take in the food through its mouth, it could not distribute it through its whole substance; for the mouth is dedicated to the psychic pneuma. It can, however, take it in through its sides from the adjacent simple vein. Secondly, I also accept in Erasistratus's statement the expression which precedes "through the sides." What does this say? "The nutriment being attracted through the sides of the vessels." Now I, too, agree that it is attracted, but it has been previously shown that this is not through the tendency of evacuated matter to be replaced.

VII

Let us, then, consider together how it is attracted. How else than in the way that iron is attracted by

1 "Spiritus animalis"; cf. p. 152, note 1. The nutriment was for the walls of the vessels, not for their cavities. cf. p. 319, note 3.
GALEN

dύναμιν ἔχονσις ἑλκτικὴν τοιαύτης ποιότητος; ἀλλ' εἰ τὴν μὲν ἀρχὴν τῆς ἀναδόσεως ἡ τῆς κοιλίας ἐνθλυψις παρέχεται, τὴν δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα φοράν ἀπασαν αἳ τε φλέβες περιστέλλομεναι καὶ προωθοῦσαι καὶ τῶν τρεφομένων ἐκαστον ἐπισπώμενον εἰς ἑαυτό, τῆς πρὸς τὸ κενοῦμενον ἀκολουθίας ἀποστάντες, ὡς οὐ πρεποῦσθαι ἁνὴρ τεχνικὴν ὑποθεμένῳ τὴν φύσιν, οὕτως δὲν ἢ δὴ καὶ τὴν ἀντιλογίαν εἴημεν πεφευγότες τὴν Ἀσκληπιάδου μὴ δυνάμενοι γε λυεῖν αὐτὴν. τὸ γὰρ εἰς τὴν ἀπόδειξιν παραλαμβανόμενον λήμμα τὸ διεξευγμένον οὐκ ἐκ δυνῶν ἀλλ' ἐκ τριῶν ἐστὶ κατὰ γε τὴν ἀλήθειαν διεξευγμένου. εἰ μὲν οὖν 107 ὡς ἐκ δυνῶν αὐτῷ χρησαιμεθα, ψεύδος ἐσται τι τῶν εἰς τὴν ἀπόδειξιν παρειλημμένων· εἰ δ' ὡς ἐκ τριῶν, ἀπέραντος δ' λόγος γενήσεται.

VIII

Καὶ ταῦτ' οὐκ ἔχρην ἀγνοεῖν τὸν Ὑπανιστρατον, εἴπερ κἂν ὄναρ ποτὲ τοῖς ἐκ τοῦ περιπάτου συνέτυχεν, ὡςπερ οὖν οὐδὲ τὰ περὶ τῆς γενέσεως τῶν χυμῶν, ὑπὲρ δὲν οὐδὲν ἔχων εἰπεῖν οὐδὲ μέχρι τοῦ μετρίου πιθανὸν οἴεται παρακρούσθαι σκηντόμενος, ὡς οὐδὲ χρήσιμος ὅλως ἐστὶν ἡ τῶν τοιούτων ἐπίσκεψις. εἰτ', ὡς πρὸς θεῶν, ὡς μὲν τὰ σύτια κατὰ τὴν γαστέρα πέττεται χρήσιμον ἐπίστασθαι, πῶς δ' ἐν ταῖς φλεψίν ἡ
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. vii.–viii

the lodestone, the latter having a faculty attractive of this particular quality [existing in iron]? But if the beginning of anadosis depends on the squeezing action of the stomach, and the whole movement thereafter on the peristalsis and propulsive action of the veins, as well as on the traction exerted by each of the parts which are undergoing nourishment, then we can abandon the principle of replacement of evacuated matter, as not being suitable for a man who assumes Nature to be a skilled artist; thus we shall also have avoided the contradiction of Asclepiades though we cannot refute it: for the disjunctive argument used for the purposes of demonstration is, in reality, disjunctive not of two but of three alternatives; now, if we treat the disjunction as a disjunction of two alternatives, one of the two propositions assumed in constructing our proof must be false; and if as a disjunctive of three alternatives, no conclusion will be arrived at.

VIII

Now Erasistratus ought not to have been ignorant of this if he had ever had anything to do with the Peripatetics—even in a dream. Nor, similarly, should he have been unacquainted with the genesis of the humours, about which, not having even anything moderately plausible to say, he thinks to deceive us by the excuse that the consideration of such matters is not the least useful. Then, in Heaven’s name, is it useful to know how food is digested in the stomach, but unnecessary to know how bile comes into existence

1 Specific attraction; cf. Book I., chap. xiv.
2 cf. p. 100, note 2.  
3 In Book II., chap. i.
χολή γίγνεται, περιττών; καὶ τῆς κενώσεως ἂρα φροντιστέον αὐτῆς μόνης, ἀμελητέον δὲ τῆς γενέσεως; ὥσπερ οὖν ἀμεινὸν ὑπάρχον μακρὸ τὸ κωλύειν εὐθὺς ἕξ ἀρχῆς γεννᾶσθαι πλείονα τοῦ πράγματ' ἔχειν ἐκκενοῦντας. θαυμαστόν δὲ καὶ τὸ διαπορεῖν, εἰτ' ἐν τῷ σώματι τῆν γένεσιν αὐτῆς ὑποθετέον εἰτ' εὐθὺς ἐξώθειν ἐν τοῖς σιτίοις περιέχεσθαι φατέον. εἰ γὰρ δὴ τοῦτο καλῶς ἡπόρηται, τί οὖχι καὶ περὶ τοῦ αἰματος ἐπισκε-

108 ψόμεθα, πότερον ἐν τῷ σώματι || λαμβάνει τὴν γένεσιν ἢ τοῖς σιτίοις παρέσπαρται, καθάπερ οἱ τὰς ὁμοιομερείας ὑποτιθέμενοι φασί; καὶ μὴν πολλῷ γὰρ ἡ χρησιμότερον ζητεῖσθαι, ποιὰ τῶν σιτίων ὁμολογεῖ τῇ τῆς αἰματῶσεως ἐνεργείᾳ καὶ ποιὰ διαφέρεται, τοῦ ζητεῖν, τίνα μὲν τῇ τῆς γαστρος ἐνεργείᾳ νικᾶται ῥαδίως, τίνα δ' ἀντε-βαίνει καὶ μάχεται. τούτων μὲν γὰρ ἡ ἐκλεξις εἰς πέψιν μόνην, ἑκείνων δ' εἰς αἰματος χρηστοῦ διαφέρει γένεσιν. οὔδὲ γὰρ ἴσον ἐστὶν ἡ μὴ καλῶς ἐν τῇ γαστρί χυλώθηκα τῇ τροφήν ἡ μὴ χρηστόν αἷμα γεννηθήκα. πῶς δ' οὖν αἴδειται τὰς μὲν τῆς πέψεως ἀποτυχίας διαρούμενος, ὡς πολλαὶ τ' εἰσὶ καὶ κατὰ πολλὰς γίγνονται προφάσεις, ὑπὲρ δὲ τῶν τῆς αἰματῶσεως σφαλ-μάτων οὐδ' ἄχρι ρήματος ἐνὸς οὐδ' ἄχρι συλλαβῆς μᾶς φθεγξάμενοι; καὶ μὴν εὐρίσκεται γε καὶ παχὺ καὶ λεπτὸν ἐν ταῖς φλεξίνοις αἷμα καὶ τοῖς μὲν ἑρυθρότερον, τοῖς δὲ ξανθότερον, τοῖς δὲ μελάντερον, τοῖς δὲ φλεγματωδέστερον. εἰ δ' ὅτι

1 Prevention better than cure.
2 e.g. Anaxagoras; cf. p. 7, note 5; p. 20, note 3.
3 Lit. haematoysis.
in the veins? Are we to pay attention merely to the evacuation of this humour, and not to its genesis? As though it were not far better to prevent its excessive development from the beginning than to give ourselves all the trouble of expelling it! And it is a strange thing to be entirely unaware as to whether its genesis is to be looked on as taking place in the body, or whether it comes from without and is contained in the food. For, if it was right to raise this problem, why should we not make investigations concerning the blood as well—whether it takes its origin in the body, or is distributed through the food as is maintained by those who postulate homeœmeries? Assuredly it would be much more useful to investigate what kinds of food are suited, and what kinds unsuited, to the process of blood-production rather than to enquire into what articles of diet are easily mastered by the activity of the stomach, and what resist and contend with it. For the choice of the latter bears reference merely to digestion, while that of the former is of importance in regard to the generation of useful blood. For it is not equally important whether the aliment be imperfectly chylified in the stomach or whether it fail to be turned into useful blood. Why is Erasistratus not ashamed to distinguish all the various kinds of digestive failure and all the occasions which give rise to them, whilst in reference to the errors of blood-production he does not utter a single word—nay, not a syllable? Now, there is certainly to be found in the veins both thick and thin blood; in some people it is redder, in others yellower, in some blacker, in others more of the nature of phlegm. And one who realizes that it
καὶ δυσώδες οὐχ ἔνα τρόπον ἀλλ' ἐν πολλαῖς
109 πάνω διαφοραῖς ἀρρήτοις μὲν λόγῳ, σαφεστάταις
d' αἰσθήσει φαινεται γυνόμενον, εἰδέθη τις, οὐκ
ἀν οἶμαι μετρίως ἐτί καταγνώσθεθαι τῆς Ἐρα-
σιστράτου ραθυμίας αὐτῶν οὕτω γ' ἀναγκαῖαν
εἰς τὰ ἔργα τῆς τέχνης θεωρίαν παραλιπόντως.

Ἐναργῇ γὰρ δὴ καὶ τὰ περὶ τῶν ὑδέρων ἀμα-
tήματα τῇ ραθυμίᾳ ταύτῃ κατὰ λόγον ἢκολούθη-
kota. τὸ τε γὰρ τῇ στενοχωρίᾳ τῶν ὀδῶν κωλύεσθαι νομίζειν πρόσω τοῦ ἡπατος ἴναι τὸ
αἷμα καὶ μηδέποτ' ἀν ἀλλὰς ὑδέρων δύνασθαι
συστήναι πῶς οὐκ ἐσχάτην ἐνδείκνυται ραθυμίαν;
tὸ τε μὴ διὰ τὸν σπλήνα μηδὲ δὲ ἀλλ' τὸ μόριον,
ἀλλ' ἀεὶ διὰ τὸν ἐν τῷ ἡπατί σκίρρον ὑδέρων
οἰέσθαι γίγνεσθαι τελέως ἄργοι τῇ διάνοιᾳ
ἀνθρώπου καὶ μηδενὶ τῶν ὅσμεραι γυνομένων
παρακολούθοντος. ἐπὶ μὲν γε χρονίαις αἰμορ-
ροίσιν ἐπισχεθείσαις ἡ διὰ κένωσιν ἁμέτρου εἰς
ψυχίαν ἐσχάτην ἀγανούσαις τῶν ἀνθρώπων οὐχ
ἀπαξ οὐδὲ διὰ ἀλλὰ πολλάκις ἡδὴ τεθεάμεθα
συστάντας ὑδέρους, ὡσπερ γε καὶ γυναικείον ἢ τε
τῆς ἔφ' ἐκάστῳ μνη καθάρσεως ἀπώλεια παν-
tελῆς καὶ ἁμέτρος κένωσις, ὅταν αἰμορραγησωσί
110 ποθ' αἱ μὴ τραίρει σφοδρῶς, ἐπεκαλέσαντο πολλάκις
ὑδέρων καὶ τισιν αὐτῶν καὶ τ' ἡγουλείου ὀνομα-
ζόμενος ῥόδος εἰς τοῦτ' ἐτελεύτησε τὸ πάθος, ἦνα

1 Erasistratus held the spleen to be useless. cf. p. 143.
2 Induration: Gk. skirrós, Lat. scirrhus. The condition is
now commonly known by Laënnec's term cirsosis, from
Gk. kirros, meaning yellow or tawny. Here again we have an
example of Erasistratus's bias towards anatomical or structural
may smell offensively not in one way only, but in a
great many different respects (which cannot be put
into words, although perfectly appreciable to the
senses), would, I imagine, condemn in no measured
terms the carelessness of Erasistratus in omitting
a consideration so essential to the practice of our
art.

Thus it is clear what errors in regard to the
subject of *dropsies* logically follow this carelessness.
For, does it not show the most extreme carelessness
to suppose that the blood is prevented from going
forward into the liver owing to the *narrowness of the
passages*, and that dropsy can never occur in any
other way? For, to imagine that dropsy is never
caused by the spleen\(^1\) or any other part, but always by
induration of the liver,\(^2\) is the standpoint of a man
whose intelligence is perfectly torpid and who is
quite out of touch with things that happen every
day. For, not merely once or twice, but frequently,
we have observed dropsy produced by chronic
haemorrhoids which have been suppressed,\(^3\) or
which, through immoderate bleeding, have given
the patient a severe chill; similarly, in women, the
complete disappearance of the monthly discharge,\(^4\)
or an undue evacuation such as is caused by
violent bleeding from the womb, often provoke
dropsy; and in some of them the so-called female
flux ends in this disorder. I leave out of account

\(^3\) On the risks which were supposed to attend the checking
of habitual bleeding from piles *cf.* Celsus (*De Re Med.* VI.
xviii. 9), “Atque in quibusdam parum tuto supprimitur, qui
sanguinis profluvio imbecilliores non sunt; habent enim
purgationem hanc, non morbum.” (i.e. the habit was to be
looked on as a periodical cleansing, not as a disease.)

\(^4\) Lit. *catharsis*. 
GALEN

touς ἀπὸ τῶν κενεὼν ἀρχομένους ἢ ἄλλου τινὸς ἐπικαίρων μορίων ύδέρους παραλίπω, σαφῶς μὲν καὶ αὐτοὺς ἐξελέγχοντας τὴν Ἐρασιστράτειον ὑπόληψιν, ἀλλ' οὐχ οὖτως ἐναργῶς ως οἴ διὰ κατάψυξιν σφοδράν τῆς ὀλης ἐξεως ἀποτελοῦμένοι· πρὸτε γὰρ αὕτη γενέσεως ύδέρων αὐτία διὰ τὴν ἀποτυχίαν τῆς αἰματώσεως γυγνομένη τρόπον ὁμοίαταν ταῖς ἐπὶ τῇ τῶν σιτίων ἀπε-ψία διαρροίαις. οὐ μὴν ἐσκίρρωται ὡς κατὰ τοὺς τοιούτους ὑδέρους οὐδ' ἀλλο τι σπλάγχνων οὐδὲ τὸ ἥπαρ.

Ἀλλ' Ἐρασιστράτος ὁ σοφὸς ὑπεριδὼν καὶ καταφρονήσας, οὐν οὖθ' Ἰπποκράτης οὔτε Διο-κλῆς οὔτε Πραξιγόρας οὔτε Φιλιστίων ἀλλ' οὖδε τῶν ἀρίστων φιλοσόφων οὔδεις κατεφρούσεσυν οὔτε Πλάτων οὔτ' Ἀριστοτέλης οὔτε Θεόφραστος, ὀλας ἐνεργείας ὑπερβαίνει καθάπερ τι σμικρον καὶ τὸ τυχὸν τῆς τέχνης παραλίπων μέρος οὐδ' ἀντεπεῖν ἀξιώσας, εἰτ' ὀρθῶς εἰτὲ καὶ μὴ || σύμ-παντες οὕτως θερμῷ καὶ ψυχρῷ καὶ ξηρῷ καὶ ὑγρῷ, τοῖς μὲν ὡς δρῶσι, τοῖς δ' ὡς πάσχουσι, τὰ κατὰ τὸ σῶμα τῶν ξύων ἀπάντων διοικεῖσθαι φασί καὶ ὡς τὸ θερμὸν ἐν αὐτοῖς εἰς τὸς ἀλλὰς ἐνεργείας καὶ μᾶλιστ' εἰς τὴν τῶν χυμῶν γένεσιν τὸ πλείστον δύναται. ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν μὴ πείθε-σθαι τοσοῦτοις τε καὶ τηλικοῦτοις ἀνδράσι καὶ πλέον αὐτῶν οἴεσθαι τι γυγνόσκειν ἀνεμέσητον, τὸ δὲ μὴτ' ἀντιλογίας ἀξιώσαι μὴτε μνήμης οὖτως ἐνδοξον δόγμα θαυμαστὴν τινα τὴν ὑπορφίαν ἐνδείκνυται.

1 Apparently some form of anaemia.
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. VIII

the dropsy which begins in the flanks or in any other susceptible part; this clearly confutes Erasistratus's assumption, although not so obviously as does that kind of dropsy which is brought about by an excessive chilling of the whole constitution; this, which is the primary reason for the occurrence of dropsy, results from a failure of blood-production, very much like the diarrhoea which follows imperfect digestion of food; certainly in this kind of dropsy neither the liver nor any other viscus becomes indurated.

The learned Erasistratus, however, overlooks—nay, despises—what neither Hippocrates, Diocles, Praxagoras, nor Philistion despised, nor indeed any of the best philosophers, whether Plato, Aristotle, or Theophrastus; he passes by whole functions as though it were but a trifling and casual department of medicine which he was neglecting, without deigning to argue whether or not these authorities are right in saying that the bodily parts of all animals are governed by the Warm, the Cold, the Dry and the Moist, the one pair being active and the other passive, and that among these the Warm has most power in connection with all functions, but especially with the genesis of the humours. Now, one cannot be blamed for not agreeing with all these great men, nor for imagining that one knows more than they; but not to consider such distinguished teaching worthy either of contradiction or even mention shows an extraordinary arrogance.

2 Philistion of Locri, a contemporary of Plato, was one of the chief representatives of the Sicilian school of medicine. For Diocles and Praxagoras see p. 51, note 1.
3 cf. Book I., chap. iii.
ΓΑΛΕΝ

Καὶ μὴν συμκρότατος ἐστὶ τὴν γνώμην καὶ ταπεινὸς ἐσχάτως ἐν ἀπάσας ταῖς ἀντιλογίαις ἐν μὲν τοῖς περὶ τῆς πέψεως λόγοις τοῖς σῆμεσθαι τὰ σιτία νομίζουσιν φιλοτίμως ἀντιλέγων, ἐν δὲ τοῖς περὶ τῆς ἀνάδοσεως τοῖς διὰ τὴν παράθεσιν τῶν ἀρτηριῶν ἀναδίδοσθαι τὸ διὰ τῶν φλεβῶν αἷμα νομίζουσιν, ἐν δὲ τοῖς περὶ τῆς ἀναπνοῆς τοῖς περισθεὶσθαι τὸν ἀέρα φάσκουσιν. οὐκ ὀκνησε δ’ οὔδ’ τοῖς ἀτμοειδῶς εἰς τὴν κύστιν ἱέναι τὰ οὖρα νομίζουσιν ἀντειπεῖν οὐδὲ τοῖς εἰς ἐν 112 τὸν πνεύμωνα φέρεσθαι τὸ ποτόν. οὔτως ἐν ἀπασὶ τὰς χειρίστας ἐπιλεγόμενος δόξας ἀγάλλεται δια- τρίβων ἐπὶ πλέον ἐν ταῖς ἀντιλογίαις. ὁπί δὲ τῆς τοῦ αἵματος γενέσεως οὐδὲν ἀτμομέτρας οὕσης τῆς ἐν τῇ γαστρὶ χυλώσεως τῶν συπίων οὔτ’ ἀντειπεῖν τινὶ τῶν πρεσβυτέρων ἤξισθιοι οὔτ’ αὐτὸς εἰς- ἡγήσασθαι τιν’ ἔτεραν γνώμην ἐτόλμησεν, ὁ περὶ πασῶν τῶν φυσικῶν ἐνεργειῶν ἐν ἀρχῇ τῶν καθόλου λόγων ὑποσχόμενος ἐρεῖν, ὡς τε γίγνονται καὶ δι’ ἄντινον τοῦ ζώου μορίων. ἡ τῆς μὲν πέττειν τὰ σιτία πεφυκίας δυνάμεως ἀρρωστοῦ- σης ἀπεπτήσει τὸ ζώον, τῆς δ’ αἵματούσης τὰ πεφθέντα οὐδὲν ἦσται πάθημα τὸ παράταν, ἀλλ’ ἀδαμαντίνῃ τις ἡμῖν αὐτῇ μόνῃ καὶ ἀπαθῆς ἐστιν; ἡ ἀλλ’ τῇ ἄρρωστιας αὐτῆς ἕκγονον ὑπάρξει

1 Gk. pepsis; otherwise rendered coction.
2 cf. p. 13, note 5.
3 e.g. Asclepiades.
4 Lit. chylosis; cf. p. 238, note 2.
5 That is to say, the haematopoietic function deserves

174
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. VIII

Now, Erasistratus is thoroughly small-minded and petty to the last degree in all his disputations—when, for instance, in his treatise "On Digestion," ¹ he argues jealously with those who consider that this is a process of putrefaction of the food; and, in his work "On Anadosis," ² with those who think that the anadosis of blood through the veins results from the contiguity of the arteries; also, in his work "On Respiration," with those who maintain that the air is forced along by contraction. Nay, he did not even hesitate to contradict those who maintain that the urine passes into the bladder in a vaporous state,³ as also those who say that imbibed fluids are carried into the lung. Thus he delights to choose always the most valueless doctrines, and to spend his time more and more in contradicting these; whereas on the subject of the origin of blood (which is in no way less important than the chylification ⁴ of food in the stomach) he did not deign to dispute with any of the ancients, nor did he himself venture to bring forward any other opinion, despite the fact that at the beginning of his treatise on "General Principles" he undertook to say how all the various natural functions take place, and through what parts of the animal! Now, is it possible that, when the faculty which naturally digests food is weak, the animal's digestion fails, whereas the faculty which turns the digested food into blood cannot suffer any kind of impairment? ⁵ Are we to suppose this latter faculty alone to be as tough as steel and unaffected by circumstances? Or is it that weakness of this faculty will result in some-consideration as much as the digestive processes which pre-cede it.
GALEN

καὶ οὖν ὦδερος; δὴ λοις οὖν ἐναργῶς ἐστὶν ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος ἐξ ὄν ἐν μὲν τοῖς ἄλλοις οὖν δὲ ταῖς φαυλοτάταις δόξαις ἀντιλέγειν ὁκνησεν, ἐνταυθῷ δ’ οὔτ’ ἀντειπεῖν τοῖς πρόσθεν οὔτ’ αὐτὸς εἰπεῖν τι καὶνὸν ἐτόλμησε, τὸ σφάλμα τῆς ἐαυτοῦ γνωρίζων αἰρέσεως.

Τί γὰρ ἄν καὶ λέγειν ἔσχεν ὑπὲρ αἴματος ||

113 ἀνθρωπός εἰς μηδὲν τῷ συμφύτῳ θερμῷ χρώμενος; τί δὲ περὶ ξανθῆς χολῆς ἡ μελαίνης ἡ φλέγματος; ὅτι η Ἔια δυνατόν ἐστὶν ἀναιμηματέμενη τοῖς σετίοις εὐθὺς ἐξώθεν παραγίγγησθαι τῆν χολήν. λέγει γοῦν ὅδε πως αὐτοῖς ἀνόμασι: "Πότερον δ’ ἐν τῇ περὶ τὴν κοιλίαν κατεργασία τῆς τροφῆς γεννᾶται τοιαύτη ψυχρασία ἡ μεμγμένη τοῖς ἐξώθειν προσφερομένους παραγίγγησθαι, οὖν χρήσιμον πρὸς ἰατρικὴν ἐπεσκέφθαι." καὶ μὴν, ὅ γενναίότατο, καὶ κενοῦσθαι χρὴναί φάσκεις ἐκ τοῦ ξύφου τῶν χυμῶν τοῦτον καὶ μεγάλως λυπεῖν, εἰ μὴ κενωθείν. πῶς οὖν οὖν εἰς αὐτοῦ χρηστὸν ὑπολαμβάνων γίγνεσθαι τοιμᾶς ἄρχηστον λέγειν εἰς ἰατρικὴν εἰναι τῆς περὶ τῆς γενέσεως αὐτοῦ σκέψεως;

Ὑποκείσθω γὰρ ἐν μὲν τοῖς σετίοις περιέχεσθαι, μὴ διακρίνεσθαι δ’ ἀκριβῶς ἐν ἢπατι· ταύτα γὰρ ἄμφοτερα νομίζεις εἰναι δυνατά. καὶ μὴν οὐ σμικρὸν ἐνταῦθα τὸ διαφέρον ἡ ἐλαχίστην ἢ παμπόλλην χολὴν ἐν ἐαυτοῖς περιέχοντα προσάρασθαι σιτία. τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἀκίνδυνα, τὰ δὲ παμπόλλην περιέχοντα τῷ μὴ δύνασθαι πᾶσαν

1 i.e. Erasistratus could obviously say nothing about any of the humours or their origins, since he had not postulated

176
thing else than dropsy? The fact, therefore, that Erasistratus, in regard to other matters, did not hesitate to attack even the most trivial views, whilst in this case he neither dared to contradict his predecessors nor to advance any new view of his own, proves plainly that he recognized the fallacy of his own way of thinking.¹

For what could a man possibly say about blood who had no use for innate heat? What could he say about yellow or black bile, or phlegm? Well, of course, he might say that the bile could come directly from without, mingled with the food! Thus Erasistratus practically says so in the following words: "It is of no value in practical medicine to find out whether a fluid of this kind² arises from the elaboration of food in the stomach-region, or whether it reaches the body because it is mixed with the food taken in from outside." But, my very good Sir, you most certainly maintain also that this humour has to be evacuated from the animal, and that it causes great pain if it be not evacuated. How, then, if you suppose that no good comes from the bile, do you venture to say that an investigation into its origin is of no value in medicine?

Well, let us suppose that it is contained in the food, and not specifically secreted in the liver (for you hold these two things possible). In this case, it will certainly make a considerable difference whether the ingested food contains a minimum or a maximum of bile; for the one kind is harmless, whereas that containing a large quantity of bile, owing to the fact that it cannot be properly purified³

the four qualities (particularly the Warm—that is, innate heat). ² i.e. bile. ³ i.e. deprived of its bile.

177
114 αὐτὴν ἐν ἡμιτί καθαρθῆναι καλῶς αἴτια κατα-
στήσεται τῶν τ' ἄλλων παθῶν, ὡς αὐτὸς ὁ
Ἐρασίστρατος ἐπὶ πλὴθεὶ χολῆς γέγυνοσθαί φησὶ,
καὶ τῶν ἰκτέρων οὐχ ἰκίστα. πῶς οὖν οὐκ
ἀναγκαίωτατον ἰατρῷ γεγυνώσκειν, πρῶτον μὲν,
ὡς ἐν τοῖς σιτίοις αὐτοῖς ἐξώθεν ἡ χολῆ περι-
έχεται, δεύτερον δ', ὥς τὸ μὲν τεύτλον, εἰ τύχωι,
παμπόλλην, ὁ δ' ἄρτος ἐλαχίστην καὶ τὸ μὲν ἐλαιὸν πλείστην, ὁ δ' οἶνος ὀλιγόστην ἐκαστῶν
τε τῶν ἄλλων ἀνίσου τῷ πλήθει περιέχει τὴν
χολήν; πῶς γὰρ οὖν ἄν ἐν γελοιότατος, ὂς ἄν
ἐκὼν αἱρήται τὰ πλείονα χολὴν ἐν εὐαυτοῖς περι-
έχοντα πρὸ τῶν ἐναυτῶν;
Τί δ' εἰ μὴ περιέχεται μὲν ἐν τοῖς σιτίοις ἡ
χολή, γίγνεται δ' ἐν τοῖς τῶν χρύων σώμασιν; ἢ
οὐχὶ καὶ κατὰ τοῦτο χρήσιμον ἐπίστασθαι, τῶν
μεν καταστάσει σώματος ἐπεταὶ πλείον ἄυτῆς ἡ
γένεσις, τίνι δ' ἑλάττων; ἀλλοιούν γὰρ δὴ ἤπειρον καὶ
μεταβάλλειν οἷοί τ' ἐσμὲν καὶ τρέπειν ἐπὶ τὸ
βέλτιον ἀεὶ τὰς μοχθηρὰς καταστάσεις τοῦ σώ-
ματος. ἀλλ' εἰ μὴ γεγυνόσκοιμεν, καθότι μοχθηρὰι
καὶ ὁπῃ τῆς δεούσης ἐξίσταται, πῶς ἄν αὐτὰς
115 ἐπανάγειν οἷοί τ' εἴημεν ἐπὶ τὸ || κρείττον;
Οὕκον αὐχρηστῶν ἐστιν εἰς τὰς ἴσεις, ὡς
Ἐρασίστρατος φησιν, ἐπίστασθαι τάληθες αὐτὸ
περὶ γενέσεως χολῆς. οὐ μὴν οὖν ἅδυνατον οὖδ'
ἀσαφεῖς ἐξευρεῖν, ὅτι μὴ τὸ πλείστην ἐν ἑαυτῷ
περιέχει τὸ μέλι τὴν ξανθήν χολήν ἀλλ' ἐν τῷ
σώματι μεταβαλλόμενοι εἰς αὐτὴν ἅλλοιούτατι τε
καὶ τρέπεται. πικρῶν τε γὰρ ἄν ἦν γευομένοις,
εἰ χολὴν ἐξώθεν εὐθὺς ἐν ἑαυτῷ περιεῖχεν ἀπασί
τ' ἄν ὁσαυτὸς τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἰςον αὐτῆς ἐγένεσ
178
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. viii

in the liver, will result in the various affections—particularly jaundice—which Erasistratus himself states to occur where there is much bile. Surely, then, it is most essential for the physician to know in the first place, that the bile is contained in the food itself from outside, and, secondly, that for example, beet contains a great deal of bile, and bread very little, while olive oil contains most, and wine least of all, and all the other articles of diet different quantities. Would it not be absurd for any one to choose voluntarily those articles which contain more bile, rather than those containing less?

What, however, if the bile is not contained in the food, but comes into existence in the animal's body? Will it not also be useful to know what state of the body is followed by a greater, and what by a smaller occurrence of bile?¹ For obviously it is in our power to alter and transmute morbid states of the body—in fact, to give them a turn for the better. But if we did not know in what respect they were morbid or in what way they diverged from the normal, how should we be able to ameliorate them?

Therefore it is not useless in treatment, as Erasistratus says, to know the actual truth about the genesis of bile. Certainly it is not impossible, or even difficult to discover that the reason why honey produces yellow bile is not that it contains a large quantity of this within itself, but because it [the honey] undergoes change, becoming altered and transmuted into bile. For it would be bitter to the taste if it contained bile from the outset, and it would produce an equal quantity of bile

¹ Here it is rather the living organism we consider than the particular food that is put into it.
ГALEN

tό πλήθος. ἀλλ᾽ οὖν ὧδ᾽ ἔχει τάλιθές. ἐν μὲν γὰρ τοῖς ἀκμάζουσι καὶ μάλιστ᾽ εἰ φύσει θερμό-
tεροι καὶ βίον εἰς εἰς βιοῦτες βαλαίπωρον, ἀπαν
eἰς ξανθῆν χολήν μεταβάλλει τὸ μέλος τοῖς
gέρουσι δ᾽ ικανῶς ἐστὶν ἐπιτήδειον, ὡσ ἂν οὐκ εἰς
χολήν ἀλλ᾽ εἰς αἷμα τὴν ἀλλοίωσιν ἐν ἐκεῖνοις
λαμβάνουν. Ὑφασίστρατος δὲ πρὸς τῷ μηδὲν
tοῦτων γυγνώσκειν οὔδε περὶ τὴν διαίρεσιν τοῦ
logen σωφρονεῖ, πότερον ἐν τοῖς συτίοις ἡ χολή
περιέχεται εὔθὺς εὖ ἄρχης ἢ κατὰ τὴν ἐν τῇ
κοιλίᾳ κατεργασίαν ἐγένετο, μηδὲν εἰναι χρήσι-
116 μου εἰς ἰατρικήν ἐπεσκέφθαι λέγων. ἔχρην ἥ γὰρ
δήποτε προσθείναι τι καὶ περὶ τῆς ἐν ἡπατί καὶ
φλεψὶ γενέσεως αὐτῆς, ἐν τοῖς τοῖς ὀργάνοις
gεννᾶσθαι τὴν χολήν ἀμα τῷ αἵματι τῶν παλαιῶν
ἰατρῶν τε καὶ φιλοσόφων ἀποφηγμένων. ἀλλὰ
tοῖς εὐθὺς εὖ ἄρχης σφαλείσι καὶ διαμαρτάνουσι
τῆς ὀρθῆς ὀδοὶ τοιαύτα τε ληρέων ἀναγκαῖον ἔστι
καὶ προσέτε τῶν χρησιμοτάτων εἰς τὴν τέχνην
παραλιπέιν τὴν ζήτησιν.

'Ἡδέως δὲ ἂν ἐνταῦθα τοῦ λόγου γεγονὼς
ήρόμην τοὺς ὄμιλησαι φάσκοντας αὐτὸν ἐπὶ
πλεῖστον τοῖς ἐκ τοῦ περιπάτου φιλοσόφων, εἰ
γυγνώσκουσιν, ὅσα περὶ τοῦ κεκράσθαι τὰ σώμαθ᾽
ήμων ἐκ θερμοῦ καὶ ψυχροῦ καὶ ἔμηρο τὸν
πρὸς Ἀριστοτέλους εἰρηταῖ τε καὶ ἀποδέδεικται,
καὶ ὡς τὸ θερμὸν ἐν αὐτοῖς ἐστὶ τὸ δραστικῶτατον
καὶ ὡς τῶν ἕξων ὅσα μὲν θερμότερα φύσει, ταύτα
πάντως ἐναίμα, τὰ δὲ ἐπὶ πλέον ψυχρότερα
πάντως ἀναίμα καὶ διὰ τοῦτο τοῦ χειμόνος ἄργα

180
in every person who took it. The facts, however, are not so.\footnote{\textit{Supreme importance of the "soil."} \textit{cf.} Introduction, pp. xii. and xxxi.} For in those who are in the prime of life, especially if they are warm by nature and are leading a life of toil, the honey changes entirely into yellow bile. Old people, however, it suits well enough, inasmuch as the alteration which it undergoes is not into bile, but into blood. Erasistratus, however, in addition to knowing nothing about this, shows no intelligence even in the division of his argument; he says that it is of no practical importance to investigate whether the bile is contained in the food from the beginning or comes into existence as a result of gastric digestion. He ought surely to have added something about its genesis in liver and veins, seeing that the old physicians and philosophers declare that it along with the blood is generated in these organs. But it is inevitable that people who, from the very outset, go astray, and wander from the right road, should talk such nonsense, and should, over and above this, neglect to search for the factors of most practical importance in medicine.

Having come to this point in the argument, I should like to ask those who declare that Erasistratus was very familiar with the Peripatetics, whether they know what Aristotle stated and demonstrated with regard to our bodies being compounded out of the Warm, the Cold, the Dry and the Moist, and how he says that among these the Warm is the most active, and that those animals which are by nature warmest have abundance of blood, whilst those that are colder are entirely lacking in blood, and consequently in winter lie idle and motionless, lurking
GALEN

καὶ ἀκίνηται κεῖται φωλεύοντα δίκην νεκρῶν. εἰρηται δὲ καὶ περὶ τῆς χροιᾶς τοῦ αἵματος οὐκ Ἀριστοτέλει μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ Πλάτωνι. καὶ 117 ἥμεις νῦν, ὅπερ ἡδὴ καὶ πρόσθεν εἰπον, || οὐ τὰ καλὸς ἀποδεδειγμένα τοῖς παλαιῶς λέγει προύθεμα, μήτε τῇ γνώμῃ μήτε τῇ λέξει τοὺς ἀνδράς ἐκείνους ὑπερβαλέσθαι δυνάμενοι· τὰ δὲ ἦτοι χωρίς ἀποδείξεως ὡς ἑναργῇ πρὸς αὐτῶν εἰρημένα διὰ τὸ μηδὲ ὑπονόησαι μοχθήρους οὕτως ἔσεσθαι τινας σοφιστὰς, οἱ καταφρονῆσον τῆς ἐν αὐτοῖς ἀληθείας, ἢ καὶ παραλειπέμενα τελεῶς ὑπὸ ἐκείνων ἄξιομεν εὐρίσκειν τε καὶ ἀποδεικνύαι.

Περὶ δὲ τῆς τῶν χυμῶν γενέσεως οὐκ οἶδ’ ἐκ ἐξει τις ἔτερον προσθεῖναι σοφώτερον δὴν Ἰπποκράτης εἶπε καὶ Ἀριστοτέλεις καὶ Πραξιγόρας καὶ Φιλότιμος καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῶν παλαιῶν. ἀποδεικται γὰρ ἐκείνοις τοῖς ἀνδράσιν ἀλλοιουμένης τῆς τροφῆς ἐν ταῖς φλεσὶν ὑπὸ τῆς ἐμφύτου θερμασίας αἴμα μὲν ὑπὸ τῆς συμμετρίας τῆς κατ’ αὐτὴν, οἱ δ’ ἄλλοι χυμοὶ διὰ τὰς ἀμετρίας γεγυμόμενοι καὶ τούτῳ τῷ λόγῳ πάνθ’ ὁμολογεῖ τὰ φαινόμενα. καὶ γὰρ τῶν ἔδεσμάτων δεσα μὲν ἔστι θερμότερα φύσει. χολωδέστερα, τὰ δὲ ψυχρότερα φλεγματικότερα· καὶ τῶν ἣλικιῶν ὄσαυτως χο- 118 λωδέστερα ἢ δὲν μὲν αἱ θερμότεραι φύσει, φλεγματωδέστεραι δ’ αἱ ψυχρότεραι· καὶ τῶν ἑπιτηδευμάτων δὲ καὶ τῶν χωρῶν καὶ τῶν ὄρων καὶ πολὺ δὴ πρότερον ἐτὶ τῶν φύσεων αὐτῶν αἱ μὲν ψυχρότεραι φλεγματωδέστεραι, χολωδέστεραι δ’ αἱ

1 Aristotle, Hist. Animal., iii. xix. ; Plato, Timaeus, 80 e. 182
in holes like corpses. Further, the question of the colour of the blood has been dealt with not only by Aristotle but also by Plato.\(^1\) Now I, for my part, as I have already said, did not set before myself the task of stating what has been so well demonstrated by the Ancients, since I cannot surpass these men either in my views or in my method of giving them expression. Doctrines, however, which they either stated without demonstration, as being self-evident (since they never suspected that there could be sophists so degraded as to contemn the truth in these matters), or else which they actually omitted to mention at all—these I propose to discover and prove.

Now in reference to the *genesis of the humours*, I do not know that any one could add anything wiser than what has been said by Hippocrates, Aristotle, Praxagorcas, Philotimus\(^2\) and many other among the Ancients. These men demonstrated that when the nutriment becomes altered in the veins by the innate heat, blood is produced when it is in moderation, and the other humours when it is not in proper proportion. And all the observed facts\(^3\) agree with this argument. Thus, those articles of food, which are by nature warmer are more productive of bile, while those which are colder produce more phlegm. Similarly of the periods of life, those which are naturally warmer tend more to bile, and the colder more to phlegm. Of occupations also, localities and seasons, and, above all, of natures\(^4\) themselves, the colder are more phlegmatic, and the warmer more

---

\(^2\) Philotimus succeeded Diocles and Praxagoras, who were successive leaders of the Hippocratic school. *cf.* p. 51, note 1.

\(^3\) *Lit.* *phenomena*.

\(^4\) *i.e.* living organisms; *cf.* p. 47, note 1.
GALEN

θερμότεραι· καὶ νοσημάτων τὰ μὲν ψυχρὰ τοῦ
φλέγματος ἐκγόνα, τὰ δὲ θερμὰ τῆς ξανθῆς χολῆς·
cαὶ ὅλως οὐδὲν ἐστὶν εὐρεῖν τῶν πάντων, ὁ μὴ τούτῳ
τῷ λόγῳ μαρτυρεῖ. πῶς δ' οὐ μέλλει; διὰ γὰρ τὴν
ἐκ τῶν τεττάρων ποιάν κράσιν ἐκάστου τῶν μορίων
ὡδ' πως ἐνεργούντος ἀνάγκη πάσα καὶ διὰ τὴν
βλάβην αὐτῶν ἡ διαφθείρεσθαι τελέως ἢ ἐμπο-
δίζεσθαι γε τὴν ἐνέργειαν καὶ οὕτω νοσεῖν τὸ
ζῆν ή ὅλον ἢ κατὰ τὰ μόρια.

Καὶ τὰ πρῶτὰ γε καὶ γενικῶτατα νοσήματα
τέταρα τῶν ἀριθμῶν ὑπάρχει θερμότητι καὶ
ψυχρότητι καὶ δηθὸτητι καὶ ὑγρότητι διαφέροντα.
τούτο δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος ὁ μολογεῖ
cαὶ τοῖς μὴ βουλόμενοι. ὅταν γὰρ ἐν τοῖς πυρετοῖς
χείροις τῶν σιτίων τὰς πέψεις γίγνεσθαι λέγη,

119 μὴ διότι τῆς ἐμφύτου || θερμασίας ἡ συμμετρία
dιέφθαρται, καθάπερ οἱ πρόσθεν ὑπελάμβανον,
ἀλλ' ὅτι περιστέλλεσθαι καὶ τρίβειν ἡ γαστήρ
οὐχ ὁμοίως δύναται βεβλαμμένη τὴν ἐνέργειαν,
ἐρέσθαι δίκαιον αὐτῶν, ὑπὸ τίνος ὧ τῆς γαστρὸς
ἐνέργεια βεβλαπται.

Γενομένου γάρ, εἰ τύχοι, βουβάνως ἐπὶ προσ-
πταίσματι, πρὶν μὲν πυρέζει τὸν ἄνθρωπον,
οὐκ ἄν χείροις ἡ γαστήρ πέψειν· οὔ γὰρ
ῖκανον ἢν οὔδετέρον αὐτῶν ὦθ' ὁ βουβᾶν
οὔτε τὸ ἔλος ἐμποδίσαι τι καὶ βλάψαι τὴν
ἐνέργειαν τῆς κοιλίας· εἰ δὲ πυρέζειεν, εὐθὺς μὲν
αἱ πέψεις γίγνονται χείροις, εὐθὺς δὲ καὶ τὴν
ἐνέργειαν τῆς γαστρῶν βεβλάφθαι φαμέν ὀρθῶς
λέγοντες. ἀλλ' ὑπὸ τίνος ἐβλάβη, προσθειναι

1 Erasistratus rejected the idea of innate heat; he held that the heat of the body was introduced from outside.

184
billos. Also cold diseases result from phlegm, and warmer ones from yellow bile. There is not a single thing to be found which does not bear witness to the truth of this account. How could it be otherwise? For, seeing that every part functions in its own special way because of the manner in which the four qualities are compounded, it is absolutely necessary that the function [activity] should be either completely destroyed, or, at least hampered, by any damage to the qualities, and that thus the animal should fall ill, either as a whole, or in certain of its parts.

Also the diseases which are primary and most generic are four in number, and differ from each other in warmth, cold, dryness and moisture. Now, Erasistratus himself confesses this, albeit unintentionally;¹ for when he says that the digestion of food becomes worse in fever, not because the innate heat has ceased to be in due proportion, as people previously supposed, but because the stomach, with its activity impaired, cannot contract and triturate as before—then, I say, one may justly ask him what it is that has impaired the activity of the stomach.

Thus, for example, when a bubo develops following an accidental wound² gastric digestion does not become impaired until after the patient has become fevered; neither the bubo nor the sore of itself impedes in any way or damages the activity of the stomach. But if fever occurs, the digestion at once deteriorates, and we are also right in saying that the activity of the stomach at once becomes impaired. We must add, however, by what

² As a bubo is a swelling in the groin, we must suppose that the wound referred to would be in the leg or lower abdomen.
χρῆ τῷ λόγῳ. τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἐλκοσ οὐχ οἷον τ’ ἢν οὖν βλάπτειν, ὡσπερ οὖν ὁ βουβῶν. ἡ γὰρ ἂν ἐβλαπήσε καὶ πρὸ τοῦ πυρετοῦ. εἰ δὲ μὴ ταύτα, δῆλον, ὡς ἡ τῆς θερμασίας πλεονεξία. δύο γὰρ ταύτα προσεγένετο τῷ βουβῶν, ἡ τῆς κατὰ τὰς ἀρτηρίας τε καὶ τὴν καρδίαν κινήσεως ἀλλοίωσις καὶ ἡ τῆς κατὰ φύσιν θερμασίας πλεονεξία. ἀλλ’ ἡ μὲν τῆς κινήσεως ἀλλοίωσις οὐ μόνον οὐδὲν 120 βλάψει τὴν ἐνέργειαν τῆς γαître, ἀλλὰ καὶ προσφελήσει κατ’ ἐκείνα τῶν ζών, ἐν οἷς εἰς τὴν πέψιν ὑπέθετο πλεῖστον δύνασθαι τὸ διὰ τῶν ἀρτηριῶν εἰς τὴν κούλιαν ἐμπίπτον πνεῦμα. διὰ λοιπὴν οὖν ἐτι καὶ μόνην τὴν ἀμέτρου θερμασίαν ἢ βλάβη τῆς ἐνέργειας τῇ γαστρί. τὸ μὲν γὰρ πνεῦμα σφοδρότερον τε καὶ συνεχέστερον καὶ πλέον ἐμπίπτει νῦν ἢ πρότερον. ὡστε ταύτη μὲν μᾶλλον πέψει τα διὰ τὸ πνεῦμα καλῶς πέττοντα ζῶν, διὰ λοιπὴν δ’ ἔτι τὴν παρὰ φύσιν θερμασίαν ἀπεπτήσει. τὸ γὰρ καὶ τῷ πνεύματι φάναι τιν’ ὑπάρχειν ἰδιότητα, καθ’ ἦν πέττει, κατείστα ταύτην πυρεττόντων διαφθείρεσθαι καθ’ ἔτερον τρόπον ἐς τὸ ὀμολογήσαι τὸ ἀτομοῦ. ἐρωτηθέντες γὰρ αὕτης, ὑπὸ τίνος ἥλλοιῶθη τὸ πνεῦμα, μόνην ἐξουσι ἀποκρίνεσθαι τὴν παρὰ φύσιν θερμασίαν καὶ μάλιστ’ ἐπὶ τοῦ κατὰ τὴν

---

1 i.e. fever as a cause of disease.
2 As we should say, “circulatory” changes.
3 This is the “vital spirit” or pneuma which, according to Erasistratus and the Pneumatiast school, was elaborated in the left ventricle, and thereafter carried by the arteries all over the body, there to subserve circulatory processes. It
it has been impaired. For the wound was not capable of impairing it, nor yet the bubo, for, if they had been, then they would have caused this damage before the fever as well. If it was not these that caused it, then it was the excess of heat \(^1\) (for these two symptoms occurred besides the bubo—an alteration in the arterial and cardiac movements \(^2\) and an excessive development of natural heat). Now the alteration of these movements will not merely not impair the function of the stomach in any way: it will actually prove an additional help among those animals in which, according to Erasistratus, the *pneuma*, which is propelled through the arteries and into the alimentary canal, is of great service in digestion; \(^3\) there is only left, then, the disproportionate heat to account for the damage to the gastric activity. For the pneuma is driven in more vigorously and continuously, and in greater quantity now than before; thus in this case, the animal whose digestion is promoted by pneuma will digest more, whereas the remaining factor—abnormal heat—will give them indigestion. For to say, on the one hand, that the pneuma has a certain property by virtue of which it promotes digestion, and then to say that this property disappears in cases of fever, is simply to admit the absurdity. For when they are again asked what it is that has altered the pneuma, they will only be able to reply, "the abnormal heat," and particularly if it be the pneuma in the food canal which is in

has some analogy with oxygen, but this is also the case with the "natural spirit" or pneuma, whose seat was the liver and which was distributed by the veins through the body; it presided over the more *vegetative* processes. cf. p. 152, note 1; Introduction, p. xxxiv.
κοιλίαν· οὔδε γὰρ πλησιάζει κατ’ οὐδὲν τούτο τῷ βουβώνι.

Καὶ τοῖς τῶν ἄκον τί ἐκείνων, ἐν οἷς ἢ τοῦ πνεύματος ἰδιότης μέγα δύναται, μυθομενεύων, παρὸν ἐπ’ ἄνθρωποις, ἐν οἷς ἢ οὔδὲν ἢ παντάπασιν ἄμων δρόν τι καὶ μικρὸν ὄφελεῖ, ποιεῖσθαι τὸν λόγον; ἀλλ’ ὅτι μὲν ἐν τοῖς πυρετοῖς οὔτοι κακῶς πέπτουσιν, ὀμολογεῖ καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ τὴν γ’ αἰτίαν προστιθέως βεβλάφθαι φησὶ τῆς γαστρός τῆς ἐνέργειαν. οὐ μὴν ἄλλην γε τίνα πρόφασιν τῆς βλάβης εἴπειν ἐχει πλὴν τῆς παρὰ φύσιν θερμασίας. ἀλλ’ εἰ βλάπτει τὴν ἐνέργειαν ἢ παρὰ φύσιν θερμασία μὴ κατὰ τι συμβεβηκός, ἀλλὰ διὰ τὴν αὐτῆς οὐσίαν τε καὶ δύναμιν, ἐκ τῶν πρώτων ἃν εἴῃ νοσημάτων καὶ μὴν οὐκ ἐνδεχεται τῶν πρώτων μὲν εἴναι νοσημάτων τὴν ἀμετρίαν τῆς θερμασίας, τὴν δ’ ἐνέργειαν ὑπὸ τῆς εὐκρασίας μὴ γίγνεσθαι. οὔδε γὰρ δι’ ἄλλο τι δυνατὸν γίγνεσθαι τὴν δυσκρασίων αἰτίαν τῶν πρώτων νοσημάτων ἀλλ’ ἃ διὰ τὴν εὐκρασίαν διαφθειρόμενην. τῷ γὰρ ὑπὸ ταύτης γίγνεσθαι τὰς ἐνεργείας ἀνάγκη καὶ τὰς πρώτας αὐτῶν βλάβας διαφθειρόμενης γίγνεσθαι.

"Ὅτι μὲν οὖν καὶ κατ’ αὐτὸν τὸν Ἐρασίστρατον ἢ εὐκρασία τοῦ θερμοῦ τῶν ἐνεργείων αἰτία, τοῖς θεωρεῖν τὸ ἀκόλουθον δυναμένοις ἰκανῶς ἀποδειχθαι νομίζω. τούτου δ’ ύπάρχοντος ἦμιν οὔδὲν ἔτι χαλεπὸν || ἐπ’ ἑκάστης ἐνεργείας

1 Even leaving the pneuma out of account, Galen claims that he can still prove his thesis.
2 In other words: if dyscrasia is a first principle in pathology, then eucrasia must be a first principle in physiology.
question (since this does not come in any way near the bubo).

Yet why do I mention those animals in which the property of the pneuma plays an important part, when it is possible to base one’s argument upon human beings, in whom it is either of no importance at all, or acts quite faintly and feebly?¹ But Erasistratus himself agrees that human beings digest badly in fevers, adding as the cause that the activity of the stomach has been impaired. He cannot, however, advance any other cause of this impairment than abnormal heat. But if it is not by accident that the abnormal heat impairs this activity, but by virtue of its own essence and power, then this abnormal heat must belong to the primary diseases. But, indeed, if disproportion of heat belongs to the primary diseases, it cannot but be that a proportionate blending [eucrasia] of the qualities produces the normal activity.² For a disproportionate blend [dyscrasia] can only become a cause of the primary diseases through derangement of the eucrasia. That is to say, it is because the [normal] activities arise from the eucrasia that the primary impairments of these activities necessarily arise from its derangement.

I think, then, it has been proved to the satisfaction of those people who are capable of seeing logical consequences, that, even according to Erasistratus's own argument, the cause of the normal functions is eucrasia of the Warm.³ Now, this being so, there is nothing further to prevent us from saying

³ The above is a good instance of Galen’s “logical” method as applied to medical questions; an appeal to those who are capable of following “logical sequence.” cf. p. 209, note 1.
τή μὲν εὐκρασία τὸ βέλτιον ἔπεσθαι λέγειν, τῇ δὲ δυσκρασίᾳ τὰ χείρω. καὶ τοῖνυν εἰσπερ ταῦθ' οὕτως ἔχει, τὸ μὲν αἷμα τῆς συμμέτρου θερμασίας, τὴν δὲ ξανθὴν χολὴν τῆς ἀμέτρου νομιστέου ὑπάρχειν ἔγγονον. οὕτως γὰρ καὶ ἡμῖν ἐν τε ταῖς θερμαῖς ἡλικίαις καὶ τοῖς θερμοῖς χωρίοις καὶ ταῖς ὁραίοις τοῦ ἔτους τοῖς θερμαῖς καὶ ταῖς θερμαῖς καταστάσεσιν, ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ ταῖς θερμαῖς κράσεσι τῶν ἀνθρώπων καὶ τοῖς ἐπιτηδεύμασί τε καὶ τοῖς διατήμασι καὶ τοῖς νοσήμασι τοῖς θερμοῖς εὐλόγως ἢ ξανθὴ χολὴ πλείστη φαίνεται γνυμομένη.

Τὸ δὲ ἀπορεῖν, εἰτ' ἐν τοῖς σώμασι τῶν ἀνθρώπων ο χυμὸς οὕτως ἔχει τὴν γένεσιν εἰτ' ἐν τοῖς συτίους περιέχεται, μηδ' ὅτι τοῖς ψυχαίνουσιν ἀμέμπτως, ὅταν ἀσιτήσωσι παρὰ τὸ ἔθος ὑπὸ τινὸς περιστάσεως πραγμάτων ἀναγκασθέντες, πικρῶν μὲν τὸ στόμα γίγνεται, χολώδη δὲ τὰ σύρα, δάκνεται δ' ἡ γαστήρ, ἐφρακτὸς ἐστὶν ἄλλ' ὡσπερ ἐξαίφνης νῦν εἰς τὸν κόσμον ἐληλυθότος καὶ μήπω τὰ κατ' αὐτὸν φαινόμενα γεγυμόσκοντος. ἐπεὶ τὰς οὐκ οἶδεν, ὡς ἐκαστὸν τῶν ἐψωμένων ἐπὶ πλέον ἀλκυότερον μὲν τὸ 123 πρῶτον, ὑστερον δὲ πικρότερον γίγνεται; κἂν εἰ τὸ μέλι βουληθείς αὐτὸ τὸ πάντων γλυκύτατον ἐψεῖν, ἀποδείξει καὶ τὸτε πικρότατον τὸ γὰρ τοῖς ἀλλοις, ὥσα μὴ φύσει θερμά, παρὰ τῆς ἐψωμένης ἐγγύνεται, τοῦτ' ἐκ φύσεως ὑπάρχει τῷ μέλιτι. διὰ τούτ' οὖν ἐψωμένον οὐ γίγνεται γλυκύτερον, ὅσον γὰρ ἐχρῆν εἶναι θερμότητος εἰς γένεσιν γλυκύτητος, ἀκριβῶς αὐτῷ τούτῳ πᾶν οἴκοθεν ὑπάρχει. ο τοίνυν 190
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. VIII

that, in the case of each function, eucrasia is followed by the more, and dyscrasia by the less favourable alternative. And, therefore, if this be the case, we must suppose blood to be the outcome of proportionate, and yellow bile of disproportionate heat. So we naturally find yellow bile appearing in greatest quantity in ourselves at the warm periods of life, in warm countries, at warm seasons of the year, and when we are in a warm condition; similarly in people of warm temperaments, and in connection with warm occupations, modes of life, or diseases.

And to be in doubt as to whether this humour has its genesis in the human body or is contained in the food is what you would expect from one who has—I will not say failed to see that, when those who are perfectly healthy have, under the compulsion of circumstances, to fast contrary to custom, their mouths become bitter and their urine bile-coloured, while they suffer from gnawing pains in the stomach—but has, as it were, just made a sudden entrance into the world, and is not yet familiar with the phenomena which occur there. Who, in fact, does not know that anything which is overcooked grows at first salt and afterwards bitter? And if you will boil honey itself, far the sweetest of all things, you can demonstrate that even this becomes quite bitter. For what may occur as a result of boiling in the case of other articles which are not warm by nature, exists naturally in honey; for this reason it does not become sweeter on being boiled, since exactly the same quantity of heat as is needed for the production of sweetness exists from beforehand in the honey. Therefore the external heat,
ΔΕΞΩΒΕΝ ΤΟΙΣ ἘΛΛΗΤΩΣ ΘΕΡΜΟΙΣ ἩΝ ὩΦΕΛΙΜΟΥ, ΤΟΥΤ' ἘΚΕΙΝΩ ΒΛΑΒΗ ΤΕ ΚΑΙ ἈΜΕΤΡΙΑ ΓΗΓΥΝΕΑΙ ΚΑΙ ΔΙΑ ΤΟΥΤΟ ΘΑΤΤΟΝ ΤΩΝ ἈΛΛΩΝ ἘΨΩΜΕΝΟΝ ἈΠΟΔΕΙΚΝΥΤΑΙ ΠΙΚΡΩΝ. ΔΙ' ΑΥΤΟΤ ΔΕ ΤΟΥΤΟ ΚΑΙ ΤΟΙΣ ΘΕΡΜΟΙΣ ΦΥΣΕΙ ΚΑΙ ΤΟΙΣ ἈΚΜΑΖΟΥΣΙΝ ΕΙΣ ΧΟΛΗΝ ἘΤΟΙΜΩΣ ΜΕΤΑΒΑΛΛΕΤΑΙ. ΘΕΡΜΩΝ ΓΑΡ ΘΕΡΜΟΝ ΠΛΗΣΙΑΖΟΝ ΕΙΣ ἈΜΕΤΡΙΑΝ ΚΡΑΣΕΩΣ ΕΤΟΙΜΩΣ ΕΞΙΣΤΑΤΑΙ ΚΑΙ ΦΘΑΝΕΙ ΧΟΛΗΝ ΓΥΝΟΜΕΝΟΝ, ΟΥΧ ΑΙΜΑ. ΔΕΙΤΑΙ ΤΟΙ- ΝΩΝ ΨΥΧΡΑΣ ΜΕΝ ΚΡΑΣΕΩΣ ἈΝΘΡΩΠΟΥ, ΨΥΧΡΑΣ Δ' ἩΛΙΚΙΑΣ, ᾽ΙΝ ΕΙΣ ΑΙΜΑΤΟΣ ἈΓΗΤΑΙ ΦΥΣΙΝ. ΟΥΚΟΥΝ ἈΠΟ ΤΡΟΠΟΝ ΣΥΝΕΒΟΥΛΕΥΣΕΝ ἩΠΟΚΡΑΤΗΣ ΤΟΙΣ ΦΥΣΕΙ ΠΙΚΡΟΧΟΛΟΙΣ ΜΗ ΠΡΟΣΦΕΡΕΙΝ ΤΟ ΜΕΛΙ, ΩΣ

124 ΔΑΝ ΘΕΡΜΟΤΕΡΑΣ || ΔΗΛΟΝΟΤΙ ΚΡΑΣΕΩΣ ὑΠΑΡΧΟΥΣΙΝ.

ΟΥΤΩ ΔΕ ΚΑΙ ΤΟΙΣ ΩΣΗΜΑΣΙ ΤΟΙΣ ΠΙΚΡΟΧΟΛΟΙΣ ΠΟΛΕΜΙΟΝ ΕΙΝΑΙ ΤΟ ΜΕΛΙ ΚΑΙ ΤΗ ΤΩΝ ΓΕΡΟΝΤΩΝ ἩΛΙΚΙΑ ΦΙΛΙΟΝ ΟΥΧ ἩΠΟΚΡΑΤΗΣ ΜΟΝΟΝ ΑΛΛΑ ΚΑΙ ΠΑΝΤΕΣ ΙΑΤΡΟΙ ΛΕΓΟΥΣΙΝ, ΟΙ ΜΕΝ ΕΚ ΤΗΣ ΦΥΣΕΩΣ ΑΥΤΟΥ ΤΗΝ ΔΥΝΑΜΙΝ ἘΝΔΕΙΞΑΜΕΝΗΣ ΕΥΡΟΝΤΕΣ, ΟΙ Δ' ΕΚ ΤΗΣ ΠΕΙΡΑΣ ΜΟΝΗΣ. ΟΥΔΕ ΓΑΡ ΟΥΔΕ ΤΟΙΣ ἈΠΟ ΤΗΣ ΕΜΠΕΙΡΙΑΣ ΙΑΤΡΟΙΣ ΕΤΕΡΟΝ ΤΙ ΠΑΡΑ ΤΑΥΤΑ ΤΕΤΗΡΗΤΑΙ ΓΥΝΟΜΕΝΟΝ, ΑΛΛΑ ΧΡΗΣΤΟΝ ΜΕΝ ΓΕΡΟΝΤΙ, ΝΕΩ Δ' ΟΥ ΧΡΗΣΤΟΝ, ΚΑΙ ΤΟΙ ΜΕΝ ΦΥΣΕΙ ΠΙΚΡΟΧΟΛΩ ΒΛΑΒΕΡΟΝ, ὩΦΕΛΙΜΟΝ ΔΕ ΤΟΙ ΦΛΕΓΜΑΤΩΔΕΙ ΚΑΙ ΤΩΝ ΩΣΗΜΑΤΩΝ ὩΣΑΥΤΩΣ ΤΟΙΣ ΜΕΝ ΠΙΚΡΟΧΟΛΟΙΣ ΕΧΘΡΟΝ, ΤΟΙΣ ΔΕ ΦΛΕΓΜΑΤΩΔΕΙΣ ΦΙΛΙΟΝ ΕΝΙ ΔΕ ΛΟΓΩ ΤΟΙΣ ΜΕΝ ΘΕΡΜΟΙΣ ΣΩΜΑΣΙΝ Ἡ ΔΙΑ ΦΥΣΙΝ Ἡ ΔΙΑ ΝΟΣΟΝ Ἡ Δ' ἩΛΙΚΙΑΝ Ἡ Δ' ΩΡΑΝ Ἡ ΔΙΑ ΧΩΡΑΝ Ἡ Δ' ἘΠΙΤΗΔΕΥΜΑ ΧΟΛΗΣ ΓΕΝΝΗΤΙΚΩΝ, ΑΙΜΑΤΟΣ ΔΕ ΤΟΙΣ ΕΝΑΝΤΙΟΙΣ.

ΚΑΙ ΜΗΝ ΟΥΚ ΕΝΔΕΥΣΑΙ ΤΑΥΤΟΝ ΞΕΘΕΜΑ ΤΟΙΣ ΜΕΝ ΧΟΛΗΝ ΓΕΝΝΑΝ, ΤΟΙΣ Δ' ΑΙΜΑ ΜΗ ΟΥΚ ΕΝ ΤῊ ΣΩΜΑΤΙ
which would be useful for insufficiently warm substances, becomes in the honey a source of damage, in fact an excess; and it is for this reason that honey, when boiled, can be demonstrated to become bitter sooner than the others. For the same reason it is easily transmuted into bile in those people who are naturally warm, or in their prime, since warm when associated with warm becomes readily changed into a disproportionate combination and turns into bile sooner than into blood. Thus we need a cold temperament and a cold period of life if we would have honey brought to the nature of blood. Therefore Hippocrates not improperly advised those who were naturally bilious not to take honey, since they were obviously of too warm a temperament. So also, not only Hippocrates, but all physicians say that honey is bad in bilious diseases but good in old age; some of them having discovered this through the indications afforded by its nature, and others simply through experiment, for the Empiricist physicians too have made precisely the same observation, namely, that honey is good for an old man and not for a young one, that it is harmful for those who are naturally bilious, and serviceable for those who are phlegmatic. In a word, in bodies which are warm either through nature, disease, time of life, season of the year, locality, or occupation, honey is productive of bile, whereas in opposite circumstances it produces blood.

But surely it is impossible that the same article of diet can produce in certain persons bile and in others blood, if it be not that the genesis of these humours is

---

1 The aim of dietetics always being the production of moderate heat—i.e. blood.
2 Note contrasted methods of Rationalists and Empiricists.
GALEN

tῆς γενέσεως αὐτῶν ἐπιτελουμένης. εἰ γὰρ δὴ
οἶκοθέν γε καὶ παρ’ ἕαυτοῦ τῶν ἐδεσμάτων
ἐκαστοῦ ἔχον καὶ οὐκ ἐν τοῖς τῶν ἁρχῶν σώμασι· ||
125 μεταβαλλόμενον ἐγέννα τὴν χολὴν, ἐν ἀπασιν
ἀν ὀμοίως αὐτῆς τοῖς σώμασιν ἐγέννα καὶ τὸ
μὲν πικρὸν ἔξω γενομένοις ἢ ἂν ὁμαί χολῆς
ποιητικόν, εἰ δὲ τι γλυκό καὶ χρηστόν, οὐκ ἂν
οὐδὲ τὸ βραχύτατον ἐξ αὐτοῦ χολῆς ἐγεννᾶτο. καὶ
μὴν οὐ τὸ μέλι μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἐκαστοῦ
τῶν γλυκέων τοῖς προειρήμενοις σώμασι τοῖς δὲ
ἐτιμῶν τῶν εἰρημένων θερμοίς ὑσίων εἰς χολῆν
ἐτοίμως ἐξίσταται.

Καίτοι ταύτ’ οὖν οἴδ’ ὅπως ἔξηγέχθησα εἰπεῖν
οὐ προελόμενος ἀλλ’ ὑπ’ αὐτῆς τοῦ λόγου τῆς
ἀκολουθίας ἀναγκασθεῖσι. εἰρήται δὲ ἐπὶ πλεί-
στον ὑπέρ αὐτῶν Ἀριστοτέλει τε καὶ Πραξιγόρα
τὴν Ἰπποκράτους καὶ Πλάτωνος γνώµην ὅρθως
ἔξηγησαμένους.

IX

Μη τούπυν ὡς ἀποδείξεις υφ’ ἡμῶν εἰρήθαι
νομίζειν τὰ τοιαῦτα μᾶλλον ἢ περὶ τῆς τῶν
ἄλλως γιγαντικῶν ἀναισθησιάς ἐνδείξεις, οὶ
μηδὲ τὰ πρὸς ἀπάντων ὀμολογοῦμενα καὶ καθ’
ἐκάστην ἡμέραν φαινόμενα γιγαντικοῦσιν τὰς
d’ ἀποδείξεις αὐτῶν τὰς κατ’ ἐπιστήμην ἐξ
ἐκεῖνων χρή λαμβάνειν τῶν ἄρχων, ὃν ἦδη
126 καὶ πρόσθεν || εἰπομεν, ὡς τὸ δράν καὶ πάσχειν
eἰς ἄλληλα τοῖς σώμασιν ὑπάρχει κατὰ τὸ
θερμοῦ καὶ ψυχροῦ καὶ ξηρῶν καὶ ύγρῶν. καὶ

1 Lit. anaesthesia. Linacre renders it indocilitas.

194
accomplished in the body. For if all articles of food contained bile from the beginning and of themselves, and did not produce it by undergoing change in the animal body, then they would produce it similarly in all bodies; the food which was bitter to the taste would, I take it, be productive of bile, while that which tasted good and sweet would not generate even the smallest quantity of bile. Moreover, not only honey but all other sweet substances are readily converted into bile in the aforesaid bodies which are warm for any of the reasons mentioned.

Well, I have somehow or other been led into this discussion,—not in accordance with my plan, but compelled by the course of the argument. This subject has been treated at great length by Aristotle and Praxagoras, who have correctly expounded the view of Hippocrates and Plato.

IX

For this reason the things that we have said are not to be looked upon as proofs but rather as indications of the dulness\(^1\) of those who think differently, and who do not even recognise what is agreed on by everyone and is a matter of daily observation. As for the scientific proofs of all this, they are to be drawn from these principles of which I have already spoken\(^2\)—namely, that bodies act upon and are acted upon by each other in virtue of the Warm, Cold, Moist and Dry. And if one is

\(^{2}\) p. 15.
Galen

eîte φλέβας εἰθ' ἕπαρ εἰτ' ἀρτηρίας εἰτε καρδίαν eîte κοιλίαν eît' ἄλλο τι μόριον énergēv tιs φήσειν ἕντινον énergēvain, ἀφύκτοις ἀνάγκαις ἀναγκασθήσεται διὰ τὴν ἐκ τῶν τεττάρων ποιαν κράσων ὁμολογήσαι τὴν ἑνεργείαν ὑπάρχειν αὐτῷ. διὰ τὸ γὰρ ἡ γαστηρί περιστέλλεται τοῖς σείτιοις, διὰ τὸ δ' αἱ φλέβες άλμα γεννώσι, παρὰ τῶν Ἐρασιστρατείων ἑδεόμενα ἀκούσαι. τὸ γὰρ ὅτι περιστέλλεται μόνον αὐτῷ καθ' ἐαυτὸ γεγνώκειν οὐδέπω χρηστόν, εἰ μὴ καὶ τὴν αἰτίαν εἰδεήμεν' οὕτω γὰρ ἀν σώμα καὶ τὰ σφάλματα θεραπεύσαιμεν. οὐ μέλει, φασίν, ἡμῖν οὖνδε πολυπραγμονοῦμεν ἐτές τοιαύτας αἰτίας. ὑπὲρ ἱατρῶν γὰρ εἰσὶ καὶ τῷ φυσικῷ προσήκουσιν. πότερον οὖν οὖν ἀντερεῖτε τῷ φάσκοντι τὴν μὲν εὐκρασίαν τὴν κατὰ φύσιν αἰτίαν εἶναι τῆς ἑνεργείας ἐκάστω τῶν ὀργάνων, τὴν δ' αὐτὶ δυσκρασίαν 127 νόσουν τ' ἤδη καλείσθαι καὶ πάντως ὑπ' αὐτῆς βλάπτεσθαι τὴν ἑνεργείαν; ἡ πεισθήσεσθε ταῖς τῶν παλαιῶν ἀποδείξεων; ἡ τρίτον τι καὶ μέσον ἐκατέρω τούτων πράξετε μήθ' ὡς ἀληθείς τοῖς λόγοις εἷς ἀνάγκης πειθόμενοι μήτ' ἀντιλέγοντες ὡς ψευδὲσιν, ἀλλ' ἀπορητικοὶ τινες ἕξαιρηψις καὶ Πυρρώνειοι γεννήσεσθε; καὶ μὴν εἰ τοῦτο δράσετε, τὴν ἐμπειρίαν ἀνάγκαιον ύμῖν προστήσασθαι. τῷ γὰρ ἂν ἐπὶ τρόπῳ καὶ τῶν ἱαμάτων εὔποροντε τὴν οὐσίαν ἐκάστω τῶν νοσημάτων ἄγωνοιτες; τῷ οὖν οὖν εἷς ἀρχῆς ἐμπειρικοὺς ύμᾶς αὐτοὺς ἐκαλέσατε; τῷ δὲ πράγμαθ' ἡμῖν παρέχετε φυ-

1 Iatros: lit. “healer.”
2 Lit. “physicist” or “physiologist,” the student of the physis. cf. p. 70, note 2.

196
speaking of any activity, whether it be exercised by vein, liver, arteries, heart, alimentary canal, or any part, one will be inevitably compelled to acknowledge that this activity depends upon the way in which the four qualities are blended. Thus I should like to ask the Erasistrateans why it is that the stomach contracts upon the food, and why the veins generate blood. There is no use in recognizing the mere fact of contraction, without also knowing the cause; if we know this, we shall also be able to rectify the failures of function. "This is no concern of ours," they say; "we do not occupy ourselves with such causes as these; they are outside the sphere of the practitioner, and belong to that of the scientific investigator." 2 Are you, then, going to oppose those who maintain that the cause of the function of every organ is a natural eucrasia, that the dyscrasia is itself known as a disease, and that it is certainly by this that the activity becomes impaired? Or, on the other hand, will you be convinced by the proofs which the ancient writers furnished? Or will you take a midway course between these two, neither perforce accepting these arguments as true nor contradicting them as false, but suddenly becoming sceptics—Pyrrhonists, in fact? But if you do this you will have to shelter yourselves behind the Empiricist teaching. For how are you going to be successful in treatment, if you do not understand the real essence of each disease? Why, then, did you not call yourselves Empiricists from the beginning? Why do you confuse us by announcing that you are

3 That is, a blending of the four principles in their natural proportion; Lat. temperies. Dyscrasia = interperies, "dis-temper."
σικάς ἑνεργείας ἐπαγγελλόμενοι ξητεῖν ἰάσεως ἔνεκεν; εἰ γὰρ ἀδύνατος ἡ γαστήρ ἐστὶ τινι περιστέλλεσθαι καὶ τρίβειν, πῶς αὐτὴν εἰς τὸ κατὰ φύσιν ἐπανάξομεν ἁγνοοῦντες τὴν αἰτίαν τῆς ἀδυναμίας; ἐγὼ μὲν φημὶ τὴν μὲν ὑπερτερ-μασμένην ἐμφυκτέον ἡμῖν εἶναι, τὴν δ' ἐγνυμένην θερμαντέον· οὕτω δὲ καὶ τὴν ἐξηρασμένην ὕγραντέον, τὴν δ' ὑγρασμένην ξηραντέον. ἀλλὰ 128 καὶ || κατὰ συζυγίαν, εἰ θερμοτέρα τοῦ κατὰ φύσιν ἄμα καὶ ξηροτέρα τοῦ χοικοῦ γεγενημένη, κεφάλαιον εἶναι τῆς ἱάσεως ἐμψύχειν θ' ἄμα καὶ ὑγραίνειν· εἰ δ' αὐ ψυχοτέρα τε καὶ υγροτέρα, θερμαίνειν τε καὶ ξηραίνειν κατὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἄσαυτως· οἱ δ' ἀπ' Ἑρασίστρατον τὸ ποτε καὶ πράξουσιν οὐδ' ὅλως χιτεῖν τῶν ἑνεργειῶν τὰς αἰτίας ὁμολογούν-τες; ὁ γὰρ τοῖς καρποῖς τῆς περὶ τῶν ἑνεργειῶν χητήσεως οὕτος ἔστι, τὸ τὰς αἰτίας τῶν δυσκρα-σιῶν εἴδοτα εἰς τὸ κατὰ φύσιν ἑπανάγειν αὐτάς, ὥς αὐτὸ γι' ἐμὸν τὸ γνώναι τὴν ἐκάστου τῶν ὀργάνων ἑνεργειαν ᾦτης ἐστὶν οὕτω χρηστὸν εἰς τὰς ἱάσεις.

Ἑρασίστρατος δὲ μοι δοκεῖ καὶ αὐτὸ τοῦτ' ἁγνοεῖν, ὡς, ἦτις ἄν ἐν τῷ σώματι διάθεσις βλάπτῃ τὴν ἑνεργειαν μὴ κατὰ τι συμβεβηκός ἄλλα πρῶτος τε καὶ καθ' ἐαυτήν, αὕτη τὸ νόσημα ἐστὶν αὐτό. πῶς οὖν ἐτι διαγνωστικὸς τε καὶ ἰατικὸς ἔσται τῶν νοσημάτων ἁγνοῶν ὅλως αὐτὰ τίνα τ' ἐστὶ καὶ πόσα καὶ ποιά; κατὰ μὲν δὴ τὴν γαστέρα τὸ γε τοσοῦτον ἑξίωσε 198
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. ix

investigating natural activities with a view to treatment? If the stomach is, in a particular case, unable to exercise its peristaltic and grinding functions, how are we going to bring it back to the normal if we do not know the cause of its disability? What I say is¹ that we must cool the over-heated stomach and warm the chilled one; so also we must moisten the one which has become dried up, and conversely; so, too, in combinations of these conditions; if the stomach becomes at the same time warmer and drier than normally, the first principle of treatment is at once to chill and moisten it; and if it become colder and moister, it must be warmed and dried; so also in other cases. But how on earth are the followers of Erasistratus going to act, confessing as they do that they make no sort of investigation into the cause of disease? For the fruit of the enquiry into activities is that by knowing the causes of the dyscrasiae one may bring them back to the normal, since it is of no use for the purposes of treatment merely to know what the activity of each organ is.

Now, it seems to me that Erasistratus is unaware of this fact also, that the actual disease is that condition of the body which, not accidentally, but primarily and of itself, impairs the normal function. How, then, is he going to diagnose or cure diseases if he is entirely ignorant of what they are, and of what kind and number? As regards the stomach, certainly, Erasistratus held that one should at least

¹ This is the orthodox Hippocratic treatment, that of opposites by opposites. Contrast the homoeopathic principle which is the basis of our modern methods of immunisation (similia similibus curentur, Hahnemann).
129 ζητείσθαι τὸ πώς πέττεται τὰ σιτία. || τὸ δ' ἦτος πρότη τε καὶ ἄρχηγος αἰτία τούτου, πώς οὐκ ἐπεσκέψατο; κατὰ δὲ τὰς φλέβας καὶ τὸ ἀίμα καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ πῶς παρέλιπεν.

'Αλλ' οὖθ' Ἰπποκράτης οὐτ' ἄλλος τις ὅν ὁλίγον πρόσθεν ἐμνημονεύσα φιλοσοφῶν ἢ ἰατρῶν ἁξίων ϕετ' εἶναι παραλυπεῖν. ἀλλὰ τὴν κατὰ φύσιν ἐν ἐκάστῳ ζῷῳ θερμασίαν εὐκρατῶν τε καὶ μετρίως ὑγραν οὕσαν αἴματος εἶναι φασί γεννητικὴν καὶ δι' αὐτὸ γε τοῦτο καὶ τὸ ἀίμα θερμὸν καὶ ὑγρὸν εἶναι φασί τῇ δυνάμει χυμὸν, ὡσπερ τὴν ξανθὴν χολήν θερμὴν καὶ ξηρὰν εἶναι, εἰ καὶ ὁτι μάλισθ' ὑγρὰ φαίνεται. διαφέρειν γὰρ αὐτοῖς δοκεῖ τὸ κατὰ φαντασίαν ὑγρὸν τοῦ κατὰ δύναμιν. ἢ τῆς οὐκ οἶδεν, ὥς ἀληθὲς καὶ θάλαττα ταριχεύει τὰ κρέα καὶ ἁσθεντὰ διαφυλάττει, τὸ δ' ἄλλο πάν ὑδρὸ τὸ πότιμον ἐτοίμως διαφθείρει τε καὶ σήτησι; τῆς δ' οὐκ οἶδεν, ὡς ξανθῆς χολῆς ἐν τῇ γαστρὶ περιεχομένης πολλῆς ἀπαύγῳ δίψει συνεχόμεθα καὶ ὡς ἐμέσαντες αὐτὴν εὕθεις ἄδιψοι γυμνόμεθα μᾶλλον ἢ εἰ 130 πάμπολυ ποτὸν προσηράμεθα; || θερμὸς οὖν εὐλόγως ὁ χυμὸς οὗτος εἴρηται καὶ ξηρὸς κατὰ δύναμιν, ὡσπερ γε καὶ τὸ φλέγμα ψυχρὸν καὶ ὑγρὸν. ἐναργεῖς γὰρ καὶ περὶ τούτον πίστεις Ἰπποκράτει τε καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις εἴρηται παλαιοῖς.

Πρόδικος δ' ἐν τῷ περὶ φύσεως ἀνθρώπου γράμματι τὸ συγκεκαυμένον καὶ οἷον ἀπερωπητημένον ἐν τοῖς χυμοῖς ὀνομάζων φλέγμα παρὰ τὸ πεφλέχθαι τῇ λέξει μὲν ἐτέρως χρήται, φυλάττει
investigate how it digests the food. But why was not investigation also made as to the primary originative cause of this? And, as regards the veins and the blood, he omitted even to ask the question "how?"

Yet neither Hippocrates nor any of the other physicians or philosophers whom I mentioned a short while ago thought it right to omit this; they say that when the heat which exists naturally in every animal is well blended and moderately moist it generates blood; for this reason they also say that the blood is a virtually warm and moist humour, and similarly also that yellow bile is warm and dry, even though for the most part it appears moist. (For in them the apparently dry would seem to differ from the virtually dry.) Who does not know that brine and sea-water preserve meat and keep it uncorrupted,\(^1\) whilst all other water—the drinkable kind—readily spoils and rots it? And who does not know that when yellow bile is contained in large quantity in the stomach, we are troubled with an unquenchable thirst, and that when we vomit this up, we at once become much freer from thirst than if we had drunk very large quantities of fluid? Therefore this humour has been very properly termed warm, and also virtually dry. And, similarly, *phlegm* has been called cold and moist; for about this also clear proofs have been given by Hippocrates and the other Ancients.

Prodicus\(^2\) also, when in his book "On the Nature of Man" he gives the name "phlegm" (from the verb \(\pi\epsilon\phi\lambda\epsilon\chi\theta\alpha\iota\)) to that element in the humours which has been burned or, as it were, over-roasted, while using

---

\(^1\) Lit. *aseptic*.

\(^2\) Prodicus of Ceos, a Sophist, contemporary of Socrates.
μέντοι τὸ πρᾶγμα κατὰ ταύτὸ τοῖς ἄλλοις. τὴν δ’ ἐν τοῖς ὁνόμασι τάνδρος τούτον καινοτομήν ἰκανῶς ἐνδείκνυται καὶ Πλάτων. ἀλλὰ τούτῳ γε τὸ πρὸς ἀπάντων ἀνθρώπων ὀνομαζόμενον φλέγμα τὸ λευκὸν τὴν χρόαν, δ’ ἐπλένναν ὄνομάζει. Πρόδικος, ὁ ψυχρὸς καὶ ὕγρος χυμός ἐστὶν οὗτος καὶ πλεῖστος τοῖς τῆς γέρουσι καὶ τοῖς ὀπωσδήποτε ψυγείσιν ἀθροίζεται καὶ οὐδεὶς οὐδὲ μαινόμενος ἀν ἀλλο τῇ ἡ ψυχρὸν καὶ ὕγρον εἰποι ἀν αὐτῶν.

Ἀρ’ οὖν θερμὸς μὲν τίς ἐστὶ καὶ ὕγρος χυμός καὶ θερμὸς καὶ ξηρὸς ἐτερος καὶ ὕγρος καὶ ψυχρὸς ἄλλος, οὐδεὶς δ’ ἐστὶ ψυχρὸς καὶ ξηρὸς τὴν δύναμιν, ἀλλ’ ἡ τετάρτη συζυγία τῶν κρά-

131 σεων ἠ ἀπασι τοῖς ἄλλοις ὑπάρχουσα μόνοις τοῖς χυμοῖς ὡς ὑπάρχει; καὶ μὴν ἡ γε μέλαινα χολή τοιοῦτος ἐστὶ χυμός, διὸ οἱ σωφρονοῦντες ιατροὶ καὶ ἰατροὶ πλεονεκτεῖν ἐφασαν τῶν μὲν ὄρων τοῦ ἐτούς ἐν ψυχρωτόρῳ μάλιστα, τῶν δ’ ἡλικίων ἐν ταῖς μετὰ τὴν ἀκμήν. οὕτω δὲ καὶ διαιτήματα καὶ χωρία καὶ καταστάσεις καὶ νόσους τινὰς ψυχρὰς καὶ ξηρὰς εἶναι φασιν οὔ γαρ δὴ χωλὴν ἐν ταύτῃ μόνῃ τῇ συζυγίᾳ τῆς φύσιν εἶναι νομίζοουσιν ἀλλ’ ὅσπερ τὰς ἄλλας τρεῖς οὕτω καὶ τῷδε διὰ πάντων ἐκτετάσθαι.

Ἡνάμην οὖν κάνταυθ’ ἐρωτήσαι δύνασθαι τοῦ Ἐρασίστρατου, εἰ μηδὲν ὤργανον ἡ τεχνική φύσις ἐξημιούργησε καθαρτικῶν τοῦ τοιοῦτον χυμοῦ, ἀλλὰ τῶν μὲν οὕρων ἀρα τῆς διακρίσεως ἐστίν ὀργάνα δύο καὶ τῆς ξανθῆς χολῆς ἐτερον οὐ
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. ix

a different terminology, still keeps to the fact just as the others do; this man’s innovations in nomenclature have also been amply done justice to by Plato. ¹ Thus, the white-coloured substance which everyone else calls phlegm, and which Prodicus calls blenna [mucus], ² is the well-known cold, moist humour which collects mostly in old people and in those who have been chilled ³ in some way, and not even a lunatic could say that this was anything else than cold and moist.

If, then, there is a warm and moist humour, and another which is warm and dry, and yet another which is moist and cold, is there none which is virtually cold and dry? Is the fourth combination of temperaments, which exists in all other things, non-existent in the humours alone? No; the black bile is such a humour. This, according to intelligent physicians and philosophers, tends to be in excess, as regards seasons, mainly in the fall of the year, and, as regards ages, mainly after the prime of life. And, similarly, also they say that there are cold and dry modes of life, regions, constitutions, and diseases. Nature, they suppose, is not defective in this single combination; like the three other combinations, it extends everywhere.

At this point, also, I would gladly have been able to ask Erasistratus whether his “artistic” Nature has not constructed any organ for clearing away a humour such as this. For whilst there are two organs for the excretion of urine, and another of considerable size for that of yellow bile, does the

¹ Plato, Timaeus, 83–86, passim.
² cf. the term blennorrhoea, which is still used.
³ cf. the Scotch term “colder” for “affected with a cold”; Germ. erkältet.
GALEN

σμικρόν, ὁ δὲ τούτων κακοηθέστερος χυμός ἀλάται διὰ παντὸς ἐν ταῖς φλεψὶν ἀναμεμμένος τῷ αἵματι. καίτοι "Δυσεντερίη," φησί ποι Ἰπποκράτης, "ὅν ἀπὸ χολῆς μελαίνης ἀρξη-132 ταί, θανάσιμον," οὐ μὴν ἢ γ᾽ ἀπὸ τῆς ξανθῆς χολῆς ἀρχομένη πάντως ὀλέθριος, ἀλλὰ οἱ πλείως εὗ αὐτῆς διασφέρονται. τοσούτῳ κακοηθεστέρα τε καὶ δριμυτέρα τὴν δύναμιν ὑπὲρ μέλαινα χολὴ τῆς ξανθῆς ἐστιν. ἀρ' οὖν οὔτε τῶν ἀλλων ἀνέγνω τι τῶν τοῦ Ἰπποκράτους γραμμάτων ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος οὔθεν οὔτε τὸ περὶ φύσεως ἀνθρώ-133 που βιβλίον, ἵνα οὖτως ἀργός παρέλθῃ τὴν περὶ τῶν χυμῶν ἐπίσκεψιν, ἢ γυγώσκει μὲν, ἐκὼν δὲ παραλείπει καλλίστην τῆς τέχνης θεωρίαν; ἐχρήν οὖν αὐτῶν μηδὲ περὶ τοῦ σπλαγχνὸς εἰρη-κέναι τι μηδ' ἀσχημονεῖν ὑπὸ τῆς τεχνικῆς φύ- σεως ὄργανον τηλικοῦτον μάτην ἠγούμενον κατε- σκευάσθαι. καὶ μὴν οὖν Ἰπποκράτης μόνον ἡ Πλάτων, οὐδὲν τι χείρος Ἐρασίστρατος περὶ φύσιν ἄνδρες, ἐν τι τῶν καθαιρόντων τὸ αἷμα καὶ τοῦτ᾽ εἶναι φασὶ τὸ σπλάγχνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ μυρίῳ σὺν αὐτοῖς ἀλλοί τῶν παλαιών ἰατρῶν τε καὶ φιλοσόφων, ὅν ἀπάντων προσποιησάμενος ὑπερφυσεῖν ὁ γενναῖος Ἐρασίστρατος οὔτ᾽ ἀν- τεῖπεν οὐθ᾽ ὅλως τῆς δόξης αὐτῶν ἐμμημόνευσε. καὶ μὴν ὅσοις γε τὸ σῶμα θάλλει, τούτοις ὁ σπλὴν φθίνει, φησὶν Ἰπποκράτης, καὶ οἱ ἀπὸ τῆς ἐμπειρίας ὀρμῶμενοι πάντες ὁμολογοῦσιν ἰατροῖ. καὶ ὅσοις γ᾽ αὖ μέγας καὶ ὑπούλος 204
humour which is more pernicious than these wander about persistently in the veins mingled with the blood? Yet Hippocrates says, "Dysentery is a fatal condition if it proceeds from black bile"; while that proceeding from yellow bile is by no means deadly, and most people recover from it; this proves how much more pernicious and acrid in its potentialities is black than yellow bile. Has Erasistratus, then, not read the book, "On the Nature of Man," any more than any of the rest of Hippocrates's writings, that he so carelessly passes over the consideration of the humours? Or, does he know it, and yet voluntarily neglect one of the finest studies in medicine? Thus he ought not to have said anything about the spleen, nor have stultified himself by holding that an artistic Nature would have prepared so large an organ for no purpose. As a matter of fact, not only Hippocrates and Plato—who are no less authorities on Nature than is Erasistratus—say that this viscus also is one of those which cleanse the blood, but there are thousands of the ancient physicians and philosophers as well who are in agreement with them. Now, all of these the high and mighty Erasistratus affected to despise, and he neither contradicted them nor even so much as mentioned their opinion. Hippocrates, indeed, says that the spleen wastes in those people in whom the body is in good condition, and all those physicians also who base themselves on experience agree with this. Again, in those cases in which the spleen is large and is increasing from

1 The word *teoria* used here is not the same as our *theory*. It is rather a "contemplation," the process by which a theory is arrived at. cf. p. 226, note 2.

2 Erasistratus on the uselessness of the spleen. cf. p. 143.

GALEN

αὐξάνεται, τοῦτοις καταφθείρει τε καὶ κακόχυμα
tὰ σώματα τίθησιν, ὡς καὶ τούτο πάλιν οὕχ
Ἡποκράτης μόνον ἄλλα καὶ Πλάτων ἄλλοι τε
πολλοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄπο τῆς ἐμπειρίας ὁμολογοῦσιν
ιατροί. καὶ οἱ ἄπο σπληνός δὲ κακοπραγοῦντος
ἐκτεροι μελάντεροι καὶ τῶν ἐλκῶν αἱ οὐλαι
μέλαιναι. καθολον γὰρ, ὅταν ἐνδεέστερον ἡ
προσήκειν εἰς ἑαυτὸν ἑλκὴ τὸν μελαγχολικὸν
χυμὸν, ἀκάθαρτον μὲν τὸ ἄιμα, κακόχυρον δὲ
tὸ πᾶν γίγνεται σῶμα. πότε δ’ ἐνδεέστερον
ἐλκεί; ἢ δῆλον ὅτι κακὸς διακείμενος; ὡσπερ
οὖν τοῖς νεφροῖς ἐνεργείας οὕσης ἐλκεῖν τὰ
σῶμα κακῶς ἐλκεῖν ὑπάρχει κακοπραγοῦσιν,
οὕτω καὶ τὸ σπληνι ποιότητος μελαγχολικῆς
ἐλκτικῆς ἐν ἑαυτῷ δύναμιν ἔχοντι σύμφυτον
ἀρρωτήσαντι ποτε ταύτῃ ἀναγκαῖον ἐλκεῖν
κακῶς καὶ τῷ δὲ παχύτερον ἡδὴ καὶ μελάντερον
gίγνεσθαι τὸ ἄιμα.

Ταῦτ’ οὖν ἀπαντα πρὸς τὰς διαγνώσεις
tῶν νοσημάτων καὶ τὰς ἱάσεις μεγίστην παρεχό-
134 μενα χρείαν || ὑπερεπτηθησε τελέως ὁ Ἐρασί-
στράτος καὶ καταφρονεῖν προσεποίησατο τηλι-
κούτων ἀνδρῶν ὁ μηδὲ τῶν τυχόντων καταφρονῶν
ἀλλ’ ἄει φιλοτίμως ἀντιλέγων ταῖς ἡλιθιώταται
dόξαις. ὥς καὶ δῆλον, ὡς οὐδὲν ἔχων οὔτ’
ἀντιπείν τοῖς πρεσβυτέροις ὑπὲρ δὲν ἀπεφήναντο
περὶ σπληνὸς ἐνεργείας τε καὶ χρείας οὔτ’ αὐτὸς
ἐξευρισκὼν τι καίνον εἰς τὸ μηδὲν ὅλως εἰπεῖν
ἀφικετο. ἀλλ’ ἡμεῖς γε πρῶτον μὲν ἐκ τῶν
αἰτίων, οἷς ἀπαντα διοικεῖται τὰ κατὰ τὰς

1 Enlargement and suppuration (?) of spleen associated
with toxaemia or “cacochoympy.” 2 Lit. “melancholic.”
206
internal suppuration, it destroys the body and fills it with evil humours;¹ this again is agreed on, not only by Hippocrates, but also by Plato and many others, including the Empiric physicians. And the jaundice which occurs when the spleen is out of order is darker in colour, and the cicatrices of ulcers are dark. For, generally speaking, when the spleen is drawing the atrabiliary² humour into itself to a less degree than is proper, the blood is unpurified, and the whole body takes on a bad colour. And when does it draw this in to a less degree than proper? Obviously, when it [the spleen] is in a bad condition. Thus, just as the kidneys, whose function it is to attract the urine, do this badly when they are out of order, so also the spleen, which has in itself a native power of attracting an atrabiliary quality,³ if it ever happens to be weak, must necessarily exercise this attraction badly, with the result that the blood becomes thicker and darker.

Now all these points, affording as they do the greatest help in the diagnosis and in the cure of disease were entirely passed over by Erasistratus, and he pretended to despise these great men—he who does not despise ordinary people, but always jealously attacks the most absurd doctrines. Hence, it was clearly because he had nothing to say against the statements made by the ancients regarding the function and utility of the spleen, and also because he could discover nothing new himself, that he ended by saying nothing at all. I, however, for my part, have demonstrated, firstly from the causes by which everything throughout nature is governed (by

¹ On of sensible qualities which we call
ote 3.
GALEN

φυσεις, τοῦ θερμοῦ λέγω καὶ ψυχροῦ καὶ ξηροῦ καὶ ύγροῦ, δεύτερον δ’ εξ αὐτῶν τῶν ἐναργῶς φαινομένων κατὰ τὸ σῶμα ψυχροῦ καὶ ξηροῦ εἶναι τινὰ χρῆναι χυμὸν ἀπεδείχαμεν. ἐξῆς δ’, ὅτι καὶ μελαγχολικὸς οὕτως ὑπάρχει καὶ τὸ καθαίρον αὐτὸν σπλάγχνον ὁ σπλήν ἔστιν, διὰ βραχέων ὡς ἐνι μάλιστα τῶν τοῖς παλαιοῖς ἀποδειγμένων ἀναμνήσαντες ἐπὶ τὸ λείπον ἔτι τοῖς παροῦσι λόγοις ἀφιξόμεθα.

Τί δ’ ἂν εἰη λείπον ἄλλο γ’ ἢ ἐξηγήσασθαι 135 σαφῶς, οἷόν τι βούλονται τε || καὶ ἀποδεικνύονται περὶ τὴν τῶν χυμῶν γένεσιν οἱ παλαιοὶ συμβαίνειν. ἐναργέστερον δ’ ἄν γνωσθείη διὰ παραδείγματος. οἶνον δὴ μοι νόει γλεύκινον οὗ πρὸ πολλοῦ τῶν σταφυλῶν ἐκτεθλιμμένον ξένωτά τε καὶ ἀλλοιούμενον ὑπὸ τῆς ἐν αὕτῳ θερμασίας· ἔπειτα κατὰ τὴν αὐτοῦ μεταβολὴν δύο γεννώμενα περιττόματα τὸ μὲν κουφότερον τε καὶ ἀερωδέστερον, τὸ δὲ βαρύτερον τε καὶ γεωδέστερον, ὃν τὸ μὲν ἄνθος, οἷοι, τὸ δὲ τρύγα καλοῦσι. τούτων τῷ μὲν ἐτέρῳ τὴν ξανθὴν χολήν, τῷ δ’ ἐτέρῳ τὴν μέλαιναν εἰκάζων οὐκ ἄν ἀμάρτοις, οὐ τῆς αὐτῆς ἐχόντων ἰδέαν τῶν χυμῶν τούτων ἐν τῷ κατὰ φύσιν διοικεῖσθαι τὸ ξίφος, οἷαν καὶ παρὰ φύσιν ἐχοντος ἐπιφαίνονται πολλάκις. ἢ μὲν γὰρ ξανθὴ λεκιθώδης γίγνεται· καὶ γὰρ ὀνομάζουσιν οὕτως αὐτήν, ὅτι ταῖς τῶν ὦν λεκίθως ὀμοιοῦται κατὰ τε χρόνα καὶ πάχος. ἢ δ’ αὖ μέλαινα κακοθέστερα μὲν πολὺ καὶ 208
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. ix

the causes I mean the Warm, Cold, Dry and Moist) and secondly, from obvious bodily phenomena, that there must needs be a cold and dry humour. And having in the next place drawn attention to the fact that this humour is black bile [atriabiliary] and that the viscus which clears it away is the spleen—having pointed this out by help of as few as possible of the proofs given by ancient writers, I shall now proceed to what remains of the subject in hand.

What else, then, remains but to explain clearly what it is that happens in the generation of the humours, according to the belief and demonstration of the Ancients? This will be more clearly understood from a comparison. Imagine, then, some new wine which has been not long ago pressed from the grape, and which is fermenting and undergoing alteration through the agency of its contained heat. Imagine next two residual substances produced during this process of alteration, the one tending to be light and air-like and the other to be heavy and more of the nature of earth; of these the one, as I understand, they call the flower and the other the lees. Now you may correctly compare yellow bile to the first of these, and black bile to the latter, although these humours have not the same appearance when the animal is in normal health as that which they often show when it is not so; for then the yellow bile becomes vitelline, being so termed because it becomes like the yolk of an egg, both in colour and density; and again, even the black bile itself becomes much more malignant than when in

1 Thus Galen has demonstrated the functions of the spleen both deductively and inductively. For another example of the combined method cf. Book III., chaps. i. and ii.; cf. also Introd. p. xxxii. 2 i.e. its innate heat. 3 Lit. lecithoid.
GALÈN

αὐτὴ τῆς κατὰ φύσιν ὃνομα δ’ οὐδὲν ἵδιον κεῖται τῷ τοιοῦτῳ χυμῷ, πλὴν εἰ ποὺ τινὲς ἢ ξυστικὸν ἢ ἄξωδη κεκλήκασιν αὐτῶν, ὅτι καὶ δρμύς ὅμοιος 136 ὃξει γίγνεται καὶ ἔξει γε τὸ σῶμα τοῦ ζῷου καὶ τὴν γῆν, εἰ κατ’ αὐτὴς ἐκχυθείη, καὶ τινα μετὰ πομφολύγας ὁπον ξύμωσιν τε καὶ ξέσιν ἐργάζεται, σηπεδόνος ἑπικτήτου προσελθούσης ἐκεῖνο τῷ κατὰ φύσιν ἔχοντι χυμῷ τῷ μέλανι. καὶ μοι δοκοῦσιν οἱ πλείστοι τῶν παλαιῶν ιατρῶν αὐτὸ μὲν τὸ κατὰ φύσιν ἔχον τοῦ τοιοῦτον χυμοῦ καὶ διαχωροῦν κάτω καὶ πολλάκις ἐπι- πολάζον ἀνω μέλανα καλείν χυμόν, οὐ μέλαναν χολήν, τὸ δ’ ἐκ συγκαύσεως τινὸς καὶ σηπεδόνος εἰς τὴν ὁξείαν μεδιστάμενον ποιότητα μέλαναν ὅνομάζειν χολήν. ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τῶν ὄνομά- των οὐ χρή διαφέρεσθαι, τὸ δ’ ἀλκηθὲς ὥδ’ ἔχον εἰδέναι.

Κατὰ τὴν τοῦ αἱματος γένεσιν ὁσον ἂν ἰκανῶς παχύ καὶ γεώδες ἐκ τῆς τῶν σιτίων φύσεως ἐμφερόμενον τῇ τροφῇ μὴ δέξηται καλῶς τὴν ἐκ τῆς ἐμφύτου θερμασίας ἄλλοισθιν, ὅ σπλήν εἰς ἑαυτὸν ἔλκει τούτο. τὸ δ’ ὀπτηθέν, ὡς ἂν τις εἴποι, καὶ συγκαυθὲν τῆς τροφῆς, εἰη δ’ ἂν τοῦτο τὸ θερμότατον ἐν αὐτῇ καὶ γυμνύτατον, οἶον τὸ τε μέλι καὶ ἡ πιμελή, ξανθῆ γενόμενον χολή διὰ τῶν χοληδόχων ὄνομαζομένων ἀγγείων 137 ἐκκαθαίρεται. || λεπτῶν δ’ ἐστὶ τοῦτο καὶ ὑγρῶν καὶ μυτῶν οὐχ ὡσπερ ὅταν ὀπτηθέν ἐσχάτως ξανθῶν καὶ πυρῶδες καὶ παχύ γένηται ταῖς τῶν

1 Note that there can be “normal” black bile.
2 The term food here means the food as introduced into the stomach; the term nutriment (trophé) means the same
its normal condition, but no particular name has been given to [such a condition of] the humour, except that some people have called it corrosive or acetose, because it also becomes sharp like vinegar and corrodes the animal’s body—as also the earth, if it be poured out upon it—and it produces a kind of fermentation and seething, accompanied by bubbles—an abnormal putrefaction having become added to the natural condition of the black humour. It seems to me also that most of the ancient physicians give the name black humour and not black bile to the normal portion of this humour, which is discharged from the bowel and which also frequently rises to the top [of the stomach-contents]; and they call black bile that part which, through a kind of combustion and putrefaction, has had its quality changed to acid. There is no need, however, to dispute about names, but we must realise the facts, which are as follow:—

In the genesis of blood, everything in the nutriment which belongs naturally to the thick and earth-like part of the food, and which does not take on well the alteration produced by the innate heat—all this the spleen draws into itself. On the other hand, that part of the nutriment which is roasted, so to speak, or burnt (this will be the warmest and sweetest part of it, like honey and fat), becomes yellow bile, and is cleared away through the so-called biliary vessels; now, this is thin, moist, and fluid, not like what it is when, having been roasted to an excessive degree, it becomes yellow, fiery, and thick, like the yolk of food in the digested condition, as it is conveyed to the tissues. cf. pp. 41-43. Note idea of imperfectly oxidized material being absorbed by the spleen. cf. p. 214, note 1.

Lit. choledochous, bile-receiving.
ΔΕΛΕΑΝ

ωὸς ὁμοιον λεκίθοις. τούτο μὲν γὰρ ἢδη παρὰ φύσιν θάτερον δὲ τὸ πρότερον εἰρημένου κατὰ φύσιν ἐστὶν ὥσπερ γε καὶ τοῦ μέλανος χυμοῦ τὸ μὲν μήπω τὴν οἶον ἦσσειν τε καὶ ἐμωσίων τῆς γῆς ἔργαζομενον κατὰ φύσιν ἐστὶ, τὸ δ’ εἰς τοιαῦτην μεθιστάμενον ἰδέαν τε καὶ δύναμιν ἢδη παρὰ φύσιν, ὡς ἂν τὴν ἐκ τῆς συγκαύσεως τοῦ παρὰ φύσιν θερμοῦ προσειληφός δριμύτητα καὶ οἶον τέφρα τις ἢδη γεγονός. ὡδὲ πὼς καὶ ἡ κεκαυμένη τρυξὶ τῆς ἀκαύστου διήνεγκε. θερμὸν γὰρ τὰ χρήμα αὐτὴ γ’ ἰκανῶς ἐστὶν, ὡστε καλεῖν τε καὶ τήκειν καὶ διαφθείρειν τὴν σάρκα. τῆς δ’ ἔτέρα τῇ μῆπῳ κεκαυμένη τοὺς ἰατροὺς ἐστὶν εὐρείων χρωμένων εἰς ὅσπερ καὶ τῇ γη τῇ καλουμένη κεραμίτιδι καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις, ὥσα ξηραίνειν θ’ ἁμα καὶ ψύχειν πέψκεν.

Εἰς τὴν τῆς οὕτω συγκαυσθείσης μελαίνης χολῆς ἰδέαν καὶ ἡ λεκιθώδης ἐκείνη μεθισταται πολλάκις, ὅταν καὶ αὐτὴ ποθ’ οἶον ὀπτηθείσα 138 τῇ χρῆ μυρώδει θερμασία, τὰ δ’ ἄλλα || τῶν χολῶν εἴδη σύμπαντα τὰ μὲν ἐκ τῆς τῶν εἰρημένων κράσεως γίγνεται, τὰ δ’ οἶον ὁδοί τινες εἰσὶ τῆς τούτων γενέσεως τε καὶ εἰς ἀλληλα μεταβολής. διαφέρουσι δὲ τῷ ταῖς μὲν ἀκράτους εἶναι καὶ μόνας, τὰ δ’ οἶον ὄρροις τισις ἐγναθησίνας. ἀλλ’ οἵ μὲν ὄρροι τῶν χυμῶν ἀπαντες περιττῶματα καὶ καθαρῷ αὐτῶν εἶναι δεῖται τοῦ ἱποῦ τὸ σῶμα. τῶν δ’ εἰρημένων χυμῶν ἐστὶ τις χρεία τῇ φύσει καὶ τοῦ παχέος καὶ τοῦ λεπτοῦ καὶ καθαίρεται πρὸς τε τοῦ σπλήνους καὶ τῆς ἐτὶ τῷ ἡπατί κύστεως τὸ αἷμα καὶ ἀποτίθεται τοσοῦτον τε καὶ τοσοῦτον ἐκατέρου μέρος, ὃσον καὶ οἶον, εἴπεο εἰς 212
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. ix

eggs; for this latter is already abnormal, while the previously mentioned state is natural. Similarly with the black humour: that which does not yet produce, as I say, this seething and fermentation on the ground, is natural, while that which has taken over this character and faculty is unnatural; it has assumed an acridity owing to the combustion caused by abnormal heat, and has practically become transformed into ashes. In somewhat the same way burned lees differ from unburned. The former is a warm substance, able to burn, dissolve, and destroy the flesh. The other kind, which has not yet undergone combustion, one may find the physicians employing for the same purposes that one uses the so-called potter's earth and other substances which have naturally a combined drying and chilling action.

Now the vitelline bile also may take on the appearance of this combusted black bile, if ever it chance to be roasted, so to say, by fiery heat. And all the other forms of bile are produced, some from a blending of those mentioned, others being, as it were, transition-stages in the genesis of these or in their conversion into one another. And they differ in that those first mentioned are unmixed and unique, while the latter forms are diluted with various kinds of serum. And all the serums in the humours are waste substances, and the animal body needs to be purified from them. There is, however, a natural use for the humours first mentioned, both thick and thin; the blood is purified both by the spleen and by the bladder beside the liver, and a part of each of the two humours is put away, of such quantity and

1 Thus over-roasting—shall we say excessive oxidation?—produces the abnormal forms of both black and yellow bile.
ὸλον ἡνέχθη τοῦ ζῶον τὸ σώμα, βλάβην ἀν τιν' εἰργάσατο. τὸ γὰρ ἰκανῶς παχὺ καὶ γεώδες καὶ τελέος διαπεφυγὸς τὴν ἐν τῷ ἤπατι μεταβολὴν ὁ σπλήν εἰς ἑαυτὸν ἔλκει. τὸ δ' ἄλλο τὸ μετρίως παχὺ σὺν τῷ κατειργάσθαι πάντῃ φέρεται. δεῖται γὰρ ἐν πολλοὶς τοῦ ζῶον μορίως παχύτητός τινος τὸ αἷμα καθάπερ οἴμαι καὶ τῶν ἕμφερομένων ἰνών. καὶ εἰρηται μὲν καὶ Πλάτωνι περὶ τῆς χρείας αὐτῶν, εἰρήσεται δὲ καὶ ἡμῖν ἐν ἑκείνως τοῖς γράμμασιν, ἐν οἷς ἀν τὰς χρείας τῶν μορίων διερχόμεθα· δεῖται δ' οὖν ἧκιστα καὶ τοῦ ξανθοῦ χυμοῦ τοῦ μῆτωπ πυρόδους ἐσχάτως γεγενημένου τὸ αἷμα καὶ τῆς αὐτῷ καὶ ἡ παρὰ τοῦτο χρεία, δὴ ἑκείνων εἰρήσεται.

Φλέγματος δ' οὔδεν ἐποίησεν ἡ φύσις ὅργανον καθαρτικόν, ὅτι ψυχρὸν καὶ υγρὸν ἐστὶ καὶ οἶον ἡμίπεπτός τις τροφή. δεῖται τοῖς οὐ κενοῦσθαι τὸ τοιοῦτον ἄλλα ἐν τῷ σώματι μένον ἀλλοιοῦσθαι. τὸ δ' ἐξ ἐγκεφάλου καταρρέουν περίττωμα τάχα μὲν ἀν οὐδὲ φλέγμα τις ὀρθῶς ἀλλὰ βλέπουν τε καὶ κόρυξαν, ὡσπερ οὖν καὶ ὀνομάζεται, καλοὶ. εἰ δὲ μή, ἀλλ' ὅτι γε τῆς τούτου κενόσεως ὀρθῶς ἡ φύσις προονήσατο, καὶ τούτ' ἐν τοῖς περὶ χρείας μορίων εἰρήσεται. καὶ γὰρ οὖν καὶ τὸ κατά τε τὴν γαστέρα καὶ τὸ ἐντερα χυμιστάμενον φλέγμα ὅπως ἀν ἐκκενωθῇ καὶ αὐτὸ τάχιστα τε καὶ κάλλιστα, τὸ παρεσκευασμένον τῇ φύσει μηχάνημα δὴ ἑκείνων εἰρήσεται καὶ αὐτὸ τῶν

1 cf. p. 277, note 2.
2 Timaeus, 82 c–d.
3 cf. p. 90, note 1. The term “catarrh” refers to this “running down,” which was supposed to take place through 214
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. ix

quality that, if it were carried all over the body, it would do a certain amount of harm. For that which is decidedly thick and earthy in nature, and has entirely escaped alteration in the liver, is drawn by the spleen into itself; the other part which is only moderately thick, after being elaborated [in the liver], is carried all over the body. For the blood in many parts of the body has need of a certain amount of thickening, as also, I take it, of the fibres which it contains. And the use of these has been discussed by Plato, and it will also be discussed by me in such of my treatises as may deal with the use of parts. And the blood also needs, not least, the yellow humour, which has as yet not reached the extreme stage of combustion; in the treatises mentioned it will be pointed out what purpose is subserved by this.

Now Nature has made no organ for clearing away phlegm, this being cold and moist, and, as it were, half-digested nutriment; such a substance, therefore, does not need to be evacuated, but remains in the body and undergoes alteration there. And perhaps one cannot properly give the name of phlegm to the surplus-substance which runs down from the brain, but one should call it mucus [blenna] or coryza—as, in fact, it is actually termed; in any case it will be pointed out, in the treatise "On the Use of Parts," how Nature has provided for the evacuation of this substance. Further, the device provided by Nature which ensures that the phlegm which forms in the stomach and intestines may be evacuated in the most rapid and effective way possible—this also will be described in that com-

the pores of the cribiform plate of the ethmoid into the nose.
140 ὑπομνήματος. ὡσον οὖν ἐμφέρεται ταῖς φλεψιν
φλέγμα χρήσιμον ὑπάρχον τοῖς ζῴωις, οὐδεμᾶς
deίται κενώσεως. προσέχειν δὲ χρὴ κάνταυθα
τὸν νοῦν καὶ γυγνώσκειν, ὡσπερ τῶν χολῶν
ἐκατέρας τὸ μὲν τι χρήσιμόν ἐστι καὶ κατὰ φύσιν
tοῖς ζῴωις, τὸ δ’ ἄχρηστόν τε καὶ παρὰ φύσιν,
οὔτω καὶ τοῦ φλέγματος, ὡσον μὲν ἂν ἡ γλυκύς,
χρηστὸν εἶναι τούτο τῷ ζῷῳ καὶ κατὰ φύσιν, ὡσον
δ’ ὄξυ καὶ ἀλμυρὸν ἐγένετο, τὸ μὲν ὄξυ τελέως
ἡπεττήθαι, τὸ δ’ ἀλμυρὸν διασεσῆθαι. τελείαν
δ’ ἀπευθίαν φλέγματος ἀκούειν χρὴ τὴν τῆς
dευτέρας πέψεως δηλοῦσι τῆς ἐν φλεψίν’ οὐ
γὰρ δὴ τῆς γε πρώτης τῆς κατὰ τὴν κοιλίαν·
ἡ οὖδ’ ἂν ἐγεγένητο τὴν ἀρχὴν χυμός, εἰ καὶ
ταύτην διεπεφέυγει.

Ταῦτ’ ἀρκεῖν μοι δοκεῖ περὶ γενέσεως τε καὶ
dιαφθορᾶς χυμῶν ὑπομνήματ’ εἶναι τῶν Ἰππο-
kράτει τε καὶ Πλάτωνι καὶ Ἀριστοτέλει καὶ
Πραξιγόρᾳ καὶ Διοκλεί καὶ πολλοῖς ἄλλοις τῶν
παλαιῶν εἰρημένων· οὐ γὰρ ἐδικαίωσα πάντα
μεταφέρειν εἰς τόνδε τὸν λόγον τὰ τελέως ἐκείνοις
γεγραμμένα. τοσοῦτον δὲ μόνον ὑπέρ ἐκάστου
141 εἶπον, ὡσον ἔξορμήσει τε τοὺς ἑνυπνχάνοντας,
eἰ μὴ παντάπασιν εἶνε σκαῖοι, τοῖς τῶν παλαιῶν
ὁμλήσαι γράμμασι καὶ τὴν εἰς τὸ ῥ(Me)ν αὐτοῖς
συνεῖναι βοήθειαν παρέξει. γέγραπται δὲ που
καὶ δι’ ἑτέρου λόγου περὶ τῶν κατὰ Πραξιγόρα
τὸν Νικάρχου χυμῶν. εἰ γὰρ καὶ ὅτι μάλιστα

216
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, II. ix

mentary. As to that portion of the phlegm which is carried in the veins, seeing that this is of service to the animal it requires no evacuation. Here too, then, we must pay attention and recognise that, just as in the case of each of the two kinds of bile, there is one part which is useful to the animal and in accordance with its nature, while the other part is useless and contrary to nature, so also is it with the phlegm; such of it as is sweet is useful to the animal and according to nature, while, as to such of it as has become bitter or salt, that part which is bitter is completely undigested, while that part which is salt has undergone putrefaction. And the term "complete indigestion" refers of course to the second digestion—that which takes place in the veins; it is not a failure of the first digestion—that in the alimentary canal—for it would not have become a humour at the outset if it had escaped this digestion also.

It seems to me that I have made enough reference to what has been said regarding the genesis and destruction of humours by Hippocrates, Plato, Aristotle, Praxagoras, and Diocles, and many others among the Ancients; I did not deem it right to transport the whole of their final pronouncements into this treatise. I have said only so much regarding each of the humours as will stir up the reader, unless he be absolutely inept, to make himself familiar with the writings of the Ancients, and will help him to gain more easy access to them. In another treatise ¹ I have written on the humours according to Praxagoras, son of Nicarchus; although this authority makes as many as ten humours, not

¹ Now lost.
déka poiei χωρίς τοῦ αἵματος, ἐνδέκατος γὰρ ἂν εἰ ἐρυμός αὐτὸ τὸ αἷμα, τῆς Ἰπποκράτους οὐκ ἀποχωρεῖ διδασκαλίας. ᾠλ' εἰς εἴδη τινὰ καὶ διαφορὰς τέμνει τοὺς ὑπ' ἐκείνου πρῶτου πάντων ἀμα ταῖς οὐκείαις ἀποδείξειν εἰρημένους χυμοὺς.

'Επιπείν μὲν οὖν χρῆ τοὺς τ' ἐξηγησαμένους τὰ καλῶς εἰρημένα καὶ τοὺς εἰ τι παραλέλειπται προστιθέντας: οὐ γὰρ οἶον τε τὸν αὐτὸν ἀρξασθαί τε καὶ τελείωσαι: μέμφεσθαι δὲ τοὺς οὕτως ἀταλαίπωρους, ὡς μηδὲν ὑπομένειν μαθεῖν τῶν ὀρθῶς εἰρημένων, καὶ τοὺς εἰς τοσοῦτον φιλοστί-μους, ὡςτ' ἐπιθυμία νεωτέρων δογμάτων ἂεὶ πανουργεῖν τι καὶ σοφίζεσθαι, τὰ μὲν ἐκόντας παραλιπόντας, ὡσπερ Ἐρασίστρατος ἐπὶ τῶν χυμῶν ἐποίησε, τὰ δὲ παύσυργως ἀντιλέγοντας, ὡσπερ αὐτὸς θ' οὕτως καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῶν νεωτέρων.

'Αλλ' οὕτως μὲν ὁ λόγος ἑνταυθῆ ὑπενεντάτω, τὸ δ' ὑπόλοιπον ἀπαν ἐν τῷ τρίτῳ προσθήσω.
including the blood (the blood itself being an eleventh), this is not a departure from the teaching of Hippocrates; for Praxagoras divides into species and varieties the humours which Hippocrates first mentioned, with the demonstration proper to each.

Those, then, are to be praised who explain the points which have been duly mentioned, as also those who add what has been left out; for it is not possible for the same man to make both a beginning and an end. Those, on the other hand, deserve censure who are so impatient that they will not wait to learn any of the things which have been duly mentioned, as do also those who are so ambitious that, in their lust after novel doctrines, they are always attempting some fraudulent sophistry, either purposely neglecting certain subjects, as Erasistratus does in the case of the humours, or unscrupulously attacking other people, as does this same writer, as well as many of the more recent authorities.

But let this discussion come to an end here, and I shall add in the third book all that remains.
BOOK III
Γ

Ι

143 "Οτι μὲν οὖν ἡ θρέψις ἀλλοιουμένου τε καὶ ὁμοιουμένου γίγνεται τοῦ τρέφοντος τῷ τρέφο-
μένῳ καὶ ὡς ἐν ἐκάστῳ τῶν τοῦ ζῴου μορίων ἐστὶ τις δύναμις, ἣν ἀπὸ τῆς ἐνεργείας ἀλλοιω-
τικῆς μὲν κατὰ γένος, ὁμοιωτικῆς δὲ καὶ θρε-
πτικῆς κατ’ εἶδος ὀνομάζομεν, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν 
dedήλωται λόγῳ. τὴν δ’ εὐπορίαν τῆς ὕλης, ἢν 
tροφὴν ἑαυτῷ ποιεῖται τὸ τρεφόμενον, ἕξ ἐτέρας 
tινός ἔχειν ἐδείκνυτο δυνάμεως ἐπιστᾶσθαι 
πεφυκίας τὸν οἴκειον χυμὸν, εἰναι δ’ οἴκειον
144 ἐκάστῳ τῶν μορίων χυμοῖν, δ’ ἃν ἐπιτήδειον 
eis τὴν ἐξομοίωσιν ἢ, καὶ τὴν ἑλκοῦσαν αὐτὸν 
dύναμιν ἀπὸ τῆς ἐνεργείας ἐλκτικῆς τῇ τινα καὶ 
ἐπισταστικῆς ὀνομάζεσθαι. δεδεικται δὲ ὡς 
πρὸ μὲν τῆς ὁμοιότητος ἢ πρόσφυσις ἐστιν, 
ἐκείνης δ’ ἐμπροσθεν ἡ πρόσθεσις γίγνεται, τέλος, 
ὡς ἀν εἴποι τις, οὕσα τῆς κατὰ τὴν ἐπισταστικῆς 
dύναμιν ἐνεργείας. αὐτὸ μὲν γὰρ τὸ παράγεσθαι 
tὴν τροφὴν ἐκ τῶν φλεβῶν εἰς ἐκαστὸν τῶν 
μορίων τῆς ἐλκτικῆς ἐνεργούσης γίγνεται δυνά-

¹ "Of food to feeder," i.e. of the environment to the organism. cf. p. 39, chap. xi.

222
BOOK III

I

It has been made clear in the preceding discussion that nutrition occurs by an alteration or assimilation of that which nourishes to that which receives nourishment, and that there exists in every part of the animal a faculty which in view of its activity we call, in general terms, alterative, or, more specifically, assimilative and nutritive. It was also shown that a sufficient supply of the matter which the part being nourished makes into nutriment for itself is ensured by virtue of another faculty which naturally attracts its proper juice [humour] that that juice is proper to each part which is adapted for assimilation, and that the faculty which attracts the juice is called, by reason of its activity, attractive or epispastic. It has also been shown that assimilation is preceded by adhesion, and this, again, by presentation, the latter stage being, as one might say, the end or goal of the activity corresponding to the attractive faculty. For the actual bringing up of nutriment from the veins into each of the parts takes place through the activation of the attractive faculty, whilst to

3 For these terms (prosthenosis and prophyisis in Greek) cf. p. 39, notes 5 and 6.
4 Lit. "through the energizing (or functioning) of the attractive faculty"; the faculty (δύναμις) in operation is an activity (ἐνέργεια). cf. p. 3, note 2.

223
GALEN

μεση, τὸ δ’ ἦδη παρῆχθαι τε καὶ προστίθεσθαι τῷ μορίῳ τὸ τέλος ἐστὶν αὐτό, δι’ ὃ καὶ τῆς τοιαύτης ἐνεργείας ἐδεήθημεν· ἵνα γὰρ προστεθῇ, διὰ τοῦθ’ ἐλκεται. χρόνου δ’ ἐντεῦθεν ἦδη πλείονος εἰς τὴν θρέψιν τοῦ ζῴου δει· ἐλχθῆναι μὲν γὰρ καὶ διὰ ταχέων τι δύναται, προσφύναι δὲ καὶ ἀλλοωθῆναι καὶ τελέως ὁμοιωθῆναι τῷ τρέφομένῳ καὶ μέρος αὐτοῦ γενέσθαι παραχρῆμα μὲν οὐχ οἶνον τε, χρόνῳ δ’ ἀν πλείονι συμβαίνοι καλῶς. ἀλλ’ εἰ μὴ μένοι κατὰ τὸ μέρος ὁ προστεθεὶς οὕτως χυμός, εἰς ἑτέρων δὲ τι μεθίστατο καὶ παραρρέοι διὰ παντὸς ἀμείβων τε καὶ ὑπαλ-145 λάττων τὰ χωρία, κατ’ οὔδεν αὐτῶν· ὥστε πρόσ-φυσις οὕτ’ ἔξομοιωσις ἦσται. δεὶ δὲ κάνταυθά τινος τῇ φύσιν δυνάμεως ἐτέρας εἰς πολυχρώμιον μονὴν τοῦ προστεθέντος τῷ μορίῳ χυμοῦ καὶ ταύτης οὐκ ἔξωθεν ποθὲν ἐπιρρεοῦσης ἀλλ’ ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ θρεψομένῳ κατακισμένῃ, ἵνα ἀπὸ τῆς ἐνεργείας πάλιν οἱ πρὸ ἡμῶν ἠγακάσθησαν ὄνο-μάσαι καθεκτικῆν.

Ὁ μὲν δὴ λόγος ἦδη σαφῶς ἐνεδείξατο τὴν ἀνάγκην τῆς γενέσεως τῆς τοιαύτης δυνάμεως καὶ ὅστις ἀκολουθίας σύνεσιν ἔχει, πέπεισται βεβαῖως ἐξ ὧν εἴπομεν, ὡς ὑποκειμένου τε καὶ προαποδεδειγμένου τοῦ τεχνικῆς εἶναι τὴν φύσιν καὶ τοῦ ζῴου κηδεμοικήν ἄναγκασον ὑπάρχειν αὐτῇ καὶ τὴν τοιαύτην δύναμιν.

224
have been finally brought up and presented to the part is the actual end for which we desired such an activity; it is attracted in order that it may be presented. After this, considerable time is needed for the nutrition of the animal; whilst a thing may be even rapidly attracted, on the other hand to become adherent, altered, and entirely assimilated to the part which is being nourished and to become a part of it, cannot take place suddenly, but requires a considerable amount of time. But if the nutritive juice, so presented, does not remain in the part, but withdraws to another one, and keeps flowing away, and constantly changing and shifting its position, neither adhesion nor complete assimilation will take place in any of them. Here too, then, the [animal’s] nature has need of some other faculty for ensuring a prolonged stay of the presented juice at the part, and this not a faculty which comes in from somewhere outside but one which is resident in the part which is to be nourished. This faculty, again, in view of its activity our predecessors were obliged to call retentive.

Thus our argument has clearly shown the necessity for the genesis of such a faculty, and whoever has an appreciation of logical sequence must be firmly persuaded from what we have said that, if it be laid down and proved by previous demonstration that Nature is artistic and solicitous for the animal’s welfare, it necessarily follows that she must also possess a faculty of this kind.

1 This chapter is an excellent example of Galen’s method of reasoning a priori. The complementary inductive method, however, is employed in the next chapter. cf. p. 209, note 1.
'Αλλ' ἡμεῖς οὐ τούτῳ μόνῳ τῷ γένει τῆς ἀπο-
δείξεως εἰθισμένοι χρῆσθαι, προστιθέντες δ' αὐτῷ
καὶ τάς ἐκ τῶν ἑναργώς φαινομένων ἀναγκαζούσας
τε καὶ βιαζομένας πίστεις ἐπὶ τὰς τοιαύτας καὶ
νῦν ἀφιξόμεθα καὶ δείξομεν ἐπὶ μὲν τινῶν μορίων
τοῦ σώματος οὔτως ἑναργῇ τὴν καθεκτικὴν δύ-
146ναμίν, ὡς αὐταίς ταῖς αἰσθήσεις || διαγιγνώ-
σκεσθαι τὴν ἑνέργειαν αὐτῆς, ἐπὶ δὲ τινῶν ἦττου
μὲν ἑναργῶς ταῖς αἰσθήσεις, λόγῳ δὲ κἀνταῦθα
φωράθηναι δυναμένην.

'Αρξώμεθ' οὖν τῆς διδασκαλίας ἀπ' αὐτοῦ τοῦ
τέως πρῶτον μεθ' ὅλως τινὶ προχειρίσασθαι μόρι
ἀτα τοῦ σώματος, ἐφ' ὃν ἀκριβῶς ἔστι βασανί-
σαι τε καὶ ζητήσαι τὴν καθεκτικὴν δύναμιν ὑποία
ποτ' ἐστίν.

'Αρ' οὖν ἀμεινὸν ἂν τῆς ἐπέρωθεν ἢ ἀπὸ τῶν
μεγίστων τε καὶ κοιλοτάτων ὀργάνων ὑπάρξαι τὸ
ἡς ζητήσεως; ἐμοὶ μὲν οὖν οὐκ ἂν δοκεῖ βέλτιον.
ἐναργεῖσι γοῦν εἰκὸς ἐπί τούτων φανῆσαι τὰς ἑνε-
ργεῖας διὰ τὸ μέγεθος· ὡς τὰ γε σμικρὰ τὰ χ' ἂν,
εἰ καὶ σφοδρὰν ἤχει τὴν τοιαύτην δύναμιν, ἀλλ' οὖν
αἰσθήσεις χ' ἐτοίμην διαγιγνώσκεσθαι τὴν
ἐνέργειαν αὐτῆς.

'Αλλ' ἐστίν ἐν τοῖς μάλιστα κοιλοτάτα καὶ μέ-
γιστα τῶν τοῦ ζύφου μορίων ἢ τε γαστῆρ καὶ <αἰ>
μήτραι τε καὶ υστέραι καλομέναι. τί οὖν κωλύει
ταῦτα πρῶτα προχειρισαμένους ἐπισκέψασθαι
τὰς ἑνεργείας αὐτῶν, ὅσιρ μὲν καὶ πρὸ τῆς ἀνατομῆς

1 The deductive.
2 The logos is the argument or "theory" arrived at by the
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III.

II

Since, however, it is not our habit to employ this kind of demonstration alone, but to add thereto cogent and compelling proofs drawn from obvious facts, we will also proceed to the latter kind in the present instance: we will demonstrate that in certain parts of the body the retentive faculty is so obvious that its operation can be actually recognised by the senses, whilst in other parts it is less obvious to the senses, but is capable even here of being detected by the argument.\footnote{The Greek words for the uterus (métrae and hysterae) probably owe their plural form to the belief that the organ was bicornuate in the human, as it is in some of the lower species.}

Let us begin our exposition, then, by first dealing systematically for a while with certain definite parts of the body, in reference to which we may accurately test and enquire what sort of thing the retentive faculty is.

Now, could one begin the enquiry in any better way than with the largest and hollowest organs? Personally I do not think one could. It is to be expected that in these, owing to their size, the activities will show quite clearly, whereas with respect to the small organs, even if they possess a strong faculty of this kind, its activation will not at once be recognisable to sense.

Now those parts of the animal which are especially hollow and large are the stomach and the organ which is called the womb or uterus.\footnote{cf. p. 151, note 3; p. 205, note 1.} What prevents us, then, from taking up these first and considering their activities, conducting the enquiry on our own process of ἀργυχθεωρία or "theorizing"; cf. p. 151, note 3; p. 205, note 1.
GALEN

δήλαν, τὴν ἔξετασιν ἐφ’ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν ποιωμένους, ὀσαι δ’ ἀμφότεραι, τὰ παραπλήσια διαίροντας

147 ἀνθρώπῳ ξύφα, || οὐχ ὃς οὐκ ἅν ἰκανῶς τὸ γε καθόλου περὶ τῆς ξητουμένης δυνάμεως καὶ τῶν ἀνομολῶν ἐνδειξομένων, ἀλλ’ ὃς ἐν ἁμα τῷ κοινῷ καὶ τῷ ίδιον ἐφ’ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν ἐγγυωκότες εἰς τε τὰς διαγνώσεις τῶν νοσημάτων καὶ τὰς ἱάσεις εὐ-

πορώτεροι γιγανώμεθα.

Περὶ μὲν οὖν ἀμφοτέρων τῶν ὀργάνων ἀμα λέγειν ἀδύνατον, ἐν μέρει δ’ ὑπὲρ ἐκατέρου ποιησόμεθα τὸν λόγον ἀπὸ τοῦ σαφέστερον ἐνδείξασθαί δυναμένον τὴν καθεκτικὴν δύναμιν ἀρξάμενοι. κατέχει μὲν γὰρ καὶ ἡ γαστήρ τὰ σιτία, μέχρι περὶ ἀν ἐκπέψῃ, κατέχουσι δὲ καὶ ἀι μὴ τρια τὸ ἐμβρύον, ἐστὶν ἀν τελείωσωσιν ἀλλὰ πολλαπλάσιος ἔστιν ὁ τῆς τῶν ἐμβρύων τελείω-

σεως χρόνος τῆς τῶν σιτίων πέψεως.

III

Εἰκὸς οὖν καὶ τὴν δύναμιν ἐναργείστερον ἐν ταῖς μῆτραις φωράσεων ἡμᾶς τὴν καθεκτικὴν, ὅσω καὶ πολυχρονιστέραν τῆς γαστρὸς τὴν ἐνέργειαν κέκτηται. μησὶ γὰρ ἐννέα που ταῖς πλείσταις τῶν γυναικῶν ἐν αὐτάς τελειοῦται τὰ κυνῆτα, μεμυκίαις μὲν ἀπαντὶ τῷ αὐχένι, περιεχούσαις δὲ πανταχόθεν αὐτὰ συν τῷ χορίῳ. ||

148 καὶ πέρας γε τῆς τοῦ στόματος μύσεως καὶ τῆς τοῦ κυομένου κατὰ τὰς μῆτρας μονῆς ἡ χρεία τῆς ἐνεργείας ἐστίν. οὔ γὰρ ὡς ἐτυχείν οὐδ’ ἀλόγως ἰκανᾶς περιστέλλεσθαι καὶ κατέχειν τὸ

228
persons in regard to those activities which are obvious without dissection, and in the case of those which are more obscure, dissecting animals which are near to man;¹ not that even animals unlike him will not show, in a general way, the faculty in question, but because in this manner we may find out at once what is common to all and what is peculiar to ourselves, and so may become more resourceful in the diagnosis and treatment of disease.

Now it is impossible to speak of both organs at once, so we shall deal with each in turn, beginning with the one which is capable of demonstrating the retentive faculty most plainly. For the stomach retains the food until it has quite digested it, and the uterus retains the embryo until it brings it to completion, but the time taken for the completion of the embryo is many times more than that for the digestion of food.

III

We may expect, then, to detect the retentive faculty in the uterus more clearly in proportion to the longer duration of its activity as compared with that of the stomach. For, as we know, it takes nine months in most women for the foetus to attain maturity in the womb, this organ having its neck quite closed, and entirely surrounding the embryo together with the chorion. Further, it is the utility of the function which determines the closure of the os and the stay of the foetus in the uterus. For it is not casually nor without reason that Nature has made

¹ Note this expression. For Galen's views on the origin of species, cf. Introduction, p. xxxi., footnote.
GALEN

έμβρυον ἡ φύσις ἀπειργασατό τὰς ύστερας, ἀλλ' ἵν' εἰς τὸ πρέπον ἀφίκηται μέγεθος τὸ κυνούμενον. δηλαδή, οὔ ἐγὼ ἐνήργησα τῇ καθεκτικῇ δύναμι, συμπεπληρωμένον ἔ, ταύτην μὲν ἀνέπαυσάν τε καὶ εἰς ἑρμήνευσην ἔπανῃγαγὼν, ἀν' αὕτης δ' ἐτέρα χρώνται τῇ τεώς ἡσυχαζούση, τῇ πρωστικῇ. ἦν δ' ἄρα καὶ τῆς ἐκείνης ἡσυχίας ὅρος ἡ χρεία καὶ τῆς γ' ἐνεργείας ὁσαύτως ἡ χρεία: καλουόντος μὲν γὰρ αὕτης ἐνεργεῖ, μή καλούσης δ' ἡσυχάζει.

Καὶ χρῆ πάλιν κανταύθα γαταμαθεῖν τῆς φύσεως τὴν τέχνην, ὅς οὗ μόνον ἐνεργείων χρησίμων δυνάμεις ἐνέθηκεν ἐκάστῳ τῶν ὀργάνων, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῦ τῶν ἡσυχίων τε καὶ κινήσεων καιροῦ προοιμίσατο, καλῶς μὲν γὰρ ἀπάντων γεγομένων τῶν κατὰ τὴν κύριον ἡ ἀποκριτική δύναμις ἡσυχάζει τελέως ὡσπερ οὐκ ὄσον, κακοπραγίας δὲ τινὸς γενομένης ἢ περὶ τὸ χορίον ἢ περὶ τινα τῶν ἀλλών ἢ ύμενον ἢ περὶ τὸ κυνούμενον αὐτὸ καὶ τῆς τελείώσεως αὐτοῦ παντάπασιν ἀπογρωσθείσης οὐκέτ' ἀναμένουσι τὸν ἐνυψάμηνον αἱ μὴ τραί χρόνον, ἀλλ' ἡ μὲν καθεκτική δύναμις αὐτίκα δὴ πέπαυται καὶ παραχωρεῖ κινεῖται τῇ πρότερον ἁργούσῃ, πράττει δ' ἡδη τι καὶ πραγματεύεται χρηστῶν ἡ ἀποκριτικὴ τῇ καὶ πρωστικῇ, καὶ γὰρ οὖν καὶ ταύτην οὕτως ἐκάλεσαν ἀπὸ τῶν ἐνεργείων αὐτῆς τὰ ὁνόματα θέμενοι καθάπερ καὶ ταῖς ἄλλαις.

Καὶ πῶς ὁ λόγος ἑοίκειν ὑπὲρ ἀμφοτέρων ἀποδείξειν ἀμα' καὶ γὰρ τοι καὶ διαδεχομένας αὐτὰς ἀλλήλας καὶ παραχωροῦσαν ἀεὶ τὴν ἐτέραν τῇ λοιπῇ, καθότι ἀν ἡ χρεία κελεύῃ, καὶ

230
the uterus capable of contracting upon, and of retaining the embryo, but in order that the latter may arrive at a proper size. When, therefore, the object for which the uterus brought its retentive faculty into play has been fulfilled, it then stops this faculty and brings it back to a state of rest, and employs instead of it another faculty hitherto quiescent—the propulsive faculty. In this case again the quiescent and active states are both determined by utility; when this calls, there is activity; when it does not, there is rest.

Here, then, once more, we must observe well the Art [artistic tendency] of Nature—how she has not merely placed in each organ the capabilities of useful activities, but has also fore-ordained the times both of rest and movement. For when everything connected with the pregnancy proceeds properly, the eliminative faculty remains quiescent as though it did not exist, but if anything goes wrong in connection either with the chorion or any of the other membranes or with the foetus itself, and its completion is entirely despaired of, then the uterus no longer awaits the nine-months period, but the retentive faculty forthwith ceases and allows the heretofore inoperative faculty to come into action. Now it is that something is done—in fact, useful work effected—by the eliminative or propulsive faculty (for so it, too, has been called, receiving, like the rest, its names from the corresponding activities).

Further, our theory can, I think, demonstrate both together; for seeing that they succeed each other, and that the one keeps giving place to the other according as utility demands, it seems not unreason-
GALEN

τὴν διδασκαλίαν κοινὴν οὐκ ἀπεικόσ ἐστι δέχεσθαι. τῆς μὲν οὖν καθεκτικῆς δυνάμεως ἔργον περιστείλαι τὰς μήτρας τῷ κυομένῳ πανταχόθεν, ὥστε εὐλόγως ἀπτομέναις μὲν ταῖς μαίευτρίαις τὸ στόμα μεμυκὸς αὐτῶν φαίνεται, ταῖς κυοῦσις δ’ αὐταῖς κατὰ τὰς πρώτας ἡμέρας καὶ μάλιστα κατ’ αὐτὴν ἐκείνην, ἐν ἦπερ ἢν ἡ τῆς γονής σύλληψις γένηται, κυομένων τε καὶ συν-150 τρεχούσων εἰς ἑαυτὰς τῶν υστερῶν αἰσθητής γίνεται καὶ ἢν ἁμφοτερα ταῦτα συμβῇ, μύσαι μὲν τὸ στόμα χωρὶς φλεγμονής ἢ τινος ἀλλοῦ παθήματος, αἰσθητῷ δὲ τῆς κατὰ τὰς μήτρας κυνήσεως ἀκολουθήσαι, πρὸς αὐτὰς ἢδη τὸ σπέρμα τὸ παρὰ τάνδρος εἰληφεῖν τε καὶ κατέχειν αἱ γυναῖκες νομίζοντο.

Ταῦτα δ’ οὐχ ἡμεῖς νῦν ἀναπλάττομεν ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς, ἀλλ’ ἐκ μακρᾶς πείρας δοκιμασθέντα πᾶσι γέγραπται σχεδὸν τι τοῖς περὶ τούτων πραγματευσαμένοις. Ἡρόφιλος μὲν γε καὶ ὡς οὐδὲ πυρῆνα μῆλης ἄν δέχοιτο τῶν μητρῶν τὸ στόμα, πρὶν ἀποκυνεὶν τὴν γυναῖκα, καὶ ὡς οὐδὲ τούλαχιστον ἐτί διέστηκεν, ἢν ὑπάρξῃται κύειν, καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ πλέον ἀναστομοῦνται κατὰ τὰς τῶν ἐπιμημώνων φοράς, οὐκ ἄκυνσε γράφειν συνομολογοῦσι δ’ αὐτῷ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες οἱ περὶ τούτων πραγματευσάμενοι καὶ πρῶτος ἡ ἀπάντων ἰατρῶν τε καὶ φιλοσόφων Ἰπποκράτης ἀπεφήνατο μένειν τὸ στόμα τῶν υστερῶν ἐν τε ταῖς κυνήσει καὶ ταῖς φλεγμοναῖς, ἀλλ’ ἐν μὲν ταῖς κυνήσεωι οὐκ ἐξιστάμενοι τῆς φύσεως, ἐν δὲ ταῖς φλεγμοναῖς σκληρῶν γεγόμενον.

232
able to accept a common demonstration also for both. Thus it is the work of the retentive faculty to make the uterus contract upon the foetus at every point, so that, naturally enough, when the midwives palpate it, the os is found to be closed, whilst the pregnant women themselves, during the first days—and particularly on that on which conception takes place—experience a sensation as if the uterus were moving and contracting upon itself. Now, if both of these things occur—if the os closes apart from inflammation or any other disease, and if this is accompanied by a feeling of movement in the uterus—then the women believe that they have received the semen which comes from the male, and that they are retaining it.

Now we are not inventing this for ourselves: one may say the statement is based on prolonged experience of those who occupy themselves with such matters. Thus Herophilus does not hesitate to state in his writings that up to the time of labour the os uteri will not admit so much as the tip of a probe, that it no longer opens to the slightest degree if pregnancy has begun—that, in fact, it dilates more widely at the times of the menstrual flow. With him are in agreement all the others who have applied themselves to this subject; and particularly Hippocrates, who was the first of all physicians and philosophers to declare that the os uteri closes during pregnancy and inflammation, albeit in pregnancy it does not depart from its own nature, whilst in inflammation it becomes hard.

1 Herophilus of Chalcedon (circa 300 B.C.) was, like Erasistratus, a representative of the anatomical school of Alexandria. His book on Midwifery was known for centuries. cf. Introduction, p. xii.
ΓΑΛΕΝ

Επὶ δὲ γε τῆς έναντίας τῆς ἐκκριτικῆς ἀνοίγυναι μὲν τὸ στόμα, προέρχεται δ' ὁ πυθμέν ἐπὶ 151 ἀπας ὃσον οἶον τ' ἐγγυτάτω τοῦ στόματος ἀπωθούμενος ἔξω τὸ ἐμβρυον, ἀμα δ' αὐτῷ καὶ τὰ συνεχὴ μέρη τὰ οἶον πλευρὰ τοῦ παντὸς ὀργάνου συνεπιλαμβανόμενα τοῦ ἔργου θλίβει τε καὶ πρωθεὶ πάν ἔξω τὸ ἐμβρυον. καὶ πολλαὶ τῶν γυναικῶν ὁδῆνε βίαιοι τὰς μήτρας ὅλας ἐκπεσεῖν ἡνάγκασαν ἀμέτρως χρησάμεναι τῇ τοιαύτῃ δυνάμει, παραπλησίου τινὸς γυνομένου τῷ πολλάκις ἐν πάλαις τις καὶ φιλόνεικίας συμβαίνοντι, ὅταν ἀνατρέψαι τε καὶ καταβαλεῖν ἑτέρους σπεύδοντες αὐτῷ συγκαταπέσωμεν. οὕτω γὰρ καὶ αἱ μήτραι τὸ ἐμβρυον ὠδοῦσαι συνεξέψεσον ἐνίστῃ καὶ μάλιστ' ὅταν οἱ πρὸς τὴν ῥάχιν αὐτῶν σύνδεσμοι χαλαροῖ φύσει τυγχάνωσιν ὄντες.

Ἐστὶ δὲ καὶ τοῦτο θαυμαστόν τι τῆς φύσεως σόφισμα, τὸ ξώντος μὲν τοῦ κυήματος ἀκριβῶς πάνω μεμυκέναι τὸ στόμα τῶν μητρῶν, ἀποθανόντος δὲ παραχρῆμα διανοίγεσθαι τοσοῦτον, ὅσον εἰς τὴν ἔξοδον αὐτοῦ διαφέρει. καὶ μέντοι καὶ αἱ μαίαι τὰς τικτούσας οὐκ εὐθὺς ἀνιστάσων οὐδ' ἐπί τῶν δίφρον καθίζουσιν, ἀλλ' ἀπτονται 152 πρότερον ἀνουγμένου τοῦ στόματος καὶ βραχὺ καὶ πρώτον μὲν, ὡστε τὸν μικρὸν δάκτυλον καθίειν, διεστηκέναι φασίν, ἐπεὶ ἦδη καὶ μείζον καὶ κατα βραχὺ δὴ πυνθανομένοις ἦμιν ἀποκρίνονται τὸ μέγεθος τῆς διαστάσεως ἐπαν-

ξανόμενον. ὅταν δ' ἰκανὸν ἐπὶ πρὸς τὴν τοῦ κυομένου δίοδον, ἀνιστάσων αὐτὰς καὶ καθίζουσι
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III.

In the case of the opposite (the eliminative) faculty, the os opens, whilst the whole fundus approaches as near as possible to the os, expelling the embryo as it does so; and along with the fundus the contiguous parts—which form as it were a girdle round the whole organ—co-operate in the work; they squeeze upon the embryo and propel it bodily outwards. And, in many women who exercise such a faculty immoderately, violent pains cause forcible prolapse of the whole womb; here almost the same thing happens as frequently occurs in wrestling-bouts and struggles, when in our eagerness to overturn and throw others we are ourselves upset along with them; for similarly when the uterus is forcing the embryo forward it sometimes becomes entirely prolapsed, and particularly when the ligaments connecting it with the spine happen to be naturally lax.¹

A wonderful device of Nature's also is this—that, when the foetus is alive, the os uteri is closed with perfect accuracy, but if it dies, the os at once opens up to the extent which is necessary for the foetus to make its exit. The midwife, however, does not make the parturient woman get up at once and sit down on the [obstetric] chair, but she begins by palpating the os as it gradually dilates, and the first thing she says is that it has dilated "enough to admit the little finger," then that "it is bigger now," and as we make enquiries from time to time, she answers that the size of the dilatation is increasing. And when it is sufficient to allow of the transit of the foetus,² she then makes the patient get up from her bed and

¹ Relaxation of utero-sacral ligaments as an important predisposing cause of prolapsus uteri.
² That is, at the end of the first stage of labour.

235
GALEN

καὶ προθυμεῖται κελεύουσιν ἀπώσασθαι τὸ παιδίον. ἔστι δὲ ἥδη τούτο τὸ ἔργον, δὲ παρ' ἐαυτῶν αἱ κύουσαι προσπιθέασιν, οὐκέτι τῶν υστερῶν, ἀλλὰ τῶν κατ' ἐπιγάστριον μνών, οἱ πρὸς τὴν ἀποπάτησίν τε καὶ τὴν οὐρησίν ἥμιν συνεργοῦσιν.

IV

Οὕτω μὲν ἐπὶ τῶν μητρῶν ἐναργῶς αἱ δύο φαίνονται δυνάμεις, ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς γαστρὸς ὦδε. πρῶτον μὲν τοῖς κλύδωσιν, οἱ δὴ καὶ πεπίστευνται τοῖς ἰατροῖς ἀρρώστου κοιλίας εἶναι συμπτώματα καὶ κατὰ λόγον πεπίστευνται· ἐνίοτε μὲν γὰρ ἐλάχιστα προσενηγμένων οὐ γέγονεν περιστελλομένης ἀκριβῶς αὐτοῖς τῆς γαστρὸς καὶ σφυγγούσης πανταχόθεν, ἐνίοτε δὲ μεστή μὲν ἢ 153 γαστήρ ἐστιν, οἱ κλύδωνες δ' ὡς ἐπὶ κενὴς ἐξακούονται. κατὰ φύσιν μὲν γὰρ ἔχουσα καὶ χρωμένη καλῶς τῇ περισταλτικῇ δυνάμει, κἂν ὀλύγον ἢ τὸ περιεχόμενον, ἀπαν αὐτὸ περιλαμβάνουσα χώραν οὐδεμίαν ἀπολέει κενὴν, ἀρρωστοῦσα δὲ, καθότι ἄν ἁδυνατήσῃ περιλαβεῖν ἀκριβῶς, ἐνταῦθ' εὐρυχωρίᾳ τιν' ἐργαζομένη συγχωρεῖ τοῖς περιεχόμενοι ύγροῖς κατὰ τὰς τῶν σχημάτων μεταλλαγὰς ἄλλοτ' ἀλλαχόσε μεταρρέουσι κλύδωνας ἀποτελεῖν.

Εὖλόγως οὖν, ὅτι μηδὲ πέψουσιν ἰκανῶς, οἱ ἐν τῶδε τῷ συμπτώματι γενόμενοι προσδοκῶσιν· οὐ γὰρ ἐνδέχεται πέψαι καλῶς ἀρρώστον γαστέρα. τοῖς τοιούτοις δὲ καὶ μέχρι πλείονος ἐν αὐτῇ 236
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. III.—IV

sit on the chair, and bids her make every effort to expel the child. Now, this additional work which the patient does of herself is no longer the work of the uterus but of the epigastric muscles, which also help us in defaecation and micturition.

IV

Thus the two faculties are clearly to be seen in the case of the uterus; in the case of the stomach they appear as follows:—Firstly in the condition of gurgling, which physicians are persuaded, and with reason, to be a symptom of weakness of the stomach; for sometimes when the very smallest quantity of food has been ingested this does not occur, owing to the fact that the stomach is contracting accurately upon the food and constricting it at every point; sometimes when the stomach is full the gurglings yet make themselves heard as though it were empty. For if it be in a natural condition, employing its contractile faculty in the ordinary way, then, even if its contents be very small, it grasps the whole of them and does not leave any empty space. When it is weak, however, being unable to lay hold of its contents accurately, it produces a certain amount of vacant space, and allows the liquid contents to flow about in different directions in accordance with its changes of shape, and so to produce gurglings.

Thus those who are troubled with this symptom expect, with good reason, that they will also be unable to digest adequately; proper digestion cannot take place in a weak stomach. In such people also, the mass of food may be plainly seen to remain
1 The pylorus.

238
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. iv

an abnormally long time in the stomach, as would be natural if their digestion were slow. Indeed, the chief way in which these people will surprise one is in the length of time that not food alone but even fluids will remain in their stomachs. Now, the actual cause of this is not, as one would imagine, that the lower outlet of the stomach,¹ being fairly narrow, will allow nothing to pass before being reduced to a fine state of division. There are a great many people who frequently swallow large quantities of big fruit-stones; one person, who was holding a gold ring in his mouth, inadvertently swallowed it; another swallowed a coin, and various people have swallowed various hard and indigestible objects; yet all these people easily passed by the bowel what they had swallowed, without there being any subsequent symptoms. Now surely if narrowness of the gastric outlet were the cause of untriturated food remaining for an abnormally long time, none of these articles I have mentioned would ever have escaped. Furthermore, the fact that it is liquids which remain longest in these people’s stomachs is sufficient to put the idea of narrowness of the outlet out of court. For, supposing a rapid descent were dependent upon emulsification,² then soups, milk, and barley-emulsion³ would at once pass along in every case. But as a matter of fact this is not so. For in people who are extremely asthenic it is just these fluids which remain undigested, which accumulate and produce gurglings, and which oppress and overload the stomach, whereas in strong persons not merely do none of these things happen, but even a large quantity of bread or meat passes rapidly down.

¹ Lit. barley-“chyle,” i.e. barley-water.

239
GALEN

Οὐ μόνον δ’ ἐκ τοῦ περιτετάσθαι τὴν γαστέρα
καὶ βαρύνεσθαι || καὶ μεταρρεῖν ἄλλοτ’ εἰς ἄλλα
μέρη μετὰ κλύδωνος τὸ παραμένειν ἐπὶ πλέον ἐν
αὐτῇ πάντως τοῖς οὔτως ἔχουσι τεκμηρίατ’ ἀν
tὶς ἄλλα κἂν τῶν ἐμέτων’ ἐνιοῦ γὰρ οὐ μετα
τρεῖς ὠρας ἢ τέτταρας ἄλλα νυκτῶν ἦδη μέσων
παμπόλλου μεταξὺ χρόνου διελθότοι ἐπὶ ταῖς
προσφοραῖς ἀνήμεσαν ἀκριβῶς ἀπαντᾷ τὰ ἐδη-
δεσμένα.

Καὶ μὲν δὴ καὶ ξύρον ὅτι οὕτω ἐμπλήσας ὑγρᾶς
τροφῆς, ὡσπερ ἡμεῖς πολλάκις ἐπὶ συνὸν ἐπειρά-
θημεν εξ ἀλεύρων μὲθ’ ὕδατος οἷον κυκεών τινα
dόντες αὐτοῖς, ἔπειτα μετὰ τρεῖς ποὺ καὶ τέτταρας
ὡρας ἀνατεμόντες, εἰ οὔτω καὶ σὺ πράξειας,
εὐρήσεις ἔτι κατὰ τὴν γαστέρα τὰ ἐδηδεσμένα;
πέρας γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἐστὶ τῆς ἑυταύθα μονῆς ὅψιν
χύλωσις, ἢν καὶ ἐκτὸς ἐτὶ οὖτων μηχανήσασθαι
δυνατὸν ἐστίν, ἀλλ’ ἡ πέψις, ἐτερον τι τῆς χυλώ-
ςεως οὔσα, καθάπερ αἰματώσις τε καὶ θρέψις.
ὡς γὰρ κάκείνα διδείκται ποιοτήτων μεταβολῆς
γεγονόμενα, τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον καὶ ἡ ἐν τῇ γαστρὶ
πέψις τῶν σιτίων εἰς τὴν οἰκείαν ἐστὶ τῷ τρεφο-

156 μένῳ ποιώτητα || μεταβολῆ καὶ ὅταν γε πεφθῇ
tελέως, ἀνοίγουται μὲν τηνικάυτα τὸ κάτω στόμα,
dιεκπείπτει δ’ αὐτοῦ τὰ σιτία ῥάδιως, εἰ καὶ
πλῆθος τι μεθ’ ἐαυτῶν ἔχοντα τύχοι λίθων ἡ
ὀστῶν ἡ γεγάρτων ἡ τινος ἄλλου χυλωθήναι
μὴ δυναμένου. καὶ σοι τούτ’ ἐνεστὶν ἐπὶ ξύρου
240
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. iv

And it is not only because the stomach is distended and loaded and because the fluid runs from one part of it to another accompanied by gurglings—it is not only for these reasons that one would judge that there was an unduly long continuance of the food in it, in those people who are so disposed, but also from the vomiting. Thus, there are some who vomit up every particle of what they have eaten, not after three or four hours, but actually in the middle of the night, a lengthy period having elapsed since their meal.

Suppose you fill any animal whatsoever with liquid food—an experiment I have often carried out in pigs, to whom I give a sort of mess of wheaten flour and water, thereafter cutting them open after three or four hours; if you will do this yourself, you will find the food still in the stomach. For it is not chylification\(^1\) which determines the length of its stay here—since this can also be effected outside the stomach; the determining factor is digestion\(^2\) which is a different thing from chylification, as are blood-production and nutrition. For, just as it has been shown\(^3\) that these two processes depend upon a change of qualities, similarly also the digestion of food in the stomach involves a transmutation of it into the quality proper to that which is receiving nourishment.\(^4\) Then, when it is completely digested, the lower outlet opens and the food is quickly ejected through it, even if there should be amongst it abundance of stones, bones, grape-pips, or other things which cannot be reduced to chyle. And you may observe this

---

\(^1\) i.e. not the mere mechanical breaking down of food, but a distinctively vital action of “alteration.”

\(^2\) Pepsis.

\(^3\) Book I., chaps. x., xi.

\(^4\) cf. p. 222, note 1.
θεάσασθαι στοχασαμένως τὸν καιρόν τὴς κάτω διεξόδου. καὶ μὲν γε καὶ εἰ σφαλείης ποτὲ τοῦ καιροῦ καὶ μηδὲν μήπω κάτω παρέχοιτο πεττομένων ἐτί κατὰ τὴν γαστέρα τῶν σιτίων, οὐδ' οὕτως ἀκαρπος ἢ ἀνατομη σοὶ γενήσεται; θεάση γὰρ ἐπ' αὐτῶν, ὡςερ ὅλγη ρόσθεν εἵλεγομεν, ἀκριβῶς μὲν μεμυκότα τὸν πυλώρον, ἀπασαν δὲ τὴν γαστέρα περιεσταλμένην τοῖς σιτίοις τρόπον ὁμοίατον, οἷνπερ καὶ αἱ μητραὶ τοῖς κυνυμένοις. οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν οὐδέποτε κενὴν εὐρεῖν χώραν οὕτε κατὰ τὰς υστέρας οὕτε κατὰ τὴν κοιλίαν οὕτε κατὰ τὰς κύστεις ἀμφότερας οὕτε κατά τὴν χοληδόχον ὀνομαζομένην οὕτε τὴν ἐτέραν ἀλλ' ὅλγον εἶν τὸ περιεχόμενον ἐν αὐταῖς εἴτε πολὺ, μεστά καὶ πλήρεις αὐτῶν αἱ κοιλίαι φαίνονται περιστελλομένων ἀεὶ τῶν χυτῶν τοῖς περιεχόμενοις, ὅταν γε κατὰ φύσιν ἐχθ' τὸ ἥραν.

157 Ἑρασίστρατος δ' οὐκ οἴδ' ὅπως τὴν περιστολὴν τῆς γαστρός ἀπάντων αἰτίαν ἀποφαίνει καὶ τῆς λειώσεως τῶν σιτίων καὶ τῆς περιττωμάτων ὑποχωρησεως καὶ τῆς κεχυλωμένων ἀναδόσεως.

'Ἐγὼ μὲν γὰρ μυριάκις ἐπὶ ξώντος ἐτί τοῦ ἥρων διελόν τὸ περιτόναιον εὑρόν ἀεὶ τὰ μὲν ἐνέτερα πάντα περιστελλόμενα τοῖς ἐνυπάρχουσι, τὴν κοιλίαν δ' οὕχ ἀπλῶς, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ μὲν ταῖς ἐδωδαῖς ἀνωθέν τε καὶ κάτωθεν αὐτὰ καὶ πανταχόθεν ἀκρι-

1 Choleodochus. 2 More exactly peristolé; cf. p. 97, note 1. 3 Neuburger says of Erasistratus that “dissection had taught him to think in terms of anatomy.” It was chiefly
yourself in an animal, if you will try to hit upon the
time at which the descent of food from the stomach
takes place. But even if you should fail to discover
the time, and nothing was yet passing down, and the
food was still undergoing digestion in the stomach,
still even then you would find dissection not without
its uses. You will observe, as we have just said,
that the pylorus is accurately closed, and that the
whole stomach is in a state of contraction upon the
food very much as the womb contracts upon the
foetus. For it is never possible to find a vacant
space in the uterus, the stomach, or in either of the
two bladders—that is, either in that called bile-
receiving¹ or in the other; whether their contents
be abundant or scanty, their cavities are seen to be
replete and full, owing to the fact that their coats
contract constantly upon the contents—so long, at
least, as the animal is in a natural condition.

Now Erasistratus for some reason declares that it
is the contractions² of the stomach which are the
cause of everything—that is to say, of the softening
of the food,³ the removal of waste matter, and the
absorption of the food when chylified [emulsified].

Now I have personally, on countless occasions,
divided the peritoneum of a still living animal
and have always found all the intestines contracting
peristaltically⁴ upon their contents. The condition
of the stomach, however, is found less simple; as
regards the substances freshly swallowed, it had
grasped these accurately both above and below, in
fact at every point, and was as devoid of movement

the gross movements or structure of organs with which he
concerned himself. Where an organ had no obvious function,
he dubbed it “useless”; e.g. the spleen (cf. p. 143).

¹ i.e. contracting and dilating; no longitudinal movements
involved; cf. p. 263, note 2.
GALEN

βῶς περιειληφυίαν ἀκίνητον, ὡς δοκεῖν ἦνώσθαι καὶ περιπεφυκέναι τοῖς σιτίοις· ἐν δὲ τούτῳ καὶ τὸν πυλωρὸν εὐρισκον ἀεὶ μεμυκτὰ καὶ κεκλεισμένον ἀκριβῶς ὄσπερ τὸ τῶν ὑστερῶν στόμα ταῖς εγκύμοσιν.

'Επὶ μέντοι ταῖς πέψεις συμπεπληρωμέναις ἀνέφκτο μὲν ὁ πυλωρός, ἡ γαστήρ δὲ περισταλτικῶς ἐκινεῖτο παραπλησίως τοῖς ἔντεροις.

V

"Απαντ' οὖν ἀλλήλοις ὀμολογεῖ ταύτα καὶ τῇ γαστρί καὶ ταῖς υστέραις καὶ ταῖς κύστεσιν εἰναί τινας ἐμφύτους δυνάμεις καθεκτικὰς μὲν τῶν 158 οἰκείων ποιοτήτων, || ἀποκριτικὰς δὲ τῶν ἀλλοτρίων. ὅτι μὲν γὰρ ἐλκεῖ τὴν χολήν εἰς ἑαυτὴν ἡ ἐπὶ τῷ ἑπατί κύστις, ἐμπροσθεὶς δέδεικται, ὅτι δὲ καὶ ἀποκρίνει καθ' ἐκάστην ἡμέραν εἰς τὴν γαστέρα, καὶ τούτ' ἐναργῶς φαινέται. καὶ μὴν εἰ διεδέχετο τὴν ἐλκτικὴν δύναμιν ἡ ἐκκριτικὴ καὶ μὴ μέση τις ἁμφότερης ἡ καθεκτική, διὰ παντὸς ἐχρῆν ἀνατεμομυλῶν τῶν ὥσμων ἵσον πλῆθος χολῆς εὐρίσκεσθαι κατὰ τὴν κύστιν ὃς μὴν εὐρίσκεται γε. ποτὲ μὲν γὰρ πληρεστάτη, ποτὲ δὲ κενοτάτη, ποτὲ δὲ τὰς ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ διαφορὰς ἐχουσα θεωρεῖται, καθάπερ καὶ ἡ ἑτέρα κύστις ἡ τὸν ὑποδεχομένη. ταύτης μὲν γε καὶ πρὸ τῆς ἀνατομῆς αἰσθανόμεθα, πρὸ ἀνιαθήναι τῷ πλῆθει βαρυνθεῖσαν ἡ τῇ δριμύτητι δηχθεῖσαν,

as though it had grown round, and become united with the food. At the same time I found the pylorus persistently closed and accurately shut, like the os uteri on the foetus.

In the cases, however, where digestion had been completed the pylorus had opened, and the stomach was undergoing peristaltic movements, similar to those of the intestines.

V

Thus all these facts agree that the stomach, uterus, and bladders possess certain inborn faculties which are retentive of their own proper qualities and eliminative of those that are foreign. For it has been already shown that the bladder by the liver draws bile into itself, while it is also quite obvious that it eliminates this daily into the stomach. Now, of course, if the eliminative were to succeed the attractive faculty and there were not a retentive faculty between the two, there would be found, on every occasion that animals were dissected, an equal quantity of bile in the gall-bladder. This however, we do not find. For the bladder is sometimes observed to be very full, sometimes quite empty, while at other times you find in it various intermediate degrees of fulness, just as is the case with the other bladder—that which receives the urine; for even without resorting to anatomy we may observe that the urinary bladder continues to collect urine up to the time that it becomes uncomfortable through the increasing quantity of urine or the irritation caused by its acidity—the presumption
GALEN

"Ενεστὶ δὲ καὶ τούτῳ πολλάκις ἐναργῶς ἰδεῖν ἐπὶ τῶν ἀποσίτων ἀναγκαζόμενοι γὰρ ἐσθίειν οὕτε καταπίνειν εὐσθενοῦσιν οὕτε, εἰ καὶ βιάσαιντο, κατέχουσιν, ἀλλὰ εὐθὺς ἀνεμοῦσι. καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν ἐδεσμάτων πρὸς ὅτιον δυσχεραῖνοντες βιασθέντες εἵνεκε προσάρασθαι ταχέως ἔξεμοῦσι, ἢ εἰ κατάσχοιν βιασάμενοι, ναυτιώδεις τ' εἰσὶ καὶ τῆς γαστροῦ ὑπτίας αἰσθάνονται καὶ σπευδούσης ἀποθέσθαι τὸ λυποῦν.

Οὔτως ἔξ ἀπάντων τῶν φαινομένων, ὅπερ ἔξ ἀρχῆς ἐρρέθη, μαρτυρεῖται τὸ δεῖν ὑπάρχειν τοῖς τοῦ ζῴου μορίως σχεδὸν ἀπασιν ἐφεσιν μὲν τινα

246
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. v.–vi

thus being that here, too, there is a retentive faculty.

Similarly, too, the stomach, when, as often happens, it is irritated by acidity, gets rid of the food, although still undigested, earlier than proper; or again, when oppressed by the quantity of its contents, or disordered from the co-existence of both conditions, it is seized with diarrhoea. Vomiting also is an affection of the upper [part of the] stomach analogous to diarrhoea, and it occurs when the stomach is overloaded or is unable to stand the quality of the food or surplus substances which it contains. Thus, when such a condition develops in the lower parts of the stomach, while the parts about the inlet are normal, it ends in diarrhoea, whereas if this condition is in the upper stomach, the lower parts being normal, it ends in vomiting.

VI

This may often be clearly observed in those who are disinclined for food; when obliged to eat, they have not the strength to swallow, and, even if they force themselves to do so, they cannot retain the food, but at once vomit it up. And those especially who have a dislike to some particular kind of food, sometimes take it under compulsion, and then promptly bring it up; or, if they force themselves to keep it down, they are nauseated and feel their stomach turned up, and endeavouring to relieve itself of its discomfort.

Thus, as was said at the beginning, all the observed facts testify that there must exist in almost all parts of the animal a certain inclination towards, or, so to
Galen

καὶ ὁλον ὄρεξιν τῆς οἰκείας ποιότητος, ἀποστροφὴν
160 δὲ τινὰ || καὶ ὁλον μίσος τι τῆς ἀλλοτρίας. ἀλλ' ἐφιέμενα μὲν ἐλκεὶν εὔλογον, ἀποστρεφόμενα δὲ ἐκκρίνειν.

Καὶ τούτων πάλιν ἡ θ' ἐλκτική δύναμις ἀποδείκνυται καθ' ἀπαν ὑπάρχουσα καὶ ἡ προωστική.

'Αλλ' εἴπερ ἐφεσίς τέ τίς ἐστι καὶ ἐλξις, εἰπ' ἂν τις καὶ ἀπόλαυσις. οὐδὲν γὰρ τῶν ὄντων ἐλκεὶ τι
d' αὐτὸ τὸ ἐλκείν, ἀλλ' ἵν' ἀπολαύσῃ τοῦ διὰ
tῆς ὀλκῆς εὐπορηθέντος. καὶ μὴν ἀπολαύσεις οὐ
dύναται μὴ κατασχόν. καὶ τούτῳ πάλιν ἡ
καθεκτική δύναμις ἀποδείκνυται τῇ γένεσιν
ἀναγκαίαν ἔχουσα: σαφῶς γὰρ ἐφίεται μὲν τῶν
οἰκείων ποιότητων ἡ γαστήρ, ἀποστρέφεται δὲ
tὰς ἀλλοτρίας.

'Αλλ' εἴπερ ἐφίεται τε καὶ ἐλκεί καὶ ἀπολαύει
κατέχουσα καὶ περιστελλομένη, εἰπ' ἂν τι καὶ
πέρας αὐτῇ τῆς ἀπολαύσεως κατ' τρόπ' ὁ καιρὸς
ηδὴ τῆς ἐκκριτικῆς δυνάμεως ἐνεργοῦσης.

VII

'Αλλ' εἴ καὶ κατέχει καὶ ἀπολαύει, κατα-
χρῆται πρὸς ὃ πέφυκε. πέφυκε δὲ τοῦ προσ-
161 ἡκοντός ἐαυτῇ || κατὰ ποιότητα καὶ οἰκείου

1 Note use of psychological terms in biology. cf. also p. 133, note 3.
2 "In everything." cf. p. 66, note 3.

248
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. vi. –vii

speak, an appetite for their own special quality, and an aversion to, or, as it were, a hatred of the foreign quality. And it is natural that when they feel an inclination they should attract, and that when they feel aversion they should expel.

From these facts, then, again, both the attractive and the propulsive faculties have been demonstrated to exist in everything. But if there be an inclination or attraction, there will also be some benefit derived; for no existing thing attracts anything else for the mere sake of attracting, but in order to benefit by what is acquired by the attraction. And of course it cannot benefit by it if it cannot retain it. Herein, then, again, the retentive faculty is shown to have its necessary origin: for the stomach obviously inclines towards its own proper qualities and turns away from those that are foreign to it.

But if it aims at and attracts its food and benefits by it while retaining and contracting upon it, we may also expect that there will be some termination to the benefit received, and that thereafter will come the time for the exercise of the eliminative faculty.

VII

But if the stomach both retains and benefits by its food, then it employs it for the end for which it [the stomach] naturally exists. And it exists to partake of that which is of a quality befitting and proper to

3 Galen confuses the nutrition of organs with that of the ultimate living elements or cells; the stomach does not, of course, feed itself in the way a cell does. cf. Introduction, p. xxxii.
GALEN

μεταλαμβάνειν· ὡσθ' ἔλκει τῶν σιτίων ὅσον χρηστότατον ἀτμωδῶς τε καὶ κατὰ βραχὺ καὶ τοῦτο τοίς ἐαυτῆς χιτῶσιν ἐναποτίθεται τε καὶ προστίθησιν. ὅταν δ' ἰκανώς ἐμπληρηθῇ, καθά-περ ἄχθος τι τῆς λυπῆν ἀποτίθεται τροφὴν ἐσχηκών τι χρηστὸν ἤδη καὶ αὐτὴν ἐκ τῆς πρὸς τὴν γαστέρα κοινωνίας· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἐνδέχεται δύο σώματα δρᾶν καὶ πάσχειν ἑπιτήδεια συνελθόντα μὴ οὐκ ἦτοι πάσχειν θ' ἀμα καὶ δρᾶν ἢ θάτερον μὲν δρᾶν, θάτερον δὲ πάσχειν. ἐὰν μὲν γὰρ ἰσάζῃ ταῖς δυνάμεσιν, έξ ἵσου δράσει τε καὶ πείσεται, ἀν δ' ὑπερέχῃ πολὺ καὶ κρατή θάτερον, ἐνεργῆσαι περὶ τὸ πάσχον ἦστε δράσει μέγα μὲν τι καὶ αἰσθητόν, αὐτὸ δ' ἦτοι σμικρὸν τι καὶ οὐκ αἰσθητόν ἢ παντάπασιν οὐδὲν πείσεται. ἄλλ' ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ μάλιστα διήνεγκε φαρμάκου δηλητηρίου τροφῆ· τὸ μὲν γὰρ κρατεῖ τῆς ἐν τῷ σώματι δυνάμεως, ἢ δὲ κρατεῖται.

Ὅυκον ενδέχεται τροφὴν μὲν εἶναι τῷ ξώρῳ προσήκουσαν, οὐ μὴν καὶ κρατεῖσθαι γ' ὁμοίως πρὸς τῶν ἐν τῷ ξώρῳ ποιοτήτων· τὸ κρατεῖσθαι δ' ἢν ἀλλοιώσθαι. ἄλλ' ἐνεπὶ τὰ μὲν ἰσχυρότερα ταῖς δυνάμεσιν ἐστὶ μόρια, τὰ δ' ἀσθενέστερα, κρατήσει μὲν πάντα τῆς ὁικείας τῷ ξώρῳ τροφῆς, οὐχ ὁμοίως δὲ πάντα· κρατήσει δ' ἀρα καὶ ἡ γαστήρ καὶ ἀλλοιώσει μὲν τὴν τροφήν, οὐ μὴν ὁμοίως ἦπατε καὶ φλεψι καὶ ἀρτηριάς καὶ καρδία.

Πόσον οὖν ἔστιν, δ' ἀλλοιώ, καὶ δὴ θεασώμεθα· πλέον μὲν ἢ κατὰ τὸ στόμα, μεῖον δ' ἢ κατὰ τὸ

1 cf. Asclepiades's theory regarding the urine, p. 51.
2 The process of application or prosthesis. cf. p. 223, note 3.
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. vii

it. Thus it attracts all the most useful parts of the food in a vaporous\textsuperscript{1} and finely divided condition, storing this up in its own coats, and applying\textsuperscript{2} it to them. And when it is sufficiently full it puts away from it, as one might something troublesome, the rest of the food, this having itself meanwhile obtained some profit from its association with the stomach. For it is impossible for two bodies which are adapted for acting and being acted upon to come together without either both acting or being acted upon, or else one acting and the other being acted upon. For if their forces are equal they will act and be acted upon equally, and if the one be much superior in strength, it will exert its activity upon its passive neighbour; thus, while producing a great and appreciable effect, it will itself be acted upon either little or not at all. But it is herein also that the main difference lies between nourishing food and a deleterious drug; the latter masters the forces of the body, whereas the former is mastered by them.\textsuperscript{3}

There cannot, then, be food which is suited for the animal which is not also correspondingly subdued by the qualities existing in the animal. And to be subdued means to undergo alteration.\textsuperscript{4} Now, some parts are stronger in power and others weaker; therefore, while all will subdue the nutriment which is proper to the animal, they will not all do so equally. Thus the stomach will subdue and alter its food, but not to the same extent as will the liver, veins, arteries, and heart.

We must therefore observe to what extent it does alter it. The alteration is more than that which

\textsuperscript{3} Mutual influence of organism and environment.

\textsuperscript{4} Qualitative change. \textit{cf.} Book I., chap. ii.
GALEN

ἔπαρ τε καὶ τάς φλέβας. αὐτὴ μὲν γὰρ ἡ ἀλλοίωσις εἰς αἵματος οὐσίαν ἀγεί τὴν τροφήν, ἢ δὲν τῷ στόματι μεθίστησι μὲν αὐτὴν ἑναργῶς εἰς ἔτερον εἶδος, οὐ μὴν εἰς τέλος γε μετακοσμεῖ. μάθοις δὲ ἄν ἐπὶ τῶν ἐγκαταλειφθέντων ταῖς διαστάσεις τῶν ὀδόντων σιτίων καὶ καταμεινάντων δε ὁλης νυκτός· οὔτε γὰρ ἄρτος ἄκριβῶς ὁ ἄρτος οὔτε κρέας ἐστι τὸ κρέας, ἀλλ' ὅξει μὲν τοιοῦτον, οἶνοπερ καὶ τοῦ ξύφω τὸ στόμα, διαλέλυται δὲ καὶ διατέτηκε καὶ τὰς ἐν τῷ ξύφῳ τῆς σαρκὸς ἀπομέμακται ποιότητας. ἔνεστι δὲ σοι 163 θεάσασθαι τὸ μέγεθος τῆς ἐν τῷ στόματι τῶν σιτίων ἀλλοιώσεως, εἰ πυρὸς μασησάμενος ἑπιθείς ἀπέπτωςς δοθῆσιν· ὅξεὶ γὰρ αὐτοὺς τάχιστα μεταβάλλοντας τε καὶ συμπέττοντας, οὔδεν τοιοῦτον, ὅταν ὑδατι φυραθῶσι, ἐργάσασθαι δυναμένους. καὶ μὴ θαυμάσῃς τὸ γὰρ τῷ φλέγμα τούτῳ τὸ κατὰ τὸ στόμα καὶ λειχήνων ἐστὶν ἄκος καὶ σκορπίους ἀναιρεῖ παραχρῆμα καὶ πολλὰ τῶν ἱσοβλῶν θηρίων τὰ μὲν εὐθέως ἀποκτείνει, τὰ δὲ ἐς ὑστερον· ἀπαντά γοῦν βλάπτει μεγάλως. ἀλλὰ τὰ μεμασημένα σιτία πρῶτον μὲν τούτῳ τῷ φλέγματι βέβρεκται τε καὶ πεφύραται, δεύτερον δὲ καὶ τῷ χρωτὶ τοῦ στόματος ἀπαντά πεπλησίακεν, ὥστε πλεῖνα μεταβολὴν εἰληφε τῶν ἐν ταῖς κεναῖς χώραις τῶν ὀδόντων ἐσφηνομένων.

'Αλλ' ὅσον τὰ μεμασημένα τούτων ἐπὶ πλέον ἠλλοίωται, τοσοῦτον ἐκεῖνων τὰ καταποθέντα.
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. vii

occurs in the mouth, but less than that in the liver and veins. For the latter alteration changes the nutriment into the substance of blood, whereas that in the mouth obviously changes it into a new form, but certainly does not completely transmute it. This you may discover in the food which is left in the intervals between the teeth, and which remains there all night; the bread is not exactly bread, nor the meat meat, for they have a smell similar to that of the animal’s mouth, and have been disintegrated and dissolved, and have had the qualities of the animal’s flesh impressed upon them. And you may observe the extent of the alteration which occurs to food in the mouth if you will chew some corn and then apply it to an unripe [undigested] boil: you will see it rapidly transmuting—in fact entirely digesting—the boil, though it cannot do anything of the kind if you mix it with water. And do not let this surprise you; this phlegm [saliva] in the mouth is also a cure for lichens; it even rapidly destroys scorpions; while, as regards the animals which emit venom, some it kills at once, and others after an interval; to all of them in any case it does great damage. Now, the masticated food is all, firstly, soaked in and mixed up with this phlegm; and secondly, it is brought into contact with the actual skin of the mouth; thus it undergoes more change than the food which is wedged into the vacant spaces between the teeth.

But just as masticated food is more altered than the latter kind, so is food which has been swallowed more altered than that which has been merely

---

1 Apparently skin-diseases in which a superficial crust (resembling the lichen on a tree-trunk) forms—e.g. psoriasis.
μὴ γὰρ οὐδὲ παραβλητὸν ἢ τὸ τῆς ὑπερβολῆς, 
εἰ τὸ κατὰ τὴν κοιλίαν ἐννοήσαιμεν φλέγμα καὶ 
χολήν καὶ πνεῦμα καὶ θερμασίαν καὶ ὅλην τὴν 
ούσιαν τῆς γαστρός. εἰ δὲ καὶ συνεπινοήσαις 

164 αὐτὴ τὰ παρακείμενα || σπλάγχνα καθάπερ 
τυπί λέβητι μεγάλῳ πυρὸς ἑστίας πολλάς, ἐκ δεξιῶν 
μὲν τὸ ἄπαρ, ἔξ ἀριστερῶν δὲ τῶν σπλήνα, τὴν 
καρδιὰν δ’ ἐκ τῶν ἀνω, σὺν αὐτῇ δὲ καὶ τὰς 
φρένας αἰωρομένας τε καὶ διὰ παντὸς κυνούμενας, 
ἐφ’ ἀπασί δὲ τούτων σκέπον τὸ ἐπίπλου, ἕξαι- 
σιόν τινα πεισθήσῃ τὴν ἀλλοϊωσιν γγυνεσθαι τῶν 
eἰς τὴν γαστέρα καταποθέσεων σφιχτῶν.

Πῶς δ’ ἂν ἡδύνατο ῥαδίως αἰματούσθαι μὴ 
προπαρασκευασθέντα τῇ τοιαύτῃ μεταβολῇ; δὲ- 
δεικται γὰρ οὖν καὶ πρόσθεν, ὡς οὔδεν εἰς τὴν 
ἐναντίαν ἄθροως μεθίσταται ποιότητα. πῶς οὖν 
ὁ ἄρτος αἷμα γίγνεται, πῶς δὲ τὸ τεύτλον ἢ ὁ 
kύριος ἢ τι τῶν ἄλλων, εἰ μὴ πρότερον τιν’ ἔτεραν 
ἀλλοϊωσιν ἐδέξατο; πῶς δ’ ἡ κόπρος ἐν τοῖς 
λεπτοῖς ἐντέροις ἄθροῶς γεννηθήσεται; τί γὰρ ἐν 
τούτως σφοδρότερον εἰς ἀλλοϊωσίν ἐστὶ τῶν κατὰ 
τὴν γαστέρα; ποτέρα τῶν χιτῶνων τὸ πλῆθος ἢ 
tῶν γειτνίώντων σπλάγχνων ἡ περίθεσις ἡ τῆς 
μονῆς ὁ χρόνος ἢ σύμφυτος τες ἐν τοῖς ὄργανοις 
θερμασία; καὶ μὴν κατ’ οὐδὲν τούτων πλεονεκτεῖ 
tὰ ἐντερα τῆς γαστρός. τί ποτ’ οὖν ἐν μὲν τῇ 

165 γαστρὶ νυκτὸς || ὅλης πολλάκις μείναντα τῶν 
ἀρτον ἐτι φυλάττεσθαι βούλονται τὰς ἀρχαίας 
διασφόξοντα ποιότητας, ἐπειδὰν δ’ ἀπαξ ἐμπέσῃ

¹ Note especially pneuma and innate heat, which practically stand for oxygen and the heat generated in oxidation. 
² Book I., chap. x.
masticated. Indeed, there is no comparison between these two processes; we have only to consider what the stomach contains—phlegm, bile, pæuma, [innate] heat,¹ and, indeed the whole substance of the stomach. And if one considers along with this the adjacent viscera, like a lot of burning hearths around a great cauldron—to the right the liver, to the left the spleen, the heart above, and along with it the diaphragm (suspended and in a state of constant movement), and the omentum sheltering them all—you may believe what an extraordinary alteration it is which occurs in the food taken into the stomach.

How could it easily become blood if it were not previously prepared by means of a change of this kind? It has already been shown ² that nothing is altered all at once from one quality to its opposite. How then could bread, beef, beans, or any other food turn into blood if they had not previously undergone some other alteration? And how could the faeces be generated right away in the small intestine?³ For what is there in this organ more potent in producing alteration than the factors in the stomach? Is it the number of the coats, or the way it is surrounded by neighbouring viscera, or the time that the food remains in it, or some kind of innate heat which it contains? Most assuredly the intestines have the advantage of the stomach in none of these respects. For what possible reason, then, will objectors have it that bread may often remain a whole night in the stomach and still preserve its original qualities, whereas when once it is projected into the

³ That is to say, faeces are obviously altered food. This alteration cannot have taken place entirely in the small intestine: therefore alteration of food must take place in the stomach.

²55
GALEN

toĩs ἑντέροις, εὐθὺς γίγνεσθαι κύττρον; εἰ μὲν γὰρ ὁ τοσοῦτος χρόνος ἀδύνατος ἀλλοιοῦν, οὔδ' ὁ
βραχὺς ἱκανός· εἰ δ' οὗτος αὐτάρκης, πῶς οὖν
πολὺ μᾶλλον ὁ μακρός; ἢ ὁ οὗ ἄλλοιοῦταί μὲν ἡ
τροφὴ κατὰ τὴν κοιλίαν, ἀλλὴν δὲ τιν' ἄλλοιώ-
σιν καὶ οὐχ οἶνον ἐκ τῆς φύσεως ἵσχει τοῦ μετα-
βάλλοντος ὀργάνου; ἢ ταύτην μὲν, οὐ μὴν τὴν
γ' οἰκείαν τῷ τοῦ ζύμου σῶματι; μακρὸ τοῦτ' ἀδυνατότερον ἔστι. καὶ μὴν οὖν ἄλλο γ' ἢν ἡ
πέψις ἢ ἄλλοιώσις εἰς τὴν οἰκείαν τοῦ τρεφομένου
ποιότητα. εἰπερ οὖν ἡ πέψις τούτ' ἔστι καὶ ἡ
τροφὴ κατὰ τὴν γαστέρα δέδεικται δεχομένη
ποιότητα τῷ μέλλοντι πρὸς αὐτῆς θρέψεσθαι ξῷφ
προσήκουσαν, ἰκανῶς ἀποδέδεικται τὸ πέπτεσθαι
κατὰ τὴν γαστέρα τῆς τροφῆς.

Καὶ γελοιός μὲν Ἄσκληπιάδης οὐτ' ἐν ταῖς
ἐρυγαῖσ λέγων ἐμφαίνεσθαι ποτὲ τὴν ποιότητα
τῶν πεφθέντων σιτίων οὐτ' ἐν τοῖς ἐμέτοις οὐτ'
166 ἐν ταῖς ἀναμομαῖσ· αὐτὸ γὰρ ἰδ' ἦ τοῦ σῶματος
ἐξόξειν αὐτὰ τῆς κοιλίας ἔστι τὸ πεπέθαι. ἡ ἢ
οὕτως ἔστιν εὐθύς, ὡστ', ἐπειδὴ τῶν παλαιῶν
ἀκόουει λεγόντων ἐπὶ τὸ χρήστον ἐν τῇ γαστρὶ
μεταβάλλειν τὰ σιτία, δοκιμαζεὶ ξητείν οὗ τὸ
κατὰ δύναμιν ἄλλα τὸ κατὰ γεῦσιν χρήστον,
ὡσπερ ἢ τοῦ μήλου μηλώδεστέρου—χρῆ γὰρ
οὕτως αὐτῷ διαλέγεσθαι—γίγνομενον κατὰ τὴν
κοιλίαν ἢ τοῦ μέλιτος μελιτωδέστερου.

1 cf. p. 39.
2 Asclepiades held that there was no such thing as real
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. vii

intestines, it straightway becomes ordure? For, if such a long period of time is incapable of altering it, neither will the short period be sufficient, or, if the latter is enough, surely the longer time will be much more so! Well, then, can it be that, while the nutriment does undergo an alteration in the stomach, this is a different kind of alteration and one which is not dependent on the nature of the organ which alters it? Or if it be an alteration of this latter kind, yet one perhaps which is not proper to the body of the animal? This is still more impossible. Digestion was shown to be nothing else than an alteration to the quality proper to that which is receiving nourishment. Since, then, this is what digestion means and since the nutriment has been shown to take on in the stomach a quality appropriate to the animal which is about to be nourished by it, it has been demonstrated adequately that nutriment does undergo digestion in the stomach.

And Asclepiades is absurd when he states that the quality of the digested food never shows itself either in eructations or in the vomited matter, or on dissection. For of course the mere fact that the food smells of the body shows that it has undergone gastric digestion. But this man is so foolish that, when he hears the Ancients saying that the food is converted in the stomach into something “good,” he thinks it proper to look out not for what is good in its possible effects, but for what is good to the taste: this is like saying that apples (for so one has to argue with him) become more apple-like [in flavour] in the stomach, or honey more honey-like!

qualitative change; the food was merely broken up into its constituent molecules, and absorbed unaltered. cf. p. 49, note 5.
GALEN

Πολύ δ’ εὑρεθέστερός ἦτο καὶ γελοιότερος ὁ 'Ερασίστρατος ἢ μὴ νοών, ὅτες εἰρηταὶ πρὸς τῶν παλαίων ἢ πέψις ἐγκαθεὶν παραπλήσιος ὑπάρχειν, ἢ ἐκὼν σοφιζόμενος ἐαυτόν. ἐγκαθεὶν μὲν οὖν, φησίν, οὖτως ἐλαφρῶς ἔχουσαν θερμασίαν οὐκ εἰκὸς εἶναι παραπλησίαν τὴν πέψιν, ὥσπερ ἢ τὴν Ἁλτυνή δέων ὑποθείναι τῇ γαστρῇ ἢ ἄλλως αὐτής ἀλλιώσω τὰ σιτία μὴ δυναμένης ἡ δυναμένης μὲν ἄλλοιοι, οὐ κατὰ τὴν ἐμφυτον δὲ θερμασίαν, ὠγρὰν οὖσαν δηλονότι καὶ διὰ τοῦθ’ ἐγείρεαν οὐκ ὁπτάν εἰρημένην.

Ἐχθῆ δ’ αὐτῶν, εἴπερ περὶ πραγμάτων ἀντίλεγεν ἔβοϋλετο, πειραθῆναι δεῖξαι μάλιστα μὲν 167 καὶ || πρῶτον, ὡς οὐδὲ μεταβάλλει τὴν ἀρχὴν οὐδ’ ἄλλοιοίτα κατὰ ποιότητα πρὸς τῆς γαστρὸς τὰ σιτία, δεύτερον δ’, εἴπερ μὴ οἶδ’ ὃ τοῦτο πιστώσασθαι, τὸ τὴν ἄλλοισιν αὐτῶν ἄχρηστον εἶναι τῷ ζῷῳ: εἰ δὲ μηδὲ τούτ’ εἰχε διαβάλλειν, ἐξελέγξαι τὴν περὶ τὰς δραστικὰς ἀρχὰς ὑπόληψιν καὶ δεῖξαι τὰς ἑνεργείας ἐν τοῖς μορίοις οὐ διὰ τὴν ἐκ θερμοῦ καὶ ψυχροῦ καὶ ξηροῦ καὶ ὑγροῦ ποιών κρᾶσιν ὑπάρχειν ἄλλα δι’ ἄλλο τι: εἰ δὲ μηδὲ τούτ’ ἑτόλμα διαβάλλειν, ἀλλ’ ὅτι γε μὴ τὸ θερμὸν ἐστὶν ἐν τοῖς ὑπὸ φύσεως διοικομένοις τὸ τῶν ἄλλων δραστικώτατον. ἡ εἰ μήτε τούτῳ μήτε τῶν ἄλλων τι τῶν ἐμπροσθεὶς εἰχέν ἀποδεικνύναι, μὴ ληρεῖν ὀνόματι προσπαλαίοντα

1 i.e. denial of forethought in the Physis.

258
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. vii

Erasistratus, however, is still more foolish and absurd, either through not perceiving in what sense the Ancients said that digestion is similar to the process of boiling, or because he purposely confused himself with sophistries. It is, he says, inconceivable that digestion, involving as it does such trifling warmth, should be related to the boiling process. This is as if we were to suppose that it was necessary to put the fires of Etna under the stomach before it could manage to alter the food; or else that, while it was capable of altering the food, it did not do this by virtue of its innate heat, which of course was moist, so that the word boil was used instead of bake.

What he ought to have done, if it was facts that he wished to dispute about, was to have tried to show, first and foremost, that the food is not transmuted or altered in quality by the stomach at all, and secondly, if he could not be confident of this, he ought to have tried to show that this alteration was not of any advantage to the animal. If, again, he were unable even to make this misrepresentation, he ought to have attempted to confute the postulate concerning the active principles—to show, in fact, that the functions taking place in the various parts do not depend on the way in which the Warm, Cold, Dry, and Moist are mixed, but on some other factor. And if he had not the audacity to misrepresent facts even so far as this, still he should have tried at least to show that the Warm is not the most active of all the principles which play a part in things governed by Nature. But if he was unable to demonstrate this any more than any of the previous propositions, then he ought not to have made himself ridiculous by quarrelling uselessly
GALEN

μάτην, ὁστόπερ οὐ σαφῶς Ἀριστοτέλεως ἐν τῷ ἄλλως πολλοῖς καὶ τῷ τετάρτῳ τῶν μετεωρολογικῶν ὁπως ἡ πέψις ἐψήθει παραπλήσιος εἶναι λέγεται, καὶ ὅτι μὴ πρῶτος μηδὲ κυρίως ὄνομα-ξόντων, εἰρηκότος.

'Ἀλλ', ὥς ἦδη λέεικεῖ οἱ πολλάκις, ἀρχή τούτων ἀπαντῶν ἔστι μία τὸ περὶ θερμοῦ καὶ ψυχροῦ καὶ ξηροῦ καὶ ψυχροῦ διασκέψις, καθάπερ Ἀριστοτέλης ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ δευτέρῳ περὶ γενέσεως καὶ 168 φθορᾶς, ἀπὸ δεῖξας ἀπάσας τὰς κατὰ τὰ σώματα μεταβολὰς καὶ ἀλλοιώσεις ὑπὸ τούτων γίγνεσθαι. ἂλλ' Ἐρασίστρατος οὔτε τούτως οὔτ' ἄλλῳ τινὶ τῶν προειρημένων ἀντειπὼν ἐπὶ τούνομα μόνον ἐτράπετο τῆς ἐψήσεως.

VIII

Ἐπὶ μὲν οὖν τῆς πέψεως, εἰ καὶ τὰλλα πάντα παρέλιπε, τὸ γοῦν ὅτι διαφέρει τῆς ἐκτὸς ἐψήσεως ἢ ἐν τοῖς ζῷοις πέψις, ἐπειράθη δεικνύσει, περὶ δὲ τῆς καταπόσεως οὖν ἄχρι τοσοῦτον. τί γάρ φησιν;

"Ὅλη μὲν οὖν τῆς κοιλίας οὐδεμία φαίνεται εἶναι."

Καὶ μὴν δύο χρόνων ἡ γαστήρ ἔχει πάντως ἐνεκά τοῦ γεγονότας καὶ διήκουσιν οὕτω μέχρι τοῦ στόματος, ὁ μὲν ἐνδον, οἷς ἐστὶ κατὰ τὴν γαστέρα, τοιοῦτος διαμένειν, ὁ δ' ἔτερος ἐπὶ τὸ

260
with a mere name—as though Aristotle had not clearly stated in the fourth book of his "Meteorology," as well as in many other passages, in what way digestion can be said to be allied to boiling, and also that the latter expression is not used in its primitive or strict sense.

But, as has been frequently said already, 1 the one starting-point of all this is a thoroughgoing enquiry into the question of the Warm, Cold, Dry and Moist; this Aristotle carried out in the second of his books "On Genesis and Destruction," where he shows that all the transmutations and alterations throughout the body take place as a result of these principles. Erasistratus, however, advanced nothing against these or anything else that has been said above, but occupied himself merely with the word "boiling."

VIII

Thus, as regards digestion, even though he neglected everything else, he did at least attempt to prove his point—namely, that digestion in animals differs from boiling carried on outside; in regard to the question of deglutition, however, he did not go even so far as this. What are his words?

"The stomach does not appear to exercise any traction." 2

Now the fact is that the stomach possesses two coats, which certainly exist for some purpose; they extend as far as the mouth, the internal one remaining throughout similar to what it is in the stomach, and the other one tending to become of a more fleshy

1 v. p. 9, et passim. 2 cf. p. 97.
σαρκωδέστερον ἐν τῷ στομάχῳ τρεπόμενος. ὅτι
μὲν οὖν ἐναντίας ἀλλήλαις τὰς ἐπιβολὰς τῶν
ιῶν ἔχουσιν οἱ χιτώνες οὗτοι, τὸ φαινόμενον
αὐτὸ μαρτυρεῖ. τίνος δὲ ἑνεκα τοιούτου γεγο-
νασιν, Ἕρασίστρατος μὲν οὖν ἐπεχείρησεν εἰπεῖν,
ἡμεῖς δὲ ἐροῦμεν.

'Ὁ μὲν ἔνδον εὐθείας ἔχει τὰς ἱνας, ὅλκης γὰρ
169 ἑνεκα γέγονεν. ο δὲ ἐξωθεὶ ἐγκαρσίας ὑπὲρ τοῦ
κατὰ κύκλων περιστέλλεσθαι· ἐκάστῳ γὰρ τῶν
κινομένων ὀργάνων ἐν τοῖς σώμασι κατὰ τᾶς
τῶν ἱνῶν θέσεις αἱ κινῆσεις εἰσίν. ἐπὶ αὐτῶν δὲ
πρῶτον τῶν μυῶν, εἰ βούλει, βασάνισον τὸν
λόγον, ἐφ' ὃν καὶ αἱ ἱνὲς ἐναργεῖσταται καὶ αἱ
κινήσεις αὐτῶν ὀρῶνται διὰ σφοδρότητα. μετὰ
dὲ τοὺς μῦς ἔπι τὰ φυσικὰ τῶν ὀργάνων ἰθί καὶ
πάντ' ὅψει κατὰ τὰς ἱνας κινούμενα καὶ διὰ τοῦθ' ἐκά-
στῳ μὲν τῶν ἐντέρων στρογγυλαὶ καθ' ἐκά-
τερον τῶν χιτώνων αἱ ἱνὲς εἰσιν' περιστέλλονται
γὰρ μόνον, ἔλκουσι δ' οὖν. ἡ γαστήρ δὲ τῶν
ιῶν τὰς μὲν εὐθείας ἔχει χάριν ὅλκης, τὰς δ' ἐγκαρσίας ἑνεκα περιστόλης' ὡσπερ γὰρ ἐν τοῖς
μυσίν ἐκάστης τῶν ἱνῶν τεινομένης τε καὶ πρὸς
tὴν ἀρχήν ἐλκομένης αἱ κινήσεις γύρουνται, κατὰ
tῶν αὐτῶν λόγον κὰν τῇ γαστρὶ· τῶν μὲν οὖν
ἐγκαρσίων ἱνῶν τεινομένων ἐλαττον ἀνάγκη γι-

1 It appears to me, from comparison between this and other
passages in Galen's writings (notably Use of Parts, iv., 8),
that he means by the "two coats" simply the mucous and
the muscular coats. In this case the "straight" or "longi-
tudinal" fibres of the inner coat would be the rugae; the
"circular" fibres of the inner intestinal coat would be the
valvulae conniventes.

262
nature in the gullet. Now simple observation will testify that these coats have their fibres inserted in contrary directions. And, although Erasistratus did not attempt to say for what reason they are like this, I am going to do so.

The inner coat has its fibres straight, since it exists for the purpose of traction. The outer coat has its fibres transverse, for the purpose of peristalsis. In fact, the movements of each of the mobile organs of the body depend on the setting of the fibres. Now please test this assertion first in the muscles themselves; in these the fibres are most distinct, and their movements visible owing to their vigour. And after the muscles, pass to the physical organs, and you will see that they all move in correspondence with their fibres. This is why the fibres throughout the intestines are circular in both coats—they only contract peristaltically, they do not exercise traction. The stomach, again, has some of its fibres longitudinal for the purpose of traction and the others transverse for the purpose of peristalsis. For just as the movements in the muscles take place when each of the fibres becomes tightened and drawn towards its origin, such also is what happens in the stomach; when the transverse fibres tighten, the breadth of

2 The term here rendered peristalsis is peristolé in Greek; it is applied only to the intermittent movements of muscles placed circularly round a lumen or cavity, and comprehends systolé or contraction and diastolé or dilatation. In its modern significance, peristalsis, however, also includes the movements of longitudinal fibres. cf. p. 97, note 1.

3 i.e. those containing non-striped or "involuntary" muscle fibres; organs governed by the "natural" pneuma; cf. p. 186, note 3.

4 By this term is meant only what we should call the "voluntary" muscles.
γνεσθαι τὸ εὐρὸς τῆς περιεχομένης ὑπ’ αὐτῶν κοιλότητος, τῶν δ’ εὐθείων ἐλκομένων τε καὶ εἰς ἑαυτὰς συναγομένων οὐκ ενδέχεται μή οὐ συναι-170 ρεῖσθαι τὸ μήκος. ἀλλὰ μὴν ἦν εὐρωγὸς γε φαίνεται καταπινόντων συναιροῦμενοι καὶ τοσοῦτον ὁ λάρνγξ ἀνατρέχων, ὥσον ὁ στόμαχος καταστά-ται, καὶ ὅταν γε συμπληρωθεῖσθι τῆς ἐν τῷ καταπίνειν ἐνεργείας ἀφεθῇ τῆς τάσεως ὁ στόμα-χος, εὐρωγὸς πάλιν φαίνεται καταφερόμενος ὁ λάρνγξ. ὁ γὰρ ἐνδοὺ χιτῶν τῆς γαστρῶς ὁ τὰς εὐθεῖας ίνας ἔχων ὁ καὶ τὸν στόμαχον ὑπαλέιφων καὶ τὸ στόμα τοῖς ἐντὸς μέρεσιν ἐπεκτείνεται τοῦ λάρνγγος, ὡστ’ οὐκ ενδέχεται καταστάμενον αὐτὸν ὑπὸ τῆς κοιλίας μή οὐ συνεπιστάσθαι καὶ τῶν λάρνγγα.

"Ὅτι δ’ αἱ περιφερεῖς ίνες, ἀλλὰ περιστελλεῖται τἀ τ’ ἀλλὰ μόρια καὶ η γαστήρ, οὐ συναντήσῃ τὸ μήκος, ἀλλὰ συστέλλουσι καὶ στενοῦσι τὴν εὐρύτητα, καὶ παρ’ αὐτοῦ λαβεῖν ἑστὶν ὀμολογού-μενον Ἐρασίστράτου· περιστέλλεσθαι γὰρ φησὶ τοῖς σιτίοις τὴν γαστέρα κατὰ τὸν τῆς πέψεως ἀπαντα χρόνον. ἀλλ’ εἰ περιστελλεῖται μέν, οὐδὲν δὲ τοῦ μήκους ἀφαιρεῖται τῆς κοιλίας, οὐκ ἥστι τῆς περιστατικῆς κινήσεως ἱδιὸν τὸ κατα-στὰν κάτω τὸν στόμαχον. ὅπερ γὰρ αὐτὸς ὁ Ἐρασίστρατος εἶπε, τοῦτο μόνον αὐτὸ συμ-171 βῆσεται τὸ τῶν ἀνω συστελευμένων διαστέλ-λεσθαι τὰ κάτω. τοῦτο δ’ ὅτι, κἂν εἰς νεκροῦ τὸν στόμαχον ὑδατος ἐγχέσης, φαίνεται γγυνόμενον, οὐδεὶς ἄγνοει. ταῖς γὰρ τῶν ὑλῶν διὰ στενοῦ

1 cf. p. 97.
the cavity contained by them becomes less; and when the longitudinal fibres contract and draw in upon themselves, the length must necessarily be curtailed. This curtailment of length, indeed, is well seen in the act of swallowing: the larynx is seen to rise upwards to exactly the same degree that the gullet is drawn downwards; while, after the process of swallowing has been completed and the gullet is released from tension, the larynx can be clearly seen to sink down again. This is because the inner coat of the stomach, which has the longitudinal fibres and which also lines the gullet and the mouth, extends to the interior of the larynx, and it is thus impossible for it to be drawn down by the stomach without the larynx being involved in the traction.

Further, it will be found acknowledged in Erasistratus's own writings that the circular fibres (by which the stomach as well as other parts performs its contractions) do not curtail its length, but contract and lesson its breadth. For he says that the stomach contracts peristaltically round the food during the whole period of digestion. But if it contracts, without in any way being diminished in length, this is because downward traction of the gullet is not a property of the movement of circular peristalsis. For what alone happens, as Erasistratus himself said, is that when the upper parts contract the lower ones dilate.¹ And everyone knows that this can be plainly seen happening even in a dead man, if water be poured down his throat; this symptom² results from the passage of matter through a narrow

¹ For "symptom," cf. p. 13, and p. 12, note 3. "Transitum namque materiae per angustum corpus id accidens consequitur" (Linacre). Less a "result" or "consequence" than an "accompaniment."

² For "symptom," cf. p. 13, and p. 12, note 3. "Transitum namque materiae per angustum corpus id accidens consequitur" (Linacre). Less a "result" or "consequence" than an "accompaniment."
GALEN

σώματος ὀδοιπορίαις ἀκόλουθόν ἐστι τὸ σύμπτωμα. θαυμαστὸν γὰρ, εἰ διερχομένου τινὸς αὐτὸν ὅγκον μὴ διασταλῆσεται. οὐκοίν τὸ μὲν τῶν ἀνώ συστελλομένων διαστέλλεσθαι τὰ κάτω κοινὸν ἐστὶ καὶ τοῖς νεκροῖς σώμασι, δὲ ὅπως οὐκ ὑπωσοῦν τι διεξέρχεται, καὶ τοῖς ἅμως, εἰτε περιστελλόντο τοῖς διερχομένοις εἰσθ' ἐλκοιτο.

Τὸ δὲ τῆς τοῦ μήκους συναιρέσεως ἰδιον τῶν τὰς εὐθεῖας ἦνοι ἔχοντων ὀργάνων, ἵνα ἐπιστάσωντα τι. ἀλλὰ μὴν ἐδείχθη καταστώμενος οἱ στόμαχος, οὐ γὰρ ἄν ἐλκε τὸν λάρυγγα. δῆλον οὖν, ὡς ἡ γαστήρ ἐλκεῖ τὰ σιτία διὰ τοῦ στομάχου.

Кαὶ ἡ κατὰ τὸν ἐμετον δὲ τῶν ἐμοῦμενῶν ἄχρι τοῦ στομάτος φορά πάντως μὲν που καὶ αὐτή τὰ μὲν ὑπὸ τῶν ἀναφερομένων διατεινόμενα μέρη τοῦ στομάχου διεστῶτα κέκτηται, τῶν πρόσω δὲ τὸ ἐκάστοτε ἐπιλαμβάνεται, τούτῳ ἀρχόμενον διαστέλλεται, τὸ δὲ ὁπισθεὶς καταλείπει δηλονότι συστελλόμενον, ὡσθ' ὁμοίαν εἶναι πάντη τὴν διάθεσιν τοῦ στομάχου κατὰ την τοῦ τοῦτο τῇ τῶν καταπινώτων. ἀλλὰ τῆς ὅλης μὴ παροῦσις τὸ μήκος ὅλον ἵσον ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις συμπτώμασι διαφύλατται.

Διὰ τούτο δὲ καὶ κατατίνει τὰ ὅλαν ἐστὶν ἢ ἐμεῖν, ὅτι καταπίνεται μὲν ἄμφοτερ βής γαστρὸς τῶν χυτῶν ἐνεργοῦντων, τοῦ μὲν ἐντὸς ἐλκοτοῦ, τοῦ δὲ ἐκτὸς περιστελλομένου τε καὶ συνεπωθοῦντος, ἐμεῖται δὲ ὅτερον μόνον τοῦ ἐξωθεὶν ἐνεργοῦντος.

---

1 i.e. this is a purely mechanical process.
channel; it would be extraordinary if the channel did not dilate when a mass was passing through it.\textsuperscript{1} Obviously then the dilatation of the lower parts along with the contraction of the upper is common both to dead bodies, when anything whatsoever is passing through them, and to living ones, whether they contract peristaltically round their contents or attract them.\textsuperscript{2}

Curtailment of length, on the other hand, is peculiar to organs which possess longitudinal fibres for the purpose of attraction. But the gullet was shown to be pulled down; for otherwise it would not have drawn upon the larynx. It is therefore clear that the stomach attracts food by the gullet.

Further, in \textit{vomiting}, the mere passive conveyance of rejected matter up to the mouth will certainly itself suffice to keep open those parts of the oesophagus which are distended by the returned food; as it occupies each part in front [above], it first dilates this, and of course leaves the part behind [below] contracted. Thus, in this respect at least, the condition of the gullet is precisely similar to what it is in the act of swallowing.\textsuperscript{3} But there being no \textit{traction}, the whole length remains equal in such cases.

And for this reason it is easier to swallow than to vomit, for deglutition results from \textit{both} coats of the stomach being brought into action, the inner one exerting a pull and the outer one helping by peristalsis and propulsion, whereas emesis occurs from the outer coat alone functioning, without there

\textsuperscript{1} i.e. this phenomenon is a proof neither of \textit{peristol\'e} nor of attraction. \textit{cf.} p. 97, note 2.

\textsuperscript{2} Contraction and dilatation of course being reversed.
GALEN

oudevos elkoontos eis to stoma. ou gar de osterpe
hetis gastros theios prophyeito tov katapiniein
ta sitia, ton auton trupon kai tois emeis
epithumei ti tov katal to stoma morion tov ginno-
menvon pathimatos, all' amphi tis gastros authis
eisin evantia diatheseis, oregeomenvi men kai
prosimevni tis chrismi tis kai oikeia, dysochera-
uosis de kai apotribomeni tis allotria. dieo
cai to katapiniein auta tois men ikanous oregeo-
menvois tov oikeiou edemmaton tis gastri tachistata
gyvnetai, safodos elkoousi auta kai kataspwss
prin eis maesthni, tois de htoi fymakon tis kai
173 anagnikeyn binousin heti sitiow en xofin

faramakon prosofemenvois aniarpa kai
mogios stis kataposis
auton epiteleita.

Dilos ou estin ek tov eirmemwv ou men on
kistwv tis gastros ou das evdeias exoun livas
hetis ek tov stomatos eis autheis olkeis
emeika gegovos
kai dia tout' en taizis katasosoi
mouais energhow,
ou de exwtheon ou das
emykarios exouth
emeika men
pierstepelthei
tois enuparkousi kai
proswhein
auta toinoutos
apetelaetheis,
energow de
oude
etton en
tois emeis
etais katasososi
enar-
gastata
demartpe
ti legeomenv
kai to kata
tis channis
to kai
stomate
kathape
1 The channa is a kind of sea-perch; "a species of Ser-
rannus, either S. scriba or S. cabrilla" (D'Arcy W. Thompson).
cf. Aristotel's Nat. Hist. (D'Arcy Thompson's edition, Ox-
ford, 1910), IV., xi., 538 a, 20. The synodont "is not to be
identified with certainty, but is supposed to be Dentex vul-
268
being any kind of pull towards the mouth. For, although the swallowing of food is ordinarily preceded by a feeling of desire on the part of the stomach, there is in the case of vomiting no corresponding desire from the mouth-parts for the experience; the two are opposite dispositions of the stomach itself; it yearns after and tends towards what is advantageous and proper to it, it loathes and rids itself of what is foreign. Thus the actual process of swallowing occurs very quickly in those who have a good appetite for such foods as are proper to the stomach; this organ obviously draws them in and down before they are masticated; whereas in the case of those who are forced to take a medicinal draught or who take food as medicine, the swallowing of these articles is accomplished with distress and difficulty.

From what has been said, then, it is clear that the inner coat of the stomach (that containing longitudinal fibres) exists for the purpose of exerting a pull from mouth to stomach, and that it is only in deglutition that it is active, whereas the external coat, which contains transverse fibres, has been so constituted in order that it may contract upon its contents and propel them forward; this coat furthermore, functions in vomiting no less than in swallowing. The truth of my statement is also borne out by what happens in the case of the channae and synodonts; the stomachs of these animals are sometimes found in their mouths, as also Aristotle writes in his History garis,” that is, an edible Mediterranean perch. “It is not the stomach,” adds Prof. Thompson, “but the air-bladder that gets everted and hangs out of the mouth in fishes, especially when they are hauled in from a considerable depth.” cf. H. A., VIII., ii., 591 b, 5.

269
ξώων ἔγραφεν ἰστορίας καὶ προστίθησι γε τὴν αἰτίαν ὑπὸ λαμαργίας αὐτοῖς τοῦτο συμβαίνειν φάσκων.

'Εχει γὰρ ὃδε· κατὰ τὰς σφοδροτέρας ὀρέξεις ἀνω προστέχει πάσι τοῖς ζῴων ἡ γαστήρ, ὡστε τινὲς τοῦ πάθους αἰσθησιν ἐναρχηθῆναι σχόντες ἐξέρπειν αὐτοῖς φασί τὴν κοιλίαν, ἐνίοι τε μασω-174 μένων ἐτὶ καὶ μῆπω || καλῶς εἰν τῷ στόματι τὰ σιτία κατεργασαμένων ἕξαρπάζει φανερῶς ἀκόντων. ἐφ’ ὅν περι ἤων ζῴων φύσει λαμάργων ὑπαρχόντων ἢ τ’ εὐρυχωρία τοῦ στόματος ἐστὶν δαψιλῆς ἢ τ’ τῆς γαστρός θέσις ἐγήγη, ἡς ἐπὶ συνόδοντός τε καὶ χάνης, οὐδὲν θαυμαστόν, ὅταν ἰκανῶς πεινάσαντα διόκη τι τῶν μικροτέρων ζῴων, εἰτ’ ἦδη πλησίον ἢ τοῦ συλλαβεῖν, ἀνατρέχειν ἐπειγούσης τῆς ἐπιθυμίας εἰς τὸ στόμα τὴν γαστέρα. γενέσθαι δ’ ἄλλος ἀμήχανον τοῦτο μὴ οὐχ ὦσπερ διὰ χειρὸς τοῦ στομάχου τῆς γαστρός ἐπιστωμένης εἰς ἑαυτὴν τὰ σιτία. καθά-

περ γὰρ καὶ ἤμειν ὑπὸ προθυμίας ἐνίοτε τῇ χειρὶ συνεπεκτείνομεν ὅλους ἡμᾶς αὐτοῖς ἑνεκα τοῦ θάττων ἐπιδράζασθαι τοῦ προκειμένου σώματος, οὕτω καὶ ἡ γαστήρ ὁλον χειρὶ τῷ στομάχῳ συνεπεκτένεται. καὶ διὰ τοῦτ’ ἐφ’ ὅν ζῴων ἀμα τὰ τρία ταυτὶ συνέπεσεν, ἐφεσία σὲ σφοδρὰ τῆς τροφῆς ὧ τ’ στομάχος μικρὸς ἢ τ’ εὐρυχωρία τοῦ στόματος δαψιλῆς, ἐπὶ τοῦτων ὀλίγη ῥοπὴ τῆς ἑπεκτάσεως εἰς τὸ στόμα τὴν κοιλίαν ὅλην ἀνα-φέρει.

'Ἡρκεῖ μὲν οὖν ἵσως ἀνδρὶ φυσικῷ παρ’ αὐτῆς 175 μόνης τῆς κατασκευῆς τῶν ὁργὰς οὖν τὴν ἐνδείξειν τῆς ἐνεργείας λαμβάνειν. οὐ γὰρ δὴ μάτην γ’ 270
of *Animals*; he also adds the cause of this: he says that it is owing to their voracity.

The facts are as follows. In all animals, when the appetite is very intense, the stomach rises up, so that some people who have a clear perception of this condition say that their stomach "creeps out" of them; in others, who are still masticating their food and have not yet worked it up properly in the mouth, the stomach obviously snatches away the food from them against their will. In those animals, therefore, which are naturally voracious, in whom the mouth cavity is of generous proportions, and the stomach situated close to it (as in the case of the synodont and channa), it is in no way surprising that, when they are sufficiently hungry and are pursuing one of the smaller animals, and are just on the point of catching it, the stomach should, under the impulse of desire, spring into the mouth. And this cannot possibly take place in any other way than by the stomach drawing the food to itself by means of the gullet, as though by a hand. In fact, just as we ourselves, in our eagerness to grasp more quickly something lying before us, sometimes stretch out our whole bodies along with our hands, so also the stomach stretches itself forward along with the gullet, which is, as it were, its hand. And thus, in these animals in whom those three factors co-exist—an excessive propensity for food, a small gullet, and ample mouth proportions—in these, any slight tendency to movement forwards brings the whole stomach into the mouth.

Now the constitution of the organs might itself suffice to give a naturalist an indication of their functions. For Nature would never have purpose-
Galen

ἀν ἡ φύσις ἐκ δυοῦν χιτώνων ἐναντίως ἀλλήλοις ἐχόντων ἀπειργάσατο τὸν οἰσοφάγον, εἰ μὴ καὶ διαφόρως ἐκάτερος αὐτῶν ἐνεργεῖν ἐμελλέν. ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ πάντα μᾶλλον ἢ τὰ τῆς φύσεως ἔργα διαγραφῶσκειν οἱ περὶ τὸν Ἐρασίστρατον εἰσίν ἰκανοὶ, φέρε κακὸς τοὺς ξώναν ἀνατομῆς ἐπι- δείξωμεν αὐτοῖς, ὡς ἐκάτερος τῶν χιτώνων ἐνεργεῖ τὴν εἰρημένην ἐνεργείαν. εἰ δὴ τι λαβὼν ξώνον, εἶτα γυμνόσας αὐτοῦ τὰ περικείμενα τῷ στομάχῳ σώματα χωρίς τοῦ διατείμεν τίνα τῶν νεύρων ἢ τῶν ἀρτηριῶν ἢ τῶν φλεβῶν τῶν αὐτοῦ τεταγμένων ἔθελοις ἀπὸ τῆς γένους ἐως τοῦ θώρακος εὐθείᾳς τομαῖς διελεῖν τὸν ἔξω χιτώνα τὸν τᾶς ἐγκαρσίας ἱνα ἔχωντα κάπειτα, τῷ ξώφι τροφήν προσενέγκοις, οὐκεὶ κατακόμψον αὐτὸ καίτοι τῇς περιστάλτικῆς ἐνεργείας ἀπολογούναι. εἰ δ' αὖ πάλιν ἐφ' ἐτέρου ξώφου διατέρων ἀμφοτέρων τοὺς χιτώνας τομαῖς ἐγκαρσίαις, θέαση καὶ τοῦτο κατακόμψον οὐκέτ' ἐνεργοῦντος τοῦ ἐντός. ὃ δῆλον, ὅτι καὶ διὰ θατέρου μὲν αὐτῶν καταπίνειν οἷὸν

176 τ' ἐστὶν, ὡς αὐτοὶ ἀλλοῖς καὶ τοῦτ' ἐστὶ θεάσασθαι σαφῶς ἐπὶ τῆς εἰρημένης ἀνατομῆς, ὡς εν τῷ κατακόμψει ὑποπιμπλαται πνεύματος ὁ στόμαχος τοῦ συγκαταπινομένου τοὺς στείοις, δ' περιστελλο- μένου μὲν τοῦ ἐξωθεν χιτώνος ὃθελται ῥάδιος εἰς τὴν γαστέρα σὺν τοῖς ἐδέσμασι, μόνον δὲ τοῦ ἐνδόν ὑπάρχοντος ἐμποδόν ἰσταται τῇ φορᾷ τῶν

---

1 Under the term “neura,” tendons were often included as well as nerves. Similarly in modern Dutch the word zenuw (“sinew”) means both a tendon and a nerve; zenuwachtig = “nervous.”

272
lessly constructed the oesophagus of two coats with contrary dispositions; they must also have each been meant to have a different action. The Erasistratean school, however, are capable of anything rather than of recognizing the effects of Nature. Come, therefore, let us demonstrate to them by animal dissection as well that each of the two coats does exercise the activity which I have stated. Take an animal, then; lay bare the structures surrounding the gullet, without severing any of the nerves, arteries, or veins which are there situated; next divide with vertical incisions, from the lower jaw to the thorax, the outer coat of the oesophagus (that containing transverse fibres); then give the animal food and you will see that it still swallows although the peristaltic function has been abolished. If, again, in another animal, you cut through both coats with transverse incisions, you will observe that this animal also swallows although the inner coat is no longer functioning. From this it is clear that the animal can also swallow by either of the two coats, although not so well as by both. For the following also, in addition to other points, may be distinctly observed in the dissection which I have described—that during deglutition the gullet becomes slightly filled with air which is swallowed along with the food, and that, when the outer coat is contracting, this air is easily forced with the food into the stomach, but that, when there only exists an inner coat, the air impedes the conveyance of

2 Rather than the alternative reading, τὸν ἵππον κτῆνα. Galen apparently supposes that the outer coat will not be damaged, as the cuts will pass between its fibres. These cuts would be, presumably, short ones, at various levels, no single one of them involving the whole circumference of the gullet.
σιτίων διατείνον τ’ αυτόν καὶ τὴν ἐνέργειαν ἐμποδίζουν.

'Αλλ’ οὔτε τούτων οὔτεν 'Ερασίστρατος εἶπεν οὔθ’ ὡς ἡ σκολιὰ θέσις τοῦ στομάχου διαβάλλει σαφῶς τὸ δόγμα τῶν νομιζόντων ὑπὸ τῆς ἀνωθεν βολῆς μόνης ποδηγούμενα μέχρι τῆς γαστρῶς ἱέναι τὰ καταπίνομενα. μόνον δ’ ὅτι πολλὰ τῶν μακροτραχήλων ξώων ἐπικεκυφῶτα καταπίνει, καλὸς εἶπεν. δὲ δήλου, ὅτι τὸ φαινόμενον οὐ τὸ πῶς καταπίνομεν ἀποδείκνυσιν, ἀλλὰ τὸ πῶς οὐ καταπίνομεν· ὅτι γὰρ μὴ διὰ μόνης τῆς ἀνωθεν βολῆς, ἐκ τούτου δὴλον οὐ μὴ εἴθ’ ἐλκουσθῆς τῆς κοιλίας εἴτε παράγοντος αὐτὰ τοῦ στομάχου,

177 δὴλον ἤδη πω. ἀλλ’ ἡμεῖς γε ʻ|| πάντας τοὺς λογισμοὺς εἰπόντες τοὺς τ’ ἐκ τῆς κατασκευῆς τῶν ὀργάνων ὄρμωμένους καὶ τοὺς ἀπὸ τῶν ἀλλων συμπτωμάτων τῶν τε πρὸ τοῦ γυμνωθῆναι τὸν στόμαχον καὶ γυμνωθέντος, ὡς ὅλως πρόσθεν ἐλέγομεν, ἵκανως ἐνεδειξάμεθα τοῦ μὲν ἔλεην ἕνεκα τῶν ἑντὸς χιτῶνα, τοῦ δ’ ἀπωθεῖν τὸν ἑκτὸς γεγονέναι.

Προφθέμεθα μὲν οὖν ἀποδείξαι τὴν καθεκτικὴν δύναμιν ἐν ἐκάστῳ τῶν ὀργάνων οὐσίαν, ἀσπερ ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ τὴν ἐλκτικὴν τε καὶ προσέτι τὴν ἀλλοιωτικὴν. ὑπὸ δὲ τῆς ἀκολουθίας τοῦ λόγου τὰς τέταρτας ἀπεδείξαμεν ὑπαρχούσας τῇ γαστρὶ, τὴν ἐλκτικὴν μὲν ἐν τῷ καταπίνειν, τὴν καθεκτικὴν δὲ ἐν τῷ πέπτειν, τὴν ἀπωστικὴν δ’ ἐν τοῖς ἐμέτοις καὶ ταῖς τῶν πεπεμμένων σιτίων εἰς τὸ λεπτὸν ἐνετερον ὑποχωρήσεσιν, αὐτὴν δὲ τὴν πέψιν ἀλλοϊωσίν ὑπάρχειν.

274
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. viii

food, by distending this coat and hindering its action.

But Erasistratus said nothing about this, nor did he point out that the oblique situation of the gullet clearly confutes the teaching of those who hold that it is simply by virtue of the impulse from above that food which is swallowed reaches the stomach. The only correct thing he said was that many of the long-necked animals bend down to swallow. Hence, clearly, the observed fact does not show how we swallow but how we do not swallow. For from this observation it is clear that swallowing is not due merely to the impulse from above; it is yet, however, not clear whether it results from the food being attracted by the stomach, or conducted by the gullet. For our part, however, having enumerated all the different considerations—those based on the constitution of the organs, as well as those based on the other symptoms which, as just mentioned, occur both before and after the gullet has been exposed—we have thus sufficiently proved that the inner coat exists for the purpose of attraction and the outer for the purpose of propulsion.

Now the original task we set before ourselves was to demonstrate that the *retentive* faculty exists in every one of the organs, just as in the previous book we proved the existence of the *attractive*, and, over and above this, the *alterative* faculty. Thus, in the natural course of our argument, we have demonstrated these four faculties existing in the stomach—the attractive faculty in connection with swallowing, the retentive with digestion, the expulsive with vomiting and with the descent of digested food into the small intestine—and digestion itself we have shown to be a process of *alteration*.
IX

Οὔκοιν ἐτ' ἀπορήσομεν οὐδὲ περὶ τοῦ σπληνός, εἰ ἐλκεὶ μὲν τὸ οἴκειον, ἀποκρίνει δὲ τὸ ἀλλότριον, ἀλλοιοῦν δὲ καὶ κατέχειν, ὅσον ἂν ἐπιστάσηται; πέφυκεν, οὐδὲ περὶ ἡπατος ἢ φλεβὸς ἢ ἀρτηρίας 178 ἢ καρδίας ἢ τῶν ἢ ἄλλων τινὸς· ἀναγκαῖα γὰρ ἐδείχθησαν αἱ τέτορες αὐταὶ δυνάμεις ἅπαντες μορίω τῷ μέλλοντι θρέψθαι καὶ διὰ τούτῳ αὐτὰς ὑπηρέτιδας εἶναι θρέψεως ἐφαμεν· ὡς γὰρ τὸ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἀποστάτημα τοῖς κυσίν ἢδιστον, οὕτω καὶ τὰ τοῦ ἡπατος περιττώματα τὸ μὲν τῷ σπληνί, τὸ δὲ τῇ χοληδόχῳ κύστει, τὸ δὲ τοῖς νεφροῖς οἰκείον.

X

Καὶ λέγειν ἔτι περὶ τῆς τούτων γενέσεως οὐκ ἂν ἐθέλομι μεθ' Ἰπποκράτην καὶ Πλάτωνα καὶ Ἀριστοτέλην καὶ Διακλέα καὶ Πραξιγόραν καὶ Φιλότιμον· οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδὲ περὶ τῶν δυνάμεων ἐπον ἂν, εἰ τις τῶν ἐμπροσθεν ἀκριβῶς ἐξειργάσατο τῶν ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν λόγων.

Ἑπεὶ δ' οἱ μὲν παλαιοὶ καλῶς ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν ἀποφημάμενοι παρέλιπον ἀγωνίσασθαι τῷ λόγῳ, μηδ' ὑπονοήσαντες ἔσεθαι τινὰς εἰς τοσοῦτον ἀναισχύντους σοφιστάς, ὡς ἀντιλέγειν ἐπικειρήσαι τοῖς ἐναργέσιν, οἱ νεώτεροι δὲ τὸ μὲν τι

1 cf. p. 205.
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. ix.–x

IX

Concerning the spleen, also, we shall therefore have no further doubts as to whether it attracts what is proper to it, rejects what is foreign, and has a natural power of altering and retaining all that it attracts; nor shall we be in any doubt as to the liver, veins, arteries, heart, or any other organ. For these four faculties have been shown to be necessary for every part which is to be nourished; this is why we have called these faculties the handmaids of nutrition. For just as human faeces are most pleasing to dogs, so the residual matters from the liver are, some of them, proper to the spleen, others to the gall-bladder, and others to the kidneys.

X

I should not have cared to say anything further as to the origin of these [surplus substances] after Hippocrates, Plato, Aristotle, Diocles, Praxagoras, and Philotimus, nor indeed should I even have said anything about the faculties, if any of our predecessors had worked out this subject thoroughly.

While, however, the statements which the Ancients made on these points were correct, they yet omitted to defend their arguments with logical proofs; of course they never suspected that there could be sophists so shameless as to try to contradict obvious facts. More recent physicians, again, have been

* Thus Galen elsewhere calls the spleen a mere emunctory (ἐκμαγείον) of the liver. cf. p. 214, note 1.
GALEN

νυκτήνετες ὑπὸ τῶν σοφισμάτων ἐπείσθησαν αὐτοῖς, τὸ δὲ τι καὶ ἀντιλέγειν ἐπιχειρήσαντες ἀποδείκνυμι μοι πολὺ τῆς τῶν παλαιῶν ἔδοξαν δυνάμεος; || διὰ τούθ', ὡς ἂν ἐκείνων αὐτῶν, εἴπερ ἔτ' ἣν τις, ἀγωνίσασθαι μοι δοκεῖ πρὸς τοὺς ἀνατρέποντας τῆς τέχνης τὰ κάλλιστα, καὶ αὐτὸς οὔτως ἐπειράθησθαι συνθεῖναι τοὺς λόγους.

"Ὅτι δ' ἡ οὐδέν ἡ παντάπασιν ἀνύσω τι σμικρόν, οὐκ ἂγνοι πάμπολλα γὰρ εὐρίσκω τελέως μὲν ἀποδεδειγμένα τοῖς παλαιῶς, οὔτε δὲ συνετὰ τοῖς πολλοῖς τῶν νῦν δ' ἀμαθίαν ἀλλ' οὔδ' ἐπιχειροῦμενα γιγνώσκεσθαι διὰ ῥαθυμίαν, οὔτ', εἰ καὶ γνωσθεῖ τινί, δικαίως ἐξεταζόμενα.

Χρή γὰρ τῶν μέλλοντα γιγνώσκεσθαι τι τῶν πολλῶν ἁμείρων εὐθὺς μὲν καὶ τῇ φύσει καὶ τῇ πρώτῃ διδασκαλίᾳ πολὺ τῶν ἀλλῶν διενεγκεῖν· ἐπειδὰν δὲ γένηται μειράκιον, ἀληθείας τινὰ σχεῖν ἔρωτικήν μανίαν, ὡστε ἐνθουσιώτατα καὶ μήθ' ἡμέρας μήτε νυκτὸς διαλείπειν σπεύδουσα τε καὶ συντεταμένον ἐκμαθεῖν, ὅσα τοῖς ἐνδοξοτάτοις εἰρηταὶ τῶν παλαιῶν· ἐπειδὰν δ' ἐκμάθη, κρίνειν αὕτα καὶ βασανίζειν χρόνωσι παμπόλλῳ καὶ σκοπείν, πόσα μὲν ὁμολογεί τοῖς ἑναρχηθὸι φαινομένους, 180 πόσα δὲ διαφέρεται, || καὶ οὕτω τὰ μὲν αἱρεῖσθαι, τὰ δ' ἀποστρέφεσθαι. τῷ μὲν δὴ τοιούτῳ πάνυ σφόδρα χρησίμους ἡλπικα τοὺς ἕμετέρους ἐσε-
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. x

partly conquered by the sophistries of these fellows and have given credence to them; whilst others who attempted to argue with them appear to me to lack to a great extent the power of the Ancients. For this reason I have attempted to put together my arguments in the way in which it seems to me the Ancients, had any of them been still alive, would have done, in opposition to those who would overturn the finest doctrines of our art.

I am not, however, unaware that I shall achieve either nothing at all or else very little. For I find that a great many things which have been conclusively demonstrated by the Ancients are unintelligible to the bulk of the Moderns owing to their ignorance—nay, that, by reason of their laziness, they will not even make an attempt to comprehend them; and even if any of them have understood them, they have not given them impartial examination.

The fact is that he whose purpose is to know anything better than the multitude do must far surpass all others both as regards his nature and his early training. And when he reaches early adolescence he must become possessed with an ardent love for truth, like one inspired; neither day nor night may he cease to urge and strain himself in order to learn thoroughly all that has been said by the most illustrious of the Ancients. And when he has learnt this, then for a prolonged period he must test and prove it, observing what part of it is in agreement, and what in disagreement with obvious fact; thus he will choose this and turn away from that. To such an one my hope has been that my treatise would prove of the very greatest assistance. . . .
GALEN

σθαί λόγους· εἰεν δ' ἂν ὅλγοι παυτάπασιν οὕτωι
tοῖς δ' ἄλλοις οὕτω γενήσεται τὸ γράμμα περιτ
tόν, ὡς εἰ καὶ μύθον ὄνῳ τὶς λέγουι.

XI

Συμπεραντέον οἱν ήμῖν τὸν λόγον ἐνεκὰ τῶν
τῆς ἁλθείας ἐφιεμένων ὅσα λείπει κατ' αὐτὸν
ἐτι προσθείσων. ὡς γὰρ ἡ γαστήρ ἔλευς 
ἐναργῶς καὶ καταστῆ τὰ σιτία τοῖς σφόδρα
πεινώδεσι, πρὸν ἄκριβῶς ἐν τῷ στόματι λειώ
θήναι, δυσχεραίνει δὲ καὶ ἀπωθείται τοῖς 
ἀποσί
tοις τε καὶ πρὸς ἀνάγκην ἐσθίσωσιν, οὕτω καὶ
τῶν ἄλλων ὀργάνων ἔκαστον ἀμφοτέρας ἔχει τὰς
δυνάμεις, τὴν τε τῶν οἰκείων ἐλεκτικήν καὶ τὴν
τῶν ἄλλωτρίων ἀποκριτικὴν.

καὶ διὰ τοῦτο, καὶ

ἔξ ἐνὸς ἡ χοιτῶν ὀργανῶν τί συνεστώς, χόστερ
καὶ αἱ κύστεις ἀμφοτεραὶ καὶ αἱ μήτραι καὶ αἱ
φλέβες, ἀμφοτεραὶ τῶν ἰών ἔχει τὰ γένη, τῶν
eὐθείων τε καὶ τῶν ἐγκαρσίων.

181 Καὶ μὲν γε καὶ τρίτον τι || γένος ἰών ἔστι
<τῶν> λοξῶν, ἔλαττον πολὺ τῷ πλῆθει τῶν
προειρημένων δύο γενεῶν. εὐρίσκεται δ' ἐν μὲν
τοῖς ἐκ δυὸν χωτῶν συνεστήκοσιν ὀργάνοις
ἐν βατέρῳ μόνῳ ταῖς εὐθείαις ἴσιν ἀναμεμψιμένον,
ἐν δὲ τοῖς ἐξ ἐνὸς ἁμα τοῖς ἄλλοις δύο γένεσι.
συνεπιλαμβάνοντι δ' αὐτὰ μέγιστον τῇ τῆς καθ
ekτικῆς ὀνομασθείσῃ δυνάμεως ἐνεργεία.
δεῖ ταῖς
γὰρ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ παυταχόθεν ἐφιλιγχθαι
καὶ περιτετάσθαι τοῖς ἐνυπάρχουσι τῷ μόριον, ἡ

1 cf. p. 269.
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. x.—xi

Still, such people may be expected to be quite few in number, while, as for the others, this book will be as superfluous to them as a tale told to an ass.

XI

For the sake, then, of those who are aiming at truth, we must complete this treatise by adding what is still wanting in it. Now, in people who are very hungry, the stomach obviously attracts or draws down the food before it has been thoroughly softened in the mouth, whilst in those who have no appetite or who are being forced to eat, the stomach is displeased and rejects the food.¹ And in a similar way each of the other organs possesses both faculties—that of attracting what is proper to it, and that of rejecting what is foreign. Thus, even if there be any organ which consists of only one coat (such as the two bladders,² the uterus, and the veins), it yet possesses both kinds of fibres, the longitudinal and the transverse.

But further, there are fibres of a third kind—the oblique—which are much fewer in number than the two kinds already spoken of. In the organs consisting of two coats this kind of fibre is found in the one coat only, mixed with the longitudinal fibres; but in the organs composed of one coat it is found along with the other two kinds. Now, these are of the greatest help to the action of the faculty which we have named retentive. For during this period the part needs to be tightly contracted and stretched over its contents at every point—the

² The urinary bladders of pigs (such as Galen dissected) are thin, and appear to have only one coat.
GALEN

μὲν γαστήρ ἐν τῷ τῆς πέψεως, αἰ μητραὶ δ’ ἐν τῷ τῆς κύτταρος χρόνῳ παντὶ.

Ταῦτ’ ἄρα καὶ ὁ τῆς φλέβος χυτῶν εἰς ὧν ἐκ πολυειδῶν ἰδών ἐγένετο καὶ τῶν τῆς ἀρτηρίας ὁ μὲν ἐξωθεὶν ἐκ τῶν στρογγύλων, ὢ δ’ ἐσωθεὶν ἐκ μὲν τῶν εὐθείων πλείστων, ὥλγων δὲ τινῶν σὺν αὐταῖς καὶ τῶν λοξῶν, ὡστε τὰς μὲν φλέβας ταῖς μήτραις καὶ ταῖς κύστεσιν ἑοικέναι κατὰ γε τὴν τῶν ἰδών σύνθεσιν, εἰ καὶ τῷ πάχει λείπονται, τὰς δ’ ἀρτηρίας τῆς γαστρῆς. μόνα δὲ πάντων ὄργανων ἐκ δυοίν θ’ ἄμα καὶ ἀμφοτέρων ἐγκαρσίας ἐχόντων τὰς ίνας ἐγένετο τὰ ἐντερα. τὸ δ’ ὅτι

182 βέλτιον ἄν ἐπὶ τῶν τ’ ἀλλῶν ἐκάστῳ τοιοῦτῳ τὴν φύσιν ὑπάρχειν, οἶλοντε καὶ νῦν ἕστιν, τοῖς τ’ ἐντεραῖς ἐκ δυοίν ὀμοίων χυτῶν συγκείσθαι, τῆς περὶ χρείας μορίων πραγματείας ἔστιν. οὐκοιν νῦν χρῆ ποθεῖν ἀκοῦειν περὶ τῶν τοιούτων, ὦσπερ οὐδὲ διὰ τ’ ἐπὶ τοῦ πλήθους τῶν χυτῶν ἐκάστου τῶν ὄργανων διαπεφώνηται τοῖς ἀνατομικοῖς ἀνδράσιν. ὑπέρ μὲν γὰρ τούτων αὐτόρκως ἐν τοῖς περὶ τῆς ἀνατομικῆς διαφωνίας εἰρητάς πέρι δὲ τοῦ διότι τοιούτων ἐκάστου ἐγένετο τῶν ὄργανων, ἐν τοῖς περὶ χρείας μορίων εἰρήσεται.

XII

Νυνὶ δ’ οὐδέτερον τοῦτων πρόκειται λέγειν, ἀλλὰ τὰς φυσικὰς δυνάμεις μόνας ἀποδεικνύειν ἐν ἐκάστῳ τῶν ὄργανων τέταρτας ὑπαρχοῦσας. ἐπὶ τοῦτ’ οὖν πάλιν ἐπανελθόντες ἀναμνήσωμέν τε

1 cf. p. 243.
2 My suggestion is that Galen refers to (1) the mucous
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xi.—xii

stomach during the whole period of digestion,\textsuperscript{1} and the uterus during that of gestation.

Thus too, the coat of a vein, being single, consists of various kinds of fibres; whilst the outer coat of an artery consists of circular fibres, and its inner coat mostly of longitudinal fibres, but with a few oblique ones also amongst them. Veins thus resemble the uterus or the bladder as regards the arrangement of their fibres, even though they are deficient in thickness; similarly arteries resemble the stomach. Alone of all organs the intestines consist of two coats of which both have their fibres transverse.\textsuperscript{2} Now the proof that it was for the best that all the organs should be naturally such as they are (that, for instance, the intestines should be composed of two coats) belongs to the subject of the use of parts\textsuperscript{3}; thus we must not now desire to hear about matters of this kind nor why the anatomists are at variance regarding the number of coats in each organ. For these questions have been sufficiently discussed in the treatise "On Disagreement in Anatomy." And the problem as to why each organ has such and such a character will be discussed in the treatise "On the Use of Parts."

XII

It is not, however, our business to discuss either of these questions here, but to consider duly the natural faculties, which, to the number of four, exist in each organ. Returning then, to this point, let us coat, with its valvulae conniventes, and (2) the muscular coat, of which the chief layer is made up of circular fibres. \textit{cf.} p. 282, note 1.

\textsuperscript{1} Or utility.
τών ἐμπροσθεν εἰρημένων ἐπιθωμένων τε κεφαλὴν ἢδη τῷ λόγῳ παντὶ τὸ λείπον ἐτι προσθέντες. ἐπειδὴ γὰρ ἐκάστον τῶν ἐν τῷ ζωῷ μορίων ἐλκεῖν εἰς ἑαυτὸ τῶν οἰκεῖων χυμῶν ἀποδέδεικται καὶ πρώτη σχεδὸν αὐτὴ τῶν φυσικῶν ἐστὶν δυνάμεων, 183 ἐφεξῆς || ἐκεῖνοι γνωστεῖν, ὡς οὐ πρότερον ἀποτρίβεται τῇ ἐλχθείσαι <τροφῆν> ἦτοι σύμπασαν ἢ καὶ τι περίττωμα αὐτῆς, πρὶν ἀν εἰς ἑαυτὰ κεφαλήν διάθεσιν ἢ αὐτῷ τὸ ὀργανόν ἢ καὶ τῶν περιεχομένων ἐν αὐτῷ τὰ πλεῖστα. ἢ μὲν οὖν γαστήρ, ἐπειδὰν μὲν ἰκανῶς ἐμπλησθή τῶν συτίων καὶ τὸ χρηστότατον αὐτῶν εἰς τοὺς ἑαυτῆς χιτώνας ἐναπόθηται βδάλλουσα, τηνικαύτ' ᾳδη τὸ λοιπὸν ἀποτρίβεται καθάπερ ἄχθος ἀλλότριον· ἢ κύστεις δ', ἐπειδὰν ἐκάστον τῶν ἐλχθεντῶν ἢ τῷ πλήθει διατείνων ἢ τῇ ποιότητι δάκνου ἀναρον γένηται.

Τῷ δ' αὐτῷ τρόπῳ καὶ αἱ μητρὶ ᾠτοὺ γαρ, ἐπειδὰν μηκέτι φέρωσι διατεινόμεναι, τὸ λυποῦν ἀποθέοθασι σπεύδουσιν ἢ τῇ ποιότητι δακνόμεναι τῶν ἐκυρθέντων εἰς αὐτὰς ὑγρῶν. ἐκάτερον δὲ τῶν εἰρημένων γίγνεται μὲν καὶ βιαίως ἑστίν ὅτε καὶ ἀμβλώσκουσι τηνικαῦτα, γίγνεται δ' ὡς τὰ πολλὰ καὶ προσηκόντως, ὅπερ οὐκ ἀμβλώσκειν ἀλλ' ἀποκυνίσκειν τε καὶ τίκτειν ὑμοζέται. τοῖς μὲν οὖν ἀμβλωθρείδειοι φαρμάκοις ἢ τισων ἀλλοις 184 παθῆμασι διαφθείρουσι τὸ ἐμβρυων ἢ τινας τῶν ύμενων αὐτοῦ ῥηγυύονς αἱ ἀμβλώσεις ἑπονται, οὔτω δὲ κατειδαν ἀναθῶσί ποθ' αἱ μητρὶ κακῶς ἔχουσαι τῇ διατάσει, ταῖς δὲ τῶν ἐμβρύων αὐτῶν κινήσει ταῖς σφοδροτάταις οἱ τόκοι, καθάπερ καὶ τοῦθ' Ἰπποκράτει καλῶς εἰρηται. κοινὸν δ' 207.
recall what has already been said, and set a crown to the whole subject by adding what is still wanting. For when every part of the animal has been shewn to draw into itself the juice which is proper to it (this being practically the first of the natural faculties), the next point to realise is that the part does not get rid either of this attracted nutriment as a whole, or even of any superfluous portion of it, until either the organ itself, or the major part of its contents also have their condition reversed. Thus, when the stomach is sufficiently filled with the food and has absorbed and stored away the most useful part of it in its own coats, it then rejects the rest like an alien burden. The same happens to the bladders, when the matter attracted into them begins to give trouble either because it distends them through its quantity or irritates them by its quality.

And this also happens in the case of the uterus; for it is either because it can no longer bear to be stretched that it strives to relieve itself of its annoyance, or else because it is irritated by the quality of the fluids poured out into it. Now both of these conditions sometimes occur with actual violence, and then miscarriage takes place. But for the most part they happen in a normal way, this being then called not miscarriage but delivery or parturition. Now abortifacient drugs or certain other conditions which destroy the embryo or rupture certain of its membranes are followed by abortion, and similarly also when the uterus is in pain from being in a bad state of tension; and, as has been well said by Hippocrates, excessive movement on the part of the embryo itself brings on labour. Now
GALEN

ἄπασῶν τῶν διαθέσεων ἡ ἀνία καὶ ταύτης αἰτιον τριττόν ἢ ὅγκος περιττὸς ἢ τι βάρος ἢ δήξεις· ὅγκος μὲν, ἐπειδὰν μηκέτι φέρωσι διατείνωμενα, βάρος δ’, ἐπειδὰν ὑπὲρ τὴν ρώμην αὐτῶν ἢ τὸ περιεχόμενον, δήξεις δ’, ἐπειδὰν ήτοι τὰ πρότερον ἐν τοῖς ὑμέσιν ὑγρὰ στεγόμενα ραγέντων αὐτῶν εἰς αὐτὰς ἐκχυθῇ τὰς μήτρας ἡ καὶ σύμπαν ἀποφθαρέν τὸ κύριμα σηπόμενον τε καὶ διαλυόμενον εἰς μοχθηρὰς ἱχώρας οὕτως ἐρεθίζη τε καὶ δάκυνη τὸν χυτῶν τῶν ὑστερῶν.

Ἀνάλογον οὖν ἐν ἄπασι τοῖς ὀργάνοις ἐκαστὰ τῶν τ’ ἔργων αὐτῶν τῶν φυσικῶν καὶ μέντοι τῶν παθημάτων τε καὶ νοσημάτων φαίνεται γιγνόμενα, τὰ μὲν ἐναργῶς καὶ σαφῶς οὕτως, όσ’ ἀποδείξεως δείσθαι μηδέν, τὰ δ’ ἢττον μὲν ἐναρ-185 γός, οὐ μὴν ἀγνωστά γε παντάπασι τοῖς ἡθέλουσι προσέχειν τοὺν νοῦν.

Ἐπὶ μὲν οὖν τῆς γαστρὸς αὖ τε δήξεις ἐναργεῖς, διότι πλείοτης αἰσθήσεως μετέχει, τὰ τ’ ἄλλα παθήματα τά τε ναυτίαν ἐμποιοῦντα καὶ οἱ καλούμενοι καρδιωγμοὶ σαφῶς ἐνδείκνυται τὴν ἀποκριτικὴν τε καὶ ἀπωστικὴν τῶν ἀλλοτρίων δύναμιν, οὕτω δὲ κατὰ τῶν ύστερῶν τε καὶ τῆς κύστεως τῆς τὸ ὑπον ὑποδεχομένης ἐναργῶς γὰρ οὖν καὶ αὐτὴ φαίνεται μέχρι τοσοῦτον τὸ ὑγρὸν ὑποδεχομένη τε καὶ ἀθροίζουσα, ἀχρις ἂν ἦτοι πρὸς τοῦ πλῆθους αὐτοῦ διατεύμεθα μηκέτι φέρη τὴν ἀνίαν ἢ πρὸς τῆς ποιότητος δακνομένης χρονίζουν γὰρ ἐκαστὸν τῶν περιττωμάτων ἐν τῷ σώματι σήμεον δηλοῦτι, τὸ μὲν ἐλάττουν, τὸ δὲ πλεῖον χρόνως καὶ οὕτω δακνόδες τε καὶ δριμύ καὶ ἰαερὸν τοῖς περιέχουσι γίγνεται. οὐ μὴν

286
pain is common to all these conditions, and of this there are three possible causes—either excessive bulk, or weight, or irritation; bulk when the uterus can no longer support the stretching, weight when the contents surpass its strength, and irritation when the fluids which had previously been pent up in the membranes, flow out, on the rupture of these, into the uterus itself, or else when the whole foetus perishes, putrefies, and is resolved into pernicious ichors, and so irritates and bites the coat of the uterus.

In all organs, then, both their natural effects and their disorders and maladies plainly take place on analogous lines,¹ some so clearly and manifestly as to need no demonstration, and others less plainly, although not entirely unrecognizable to those who are willing to pay attention.

Thus, to take the case of the stomach: the irritation is evident here because this organ possesses most sensibility, and among its other affections those producing nausea and the so-called heartburn clearly demonstrate the eliminative faculty which expels foreign matter. So also in the case of the uterus and the urinary bladder; this latter also may be plainly observed to receive and accumulate fluid until it is so stretched by the amount of this as to be incapable of enduring the pain; or it may be the quality of the urine which irritates it; for every superfluous substance which lingers in the body must obviously putrefy, some in a shorter, and some in a longer time, and thus it becomes pungent, acrid, and burdensome to the organ which contains it. This

¹ Relationship between physiology and pathology again emphasized. cf. p. 188, note 2.

287
GALEN

ἐπὶ γε τῆς ἐπὶ τῷ ἡπατι κύστεως ὁμοίως ἔχει· ὃ δήλου, ὅτι νεύρων ἡκιστα μετέχει. χρῆ δὲ κάνταθα τὸν γε φυσικὸν ἀνδρα τὸ ἄναλογον ἐξευρίσκειν. εἰ γὰρ ἐλκεῖν τε τὸν οἴκειον ἀπε- δείχθη χυμόν, ὡς φαίνεσθαι πολλάκις μεστὴν, 186 ἀποκρίθειν εἰς τὸν αὐτὸν τούτον οὐκ εἰς μακράν, ἀναγκαῖον ἔστιν αὐτὴν ἢ διὰ τὸ πλῆθος βαρυνο- μένην ἢ τῆς ποιότητος μεταβαλλούσης ἐπὶ τὸ δακνώδες τε καὶ δριμύ τῆς ἀποκρίσεως ἐφίσεθαι. οὐ γὰρ ὅτα μὲν σιτίᾳ τὴν ἀρχαίαν ὑπαλλάττει ποιότητα ταχέως οὔτως, ὡστε ἐπειδὰν ἐμπέσῃ τοῖς λεπτοῖς ἐντέροις, εὔθες εἶναι κόπρον, ἡ χολή δ’ οὗ πολὺ μᾶλλον ἢ τὸ οὖρον, ἐπειδὰν ἀπαξ ἐκπέσῃ τῶν φλεβῶν, ἐξαλλάττει τὴν ποιότητα, τάχιστα μεταβάλλοντα καὶ σηπόμενα. καὶ μὴν εἰπέρ ἐπὶ τὰς τῶν κατὰ τὰς ύστερας καὶ τὴν κοίλιαν καὶ τὰ ἔντερα καὶ προσέτι τὴν τὸ οὖρον ὑποδεχομένην κύστιν ἐναργῶς φαύνεται διάτασις τῆς ἢ δὴξῃ ἢ ἄχθος ἐπεγείρων ἐκαστὸν τῶν ὁργάων εἰς ἀπόκρμοι, οὐδὲν χαλεπὸν κἂν τῆς χοληδόχου κύστεως ταύτῃ τούτῳ ἐννοεῖν ἐπὶ τῶν ἀλλῶν ἀπαίτων ὁργῶν, ἐξ ὧν δηλοῦτι καὶ αἱ ἀρτηρίαι καὶ αἱ φλέβες εἰσίν.

XIII

Οὐ μὴν οὖδὲ τὸ διὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ πόρου τὴν θ’ ὀλκὴν γίγνεσθαι καὶ τὴν ἀπόκρισιν ἐν διαφέ- 187 ρουσι οἳ χρόνοισ οὖδέν ἐτι χαλεπὸν ἐξευρέως, εἰ γε καὶ τῆς γαστρὸς ὁ στόμαχος οὐ μόνον ἐδέσματα

288
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xii.—xiii

does not apply, however, in the case of the bladder alongside the liver, whence it is clear that it possesses fewer nerves than do the other organs. Here too, however, at least the physiologist ¹ must discover an analogy. For since it was shown that the gall-bladder attracts its own special juice, so as to be often found full, and that it discharges it soon after, this desire to discharge must be either due to the fact that it is burdened by the quantity or that the bile has changed in quality to pungent and acrid. For while food does not change its original quality so fast that it is already ordure as soon as it falls into the small intestine, on the other hand the bile even more readily than the urine becomes altered in quality as soon as ever it leaves the veins, and rapidly undergoes change and putrefaction. Now, if there be clear evidence in relation to the uterus, stomach, and intestines, as well as to the urinary bladder, that there is either some distention, irritation, or burden inciting each of these organs to elimination, there is no difficulty in imagining this in the case of the gall-bladder also, as well as in the other organs,—to which obviously the arteries and veins also belong.

XIII

Nor is there any further difficulty in ascertaining that it is through the same channel that both attraction and discharge take place at different times. For obviously the inlet to the stomach does not merely

¹ Or physicist—the investigator of the Physis or Nature. cf. p. 196, note 2. Note here the use of analogical reasoning. cf. p. 113, note 2.
GALEN

καὶ πόματα παράγων εἰς αὐτὴν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ταῖς ναυτίαις τὴν ἐναντίαν ὑπηρεσίαν ὑπηρετῶν ἐναργῶς φαίνεται, καὶ τῆς ἑπὶ τῷ ἦπατι κύστεως ὁ αὐχήν εἰς δὲν ἀμα μὲν πληροὶ δι’ αὐτοῦ τὴν κύστιν, ἀμα δὲ ἐκκενοὶ, καὶ τῶν μητρῶν ὁ στόμαχος ὁσαύτως ὁδὸς ἐστὶν εἰσὶ μὲν τοῦ σπέρματος, ἐξῶ δὲ τοῦ κυψίματος.

'Αλλὰ κάνταυθα πάλιν μὲν ἐκκριτικὴ δύναμις ἐναργῆς, οὐ μὲν ὀμοίως γ’ αὐτῇ σαφῆς τοῖς πολλοῖς ἡ ἔλεκτική: ἀλλ’ Ἰπποκράτης μὲν ἀρροϊστοῦ μήτρας αὐτίκειον αὐχέα φησὶ: "Οὐ γὰρ δύναται αὐτῆς ὁ στόμαχος εἰρύσαι τὴν γονήν."

'Ερασίστρατος δὲ καὶ Ἀσκληπιάδης εἰς τοσούτοις ἢκουσι σοφίας, ὡστ’ οὐ μόνον τὴν κοιλίαν καὶ τὰς μήτρας ἀποστεροῦσι τῆς τοιαύτης δυνάμεως ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν ἑπὶ τῷ ἦπατι κύστιν ἀμα τοῖς νεφροῖς. καίτοι γ’ ὅτι μηδ’ εἰπεῖν δυνατῶν ἔτερον αἰτίαιν ἢ οὕρων ἢ χολῆς διακρίσεως, ἐν τῷ πρώτῳ δέδεικται λόγῳ.

Καὶ μήτραν οὖν καὶ γαστέρα καὶ τὴν ἑπὶ 188 τῷ ἦπατι κύστιν δι’ ἑνὸς καὶ ταύτου στομάχου τῆς θ’ ὀλκῆν καὶ τῆς ἀπόκρισιν εὑρίσκοντες ποιομένας μηκέτι θαυμάζωμεν, εἰ καὶ διὰ τῶν φλεβῶν ἡ φύσις ἐκκρίνει πολλάκις εἰς τὴν γαστέρα περιττόματα. τούτου δ’ ἔτι μάλλον οὐ χρὴ θαυμάζειν, εἰ, δι’ ὄν εἰς ἦπαρ ἀνεδόθη φλεβῶν ἐκ γαστρός, αὖθις εἰς αὐτὴν εἴς ἦπατος ἐν ταῖς μακροτέραις ἀσιτίαις ἐλκεσθαί τις δύναται τροφή. τὸ γὰρ τοῖς τοιούτοις ἀπιστεῖν

1 cf. p. 95. 2 I. xiii.; II. ii. 3 Galen’s idea is that if reversal of the direction of flow
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiii

conduct food and drink into this organ, but in the condition of nausea it performs the opposite service. Further, the neck of the bladder which is beside the liver, albeit single, both fills and empties the bladder. Similarly the canal of the uterus affords an entrance to the semen and an exit to the foetus.

But in this latter case, again, whilst the eliminative faculty is evident, the attractive faculty is not so obvious to most people. It is, however, the cervix which Hippocrates blames for inertia of the uterus when he says:—"Its orifice has no power of attracting semen." 1

Erasistratus, however, and Asclepiades reached such heights of wisdom that they deprived not merely the stomach and the womb of this faculty but also the bladder by the liver, and the kidneys as well. I have, however, pointed out in the first book that it is impossible to assign any other cause for the secretion of urine or bile. 2

Now, when we find that the uterus, the stomach and the bladder by the liver carry out attraction and expulsion through one and the same duct, we need no longer feel surprised that Nature should also frequently discharge waste-substances into the stomach through the veins. Still less need we be astonished if a certain amount of the food should, during long fasts, be drawn back from the liver into the stomach through the same veins 3 by which it was yielded up to the liver during absorption of nutriment. 4 To disbelieve such things

can occur in the primae viae (in vomiting), it may also be expected to occur in the secundae viae or absorptive channels. 4 For this "delivery," "up-yield," or anadosis, v. p. 13, note 5.


Galen

"ομοιών ἐστὶ δὴπον τῷ μηκέτι πιστεύειν μηδ' ὅτι τὰ καθαίροντα φάρμακα διὰ τῶν αὐτῶν στομάτων ἐξ ὅλου τοῦ σῶματος εἰς τὴν γαστέρα τοὺς οἰκείους ἐπιστᾶται χμοῦς, δ' ὅν ἐμπροσθεν ἡ ἀνάδοσις ἐγένετο, ἀλλ' ἔτερα μὲν ξητεῖν ἀνάδοσες, ἔτερα δὲ καθάρσεως στόματα. καὶ μὴν εἰπερ ἐν καὶ ταύτῳ στόμα διτταίς ὑπηρετεῖ δυνάμειν, ἐν διαφόροις χρόνοις εἰς τάναντια τὴν ὀλκην ποιουμέναις, ἐμπροσθεν μὲν τῇ κατὰ τὸ ἡπαρ, ἐν δὲ τῷ τῆς καθάρσεως καιρῷ τῇ τοῦ φαρμάκου, τί θαμμαστόν ἐστι διττῆς ὑπη-

189 ῶρειαν τα καὶ χρείαν εἶναι ταῖς φλεψὶ πτερὶς ἐν τῷ μέσῳ τεταγμέναις ἡπατὸς τε καὶ τῶν κατὰ τὴν κολλᾶν, ώσθ' ὡτότε μὲν ἐν τοῦτοις ἀφθονος εἶπη περιεχομένη τροφή, διὰ τῶν εἰρη-

μένων εἰς || ἡπαρ ἀναφέρεσθαι φλεβῶν, ὁπότε δ' εἶπη κενά καὶ δεόμενα τρέφοσθαι, διὰ τῶν αὐτῶν αὐθίς ἐξ ἡπατος ἐλκεσθαι;

Πάν γὰρ ἐκ παντὸς ἐλκεων φαίνεται καὶ παντὶ μεταδίδοναι καὶ μία τίς εἶναι σύρροια καὶ σύμ-

πνοια πάντων, καθώσπερ καὶ τούθ' ὁ θειότατος Ἰπποκράτης εἶπεν. ἔλκει μὲν οὖν τὸ ἱσχυρότερον, ἐκκενούται δὲ τὸ ἀσθενέστερον.

Ἱσχυρότερον δὲ καὶ ἀσθενέστερον ἔτερον ἔτερον μόριον ἡ ἀπλῶς καὶ φύσει καὶ κοινῇ πᾶσιν ἐστιν ἡ ἰδίως τῷ τῷ γίγνεται. φύσει μὲν καὶ κοινῇ πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις θ' ἀμα καὶ ξέφοις ἡ μὲν καρδία τοῦ ἡπατος, τὸ δ' ἡπαρ τῶν ἐντέρων τε καὶ τῆς γαστρός, αἱ δ' ἀρτηρίαι τῶν φλεβῶν ἔλκυσαι τε τὸ χρήσιμον ἐαυταῖς ἀποκρίναι τε τὸ μὴ τοιοῦτον

1 The mesenteric veins.

292
would of course be like refusing to believe that purgative drugs draw their appropriate humours from all over the body by the same stomata through which absorption previously takes place, and to look for separate stomata for absorption and purgation respectively. As a matter of fact one and the same stoma subserves two distinct faculties, and these exercise their pull at different times in opposite directions—first it subserves the pull of the liver and, during catharsis, that of the drug. What is there surprising, then, in the fact that the veins situated between the liver and the region of the stomach\(^1\) fulfil a double service or purpose? Thus, when there is abundance of nutriment contained in the food-canal, it is carried up to the liver by the veins mentioned; and when the canal is empty and in need of nutriment, this is again attracted from the liver by the same veins.

For everything appears to attract from and to go shares with everything else, and, as the most divine Hippocrates has said, there would seem to be a consensus in the movements of fluids and vapours.\(^2\) Thus the stronger draws and the weaker is evacuated.

Now, one part is weaker or stronger than another either absolutely, by nature, and in all cases, or else it becomes so in such and such a particular instance. Thus, by nature and in all men alike, the heart is stronger than the liver at attracting what is serviceable to it and rejecting what is not so; similarly the liver is stronger than the intestines and stomach, and

\(^2\) Linacre renders: "Una omnium confluxio ac conspiratio"; and he adds the marginal note "Totum corpus nostrum est conspirabile et confluxile per meatus communes." cf. p. 48.
GALEN

ισχυρότεραι. καθ’ ἐκαστον δ’ ἡμῶν ἴδιως ἐν μὲν τῷ τῷ καρπῷ τὸ ᾱτταρ ἵσχυρότερον ἐλκειν, ἢ γαστήρ δ’ ἐν τῷ. πολλῆς μὲν γὰρ ἐν τῇ κοιλίᾳ περιεχομένης τροφῆς καὶ σφοδρῶς ὀρεγομένου τε καὶ χρήζοντος τοῦ ἦπατος, πάντως ἵσχυρότερον ἐλκεί τὸ σπλάγχνον. ἐμπαλιν δὲ τοῦ μὲν ἦπατος 190 ἐμπετάπληκμένου τε καὶ διατεταμένου, τῆς γαστρὸς δ’ ὀρεγομένης καὶ κενῆς ὑπαρχούσης ἢ τῆς ὀλκής ἵσχυς εἰς ἐκείνην μεθίσταται.

Ως γὰρ, εἰ κἂν ταῖς χερσί τινα συτία κατέχοντες ἄλληλων ἀρτάξομεν, εἰ μὲν ὁμοίως εἶχαν δεόμενοι, περιγύνεσθαι τὸν ἵσχυρότερον εἰκός, εἰ δ’ οὕτως μὲν ἐμπετάπληκμένοι εἰς καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἀμελῶς κατέχον τὰ περίττα ἢ καὶ τὶς μεταδοῦναι ποθῶν, ὅ’ δ’ ἀσθενέστερος ὀρέγουσι δεινῶς, οὐδὲν ἄν εἰπὲ κόλυμα τοῦ μη πάντα λαβεῖν αὐτὸν, οὗτω καὶ ἡ γαστήρ ἐκ τοῦ ἦπατος ἐπισταῖραι ῥάδιως, ὅταν αὐτὴ μὲν ἰκανῶς ὀρέγηται τροφῆς, ἐμπετάπληκμένον δ’ ἢ τὸ σπλάγχνον. καὶ τοῦ γε μὴ πεινὴν ἐνίοτε τὸ ξύπνα ἡ περιουσία τῆς ἐν ἦπατι τροφῆς αἰτία. κρείττωνα γὰρ ἔχουσα καὶ ἑτοιμοτέραν ἡ γαστήρ τροφῆν οὐδὲν δεῖται τῆς ἐξωθεν. εἰ δὲ γέ ποτε δέοιτο μὲν, ἀποροίτη δὲ, πληροῦται περιττωμάτων. ἢχώρει δὲ τινὲς εἰς ταῦτα χολῶδεις τε καὶ φλεγματώδεις καὶ ὅρρωδεις, οὔτε μόνους ἐλκούσῃ μεθίσαν αὐτῇ τὸ ἦπαρ, ὅταν ποτὲ καὶ αὐτὴ δεῖται τροφῆς.

“Ωσπερ οὖν ἐξ ἄλληλων ἐλκεὶ τὰ μόρια || 191 τροφῆν, οὗτω καὶ ἀποτίθεται ποτ’ εἰς ἄλληλα

294
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiii

d\the arteries than the veins. In each of us personally, however, the liver has stronger drawing power at one time, and the stomach at another. For when there is much nutriment contained in the alimentary canal and the appetite and craving of the liver is violent, then the viscus\textsuperscript{1} exerts far the strongest traction. Again, when the liver is full and distended and the stomach empty and in need, then the force of the traction shifts to the latter.

Suppose we had some food in our hands and were snatching it from one another; if we were equally in want, the stronger would be likely to prevail, but if he had satisfied his appetite, and was holding what was over carelessly, or was anxious to share it with somebody, and if the weaker was excessively desirous of it, there would be nothing to prevent the latter from getting it all. In a similar manner the stomach easily attracts nutriment from the liver when it [the stomach] has a sufficiently strong craving for it, and the appetite of the viscus is satisfied. And sometimes the surplusage of nutriment in the liver is a reason why the animal is not hungry; for when the stomach has better and more available food it requires nothing from extraneous sources, but if ever it is in need and is at a loss how to supply the need, it becomes filled with waste-matters; these are certain biliary, phlegmatic [mucous] and serous fluids, and are the only substances that the liver yields in response to the traction of the stomach, on the occasions when the latter too is in want of nutriment.

Now, just as the parts draw food from each other, so also they sometimes deposit their excess substances

\textsuperscript{1} The alimentary canal, as not being edible, is not considered a \textit{splanchnon} or viscus.
τὸ περιττὸν καὶ ὁσπερ ἐλκόντων ἐπλεονέκτει τὸ ἱσχυρότερον, οὗτο καὶ ἀποτεθεμένων καὶ τῶν γε καλουμένων ρευμάτων ἢδε ή πρόφασις. ἐκαστὸν γὰρ τῶν μορίων ἔχει τινὰ τόνον σύμφυτον, διός ἰδιωθεῖται τὸ περιττὸν. ὅταν οὖν ἐν εἷς αὐτῶν ἀρρωστότερον γένηται κατὰ δὴ τινὰ διάθεσιν, ἐξ ἀπάντων εἰς ἐκεῖνο συρρεῖν ἀνάγκη τὰ περιττώματα. τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἱσχυρότατον ἐναποτίθεται τοῖς πλησίον ἄπασιν, ἐκείνων δὲ αὐτῶν πάλιν ἐκαστὸν εἰς ἐτερ ἀττα τῶν ἀσθενεστέρων, εἰτ' αὐθίς ἐκείνων ἐκαστὸν εἰς ἄλλα καὶ τοῦτ ἐπὶ πλεῖστον γίγνεται, μέχρι περ ἂν εἷς ἀπάντων ἐλαυνόμενον τὸ περίττωμα καθ’ ἐν τῷ μείνῃ τῶν ἀσθενεστάτων ἐντεύθεν γὰρ οὐκέτ’ εἰς ἄλλο δύναται μεταρρέειν, ὡς ἂν μήτε δεχομένου τινὸς αὐτὸ τῶν ἱσχυρότερον μήτ’ ἀπώσασθαι δυναμένου τοῦ πεπονθότος.

Ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τῶν παθῶν τῆς γενέσεως καὶ τῆς ιάσεως αὕτης ἡμῶν ἐπιδεικνύντων ικανά καὶ ἐκείνων ἐσται λαβεῖν μαρτύρια τῶν ἐν τρίθε τὸν 192 λόγῳ παντὶ ὑπελεγμένων ὄρθως. ὅ ὢ ἐν τῷ παρόντι δεῖξαι προοίμιον, πάλιν ἀναλάβωμεν, ὡς οὔδεν θαυμαστὸν ἔξ ἡπατος ἢκεῖν τινὰ τροφὴν ἐντέροις τε καὶ γαστρὶ διὰ τῶν αὐτῶν φλεβῶν, δι’ ὄν ἐμπροσθεν ἐξ ἐκείνων εἰς ἡμᾶρ ἀνεδίδοτο. καὶ πολλοῖς ἀθρόως τε καὶ τελέως ἀποκοπεῖσιν ἱσχυρῶν γεμνασίων ή τι κῶλον ἀποκοπΕΙΣΙΝ αἵματος διὰ τῶν ἐντέρων γίγνεται κένωσις ἐκ τῶν περιόδων, ὡς οὑν καὶ Ἐπιποκράτης ἐλεγεν, οὔδεν μὲν ἄλλο λυποῦσα, καθαίρουσα δὲ ὄξεως τὸ πᾶν σώμα καὶ τὰς πλησιμονὰς ἐκκενοῦσα, διὰ τῶν

296
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiii

in each other, and just as the stronger prevailed when the two were exercising traction, so it is also when they are depositing; this is the cause of the so-called fluxions,\(^1\) for every part has a definite inborn tension, by virtue of which it expels its superfluities, and, therefore, when one of these parts,—owing, of course, to some special condition—becomes weaker, there will necessarily be a confluence into it of the superfluities from all the other parts. The strongest part deposits its surplus matter in all the parts near it; these again in other parts which are weaker; these next into yet others; and this goes on for a long time, until the superfluity, being driven from one part into another, comes to rest in one of the weakest of all; it cannot flow from this into another part, because none of the stronger ones will receive it, while the affected part is unable to drive it away.

When, however, we come to deal again with the origin and cure of disease, it will be possible to find there also abundant proofs of all that we have correctly indicated in this book. For the present, however, let us resume again the task that lay before us, i.e. to show that there is nothing surprising in nutriment coming from the liver to the intestines and stomach by way of the very veins through which it had previously been yielded up from these organs into the liver. And in many people who have suddenly and completely given up active exercise, or who have had a limb cut off, there occurs at certain periods an evacuation of blood by way of the intestines—as Hippocrates has also pointed out somewhere. This causes no further trouble but sharply purges the whole body and evacuates the plethoras;

\(^1\) Lit. rheums; hence our term rheumatism.
αὐτῶν δὴ ποιοι φλεβῶν τῆς φορᾶς τῶν περιττῶν ἐπι-
tελουμένης, δι' ὧν ἐμπροσθεῖν ἢ ἀνάδοσις ἐγιγνετο. 
Πολλάκις δ' ἐν νόσοις ἡ φύσις διὰ μὲν τῶν 
αὐτῶν δήποι φλεβῶν τὸ πᾶν ἐκκαθαίρει ἔριον, οὔ 
μὴν αἰματώδης γ' ἡ κένωσις αὐτοῖς, ἀλλὰ κατὰ 
tὸν λυποῦντα γίγνεται χυμόν. οὕτω δὲ καὶ ταῖς 
χολέραις ἐκκενοῦται τὸ πᾶν σῶμα διὰ τῶν εἰς 
ἐντερά τε καὶ γαστέρα καθηκουσῶν φλεβῶν.
Τὸ δ' οἰεσθαί, μίαν εἶναι ταῖς ὑλαῖς φορὰν 
193 τελέως ἀγνοούντως ἐστί τὰς φυσικὰς || δυνάμεις 
tάς τ' ἀλλάς καὶ τὴν ἐκκριτικὴν ἐναντίαν οὕσαν 
tὴ ἐλκτικὴ ταῖς γὰρ ἐναντίαις δυνάμεσιν ἐναντίας 
κινήσεις τε καὶ φορᾶς τῶν ὑλῶν ἀναγκαῖον 
ἀκολουθεῖν. ἐκαστὸν γὰρ τῶν μορίων, ὅταν 
ἐλκύσῃ τὸν οἰκεῖον χυμόν, ἔπειτα κατάσχη καὶ 
ἀπολαύσῃ, τὸ περιττὸν ἄπαν ἀποθέσθαι σπεύδει, 
καθότι μάλιστα δύναται τάχιστα θ' ἀμα καὶ 
κάλλιστα, κατὰ τὴν τοῦ περιττοῦ ῥοπῆν.
"Οθεν ἡ γαστήρ τα μὲν ἔπιστολάζοντα τῶν 
περιττωμάτων ἐμέτοις ἐκκαθαίρει, τὰ δ' υφιστά-
μενα διαρροίαις. καὶ τὸ γε ναυτιώδες γίγνεσθαι 
tὸ ἔριον τούτ' ἐστὶν ὄρμησαι τὴν γαστέρα κενω-
θῆται δι' ἐμέτον. οὕτω δὲ δὴ τι βίαν καὶ 
σφοδρὸν ἡ ἐκκριτικὴ δύναμις ἐχει, ὡστ' ἐν τοῖς 
eἰλεοῖς, ὅταν ἀποκλεισθῇ τελέως ἡ κάτω διέξοδος, 
ἐμεῖται κόπρος. καβώτι πριν διελθείν το ὑπε-
tον ἐντερον ἄπαν καὶ τὴν νήστιν καὶ τῶν πυλαρῶν 
καὶ τὴν γαστέρα καὶ τῶν οἰσοφάγων οὐχ οἶνον τε 
διὰ τοῦ στόματος ἐκπεσεῖν οὐδενὶ τοιοῦτοι περιτ-
tώματι. τὶ δὴ θαυμαστῶν, εἰ κάκ τῆς ἐσχάτης

1 Here Galen apparently indicates that vital functions are

298
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiii

the passage of the superfluities is effected, of course, through the same veins by which absorption took place. Frequently also in disease Nature purges the animal through these same veins—although in this case the discharge is not sanguineous, but corresponds to the humour which is at fault. Thus in cholera the entire body is evacuated by way of the veins leading to the intestines and stomach.

To imagine that matter of different kinds is carried in one direction only would characterise a man who was entirely ignorant of all the natural faculties, and particularly of the eliminative faculty, which is the opposite of the attractive. For opposite movements of matter, active and passive, must necessarily follow opposite faculties; that is to say, every part, after it has attracted its special nutrient juice and has retained and taken the benefit of it hastens to get rid of all the surplusage as quickly and effectively as possible, and this it does in accordance with the mechanical tendency of this surplus matter.¹

Hence the stomach clears away by vomiting those superfluities which come to the surface of its contents,² whilst the sediment it clears away by diarrhoea. And when the animal becomes sick, this means that the stomach is striving to be evacuated by vomiting. And the expulsive faculty has in it so violent and forcible an element that in cases of ileus [volvulus], when the lower exit is completely closed, vomiting of faeces occurs; yet such surplus matter could not be emitted from the mouth without having first traversed the whole of the small intestine, the jejunum, the pylorus, the stomach, and the oesophagus. What is there to wonder at, then, if something at least partly explicable in terms of mechanical law. cf. Introduction, p. xxviii. ² cf. pp. 211, 247.

299


GALEN

ἐπιφανείας τῆς κατὰ τὸ δέρμα μέχρι τῶν ἐντέρων 194 τε καὶ τῆς γαστρὸς ἀφικνοῦτό τι || μεταλαμβανό-
μενον, ώς καὶ τοῦτ᾽ Ἰπποκράτης ἡμᾶς ἔδιδαξεν, οὐ πνεύμα μόνον ἢ περίττως φάσκων ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν τροφὴν αὐτὴν ἐκ τῆς ἐσχάτης ἐπιφανείας αὐθίς ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν, ὅθεν ἀνηνέχθη, καταφέρε-
σθαι. ἐλάχισται γὰρ ῥοπαλ κινήσεως τῆς ἐκκριτικῆς ταύτης οἰκιζοῦσι δύναμιν, ὡς ἂν διὰ τῶν ἐγκαρσίων μὲν ἵνων γεγομένην, ὥκυτατα δὲ διαδιδομένην ἀπὸ τῆς κινησάσης ἀρχής ἐπὶ τὰ καταντικρὸν πέρατα. οὐκον ἀπεικονὸς ὑπὸ ἀδύ-
νατον ἀθέλει ποτὲ ψύξει τὸ πρὸς τῷ δέρματι μόριον ἐξαίφνης πιληθὲν ἀμα μὲν ἄρρωστότερον αὐτὸ γενόμενον, ἀμα δ᾽ ὅιον ἀχθος τι μᾶλλον ή παρασκευὴν θρέψεως ἔχου τὴν ἐμπροσθεν ἀλύτους αὐτῷ παρασκαρμένην υγρότητα καὶ διὰ τοῦτ ἀπωθείσθαι σπεῦδον, ἀμα δὲ τῆς ἔξω φορᾶς ἀποκεκλεισμένης τῇ πυκνώσει, πρὸς τὴν λοιπὴν ἐπιστραφῆναι καὶ οὐτῶ βιασάμενον εἰς τὸ παρακείμενον αὐτῷ μόριον ἄθροώς ἀπώσασθαι τὸ περιττὸν, ἐκεῖνο δ᾽ αὐτῷ πάλιν εἰς τὸ μετ᾽ αὐτῷ, ||

195 καὶ τούτῳ μὴ παύσασθαι γεγομένου, ἄχρις ἂν ἡ μετάληψις ἐπὶ τὰ ἐντὸς πέρατα τῶν φλεβῶν τελεύτηση.

Αἱ μὲν δὴ τοιαύται κινήσεις θάττον ἀπο-
pαύονται, αἱ δ᾽ ἀντὶ τῶν ἐνδοθεν διερεδιξόντων, ὡς ἐν τε τοῖς καθαίρουσι φαρμάκοις καὶ ταῖς χολέραις ἱσχυρότεραι τε πολὺ καὶ μονιμότεραι γίγνονται καὶ διαμένουσιν, ἐστ坚定不移 ἂν καὶ ἡ περὶ
tοῖς στόμασι τῶν ἀγγείων διάθεσις, ἡ τὸ πλησίον

---

1 See p. 298, note 1.
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiii

should also be transferred from the extreme skin-surface and so reach the intestines and stomach? This also was pointed out to us by Hippocrates, who maintained that not merely pneuma or excess-matter, but actual nutriment is brought down from the outer surface to the original place from which it was taken up. For the slightest mechanical movements¹ determine this expulsive faculty, which apparently acts through the transverse fibres, and which is very rapidly transmitted from the source of motion to the opposite extremities. It is, therefore, neither unlikely nor impossible that, when the part adjoining the skin becomes suddenly oppressed by an unwonted cold, it should at once be weakened and should find that the liquid previously deposited beside it without discomfort had now become more of a burden than a source of nutrition, and should therefore strive to put it away. Finally, seeing that the passage outwards was shut off by the condensation [of tissue], it would turn to the remaining exit and would thus forcibly expel all the waste-matter at once into the adjacent part; this would do the same to the part following it; and the process would not cease until the transference finally terminated at the inner ends of the veins.²

Now, movements like these come to an end fairly soon, but those resulting from internal irritants (e.g., in the administration of purgative drugs or in cholera) become much stronger and more lasting; they persist as long as the condition of things³ about the mouths of the veins continues, that is, so long as

² The ends of the veins in the alimentary canal from which absorption or anadosis had originally taken place.
³ Diathesis.
GALEN

ἐλκοῦσα, παραμένη. αὐτὴ μὲν γὰρ τὸ συνεχὲς ἕκκενοι μόριον, ἐκεῖνο δ’ αὐτὸ τὸ μετ’ αὐτὸ καὶ τοῦτ’ οὐ παύεται μέχρι τῆς ἐσχάτης ἐπιφανείας, ὡστε διαδιδόντων τῶν ἐφεξῆς ἀεὶ μορίων ἐτέρων ἐτέροις τὸ πρῶτον πάθος ὁκύτατα δικνεῖσθαι μέχρι τῶν ἐσχάτων. οὕτως οὖν ἔχει κατ’ τῶν εἴλεον. αὐτὸ μὲν γὰρ τὸ φλεγμαῖνον ἐντερον οὖτε τοῦ βάρους οὗτε τῆς δριμύτητος ἀνέχεται τῶν περιττωμάτων καὶ διὰ τούτο ἐκκρίνειν αὐτὰ σπεύδει καὶ ἀπωθεῖσθαι πορρωτάτω. κωλυόμενον δὲ κάτω ποιεῖσθαι τὴν δίωσιν, ὅταν ἐνταυθοὶ ποτε τὸ σφοδρότατον ἢ τῆς φλεγμονῆς, εἰς τὰ πλησιάζοντα τῶν ὑπερκειμένων ἐντέρων ἀπωθεῖται. καὶ οὕτως ἦδη 196 κατὰ ἃ τὸ συνεχὲς τὴν ροπήν τῆς ἐκκριτικῆς δυνάμεως ἀνῶν ποιησαμένης ἀχρὶ τοῦ στόματος ἐπανέρχεται τὰ περιττώματα.

Ταῦτα μὲν οὖν δὴ κἂν τοὺς τῶν νοσημάτων λογισμοῖς ἐπὶ πλέον εἰρήσεται. τὸ δ’ ἐκ παντὸς εἰς πᾶν φέρεσθαι τι καὶ μεταλαμβάνεσθαι καὶ μίαν ἀπάντων εἶναι σύμπνοιαν τε καὶ σύρροιαν, ὡς Ἰπποκράτης ἔλεγεν, ἦδη μοι δοκῶ δεδείχθαι σαφῶς καὶ μηκέτ’ ἂν τινα, μηδ’ εἰ βραδὺς αὐτὸς νοῦς ἔνει, περὶ τῶν τοιούτων ἀπορῆσαι μηδενώς, οἶνον ὅπως ἡ γαστήρ ἢ τὰ ἐντερα τρέφεται καὶ τίνα τρόπον ἐκ τῆς ἐσχάτης ἐπιφανείας εἰς τι δικνεῖται. πάντων γὰρ τῶν μορίων ἔλκειν μὲν τὸ προσήκον τε καὶ φίλοι, ἀποκρίνειν δὲ τὸ βαρύνου ἡ δάκνον ἐχόντων δύναμιν οὐδὲν θαυμαστὸν ἐναντίας συνεχῶς γύρωσθαι κινήσεις ἐν
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiii

these continue to attract what is adjacent. For this condition ¹ causes evacuation of the contiguous part, and that again of the part next to it, and this never stops until the extreme surface is reached; thus, as each part keeps passing on matter to its neighbour, the original affection ² very quickly arrives at the extreme termination. Now this is also the case in ʻileusʻ; the inflamed intestine is unable to support either the weight or the acridity of the waste substances and so does its best to excrete them, in fact to drive them as far away as possible. And, being prevented from effecting an expulsion downwards when the severest part of the inflammation is there, it expels the matter into the adjoining part of the intestines situated above. Thus the tendency of the eliminative faculty is step by step upwards, until the superfuities reach the mouth.

Now this will be also spoken of at greater length in my treatise on disease. For the present, however, I think I have shewn clearly that there is a universal conveyance or transference from one thing into another, and that, as Hippocrates used to say, there exists in everything a consensus in the movement of air and fluids. And I do not think that anyone, however slow his intellect, will now be at a loss to understand any of these points,—how, for instance, the stomach or intestines get nourished, or in what manner anything makes its way inwards from the outer surface of the body. Seeing that all parts have the faculty of attracting what is suitable or well-disposed and of eliminating what is troublesome or irritating, it is not surprising that opposite movements should occur in them consecutively—as may

¹ Diathesis. ² Pathos.
GALEN

 αὐτοῖς, ὡσπερ ἐπὶ τῇς καρδίας ὀρᾶται σαφῶς καὶ τῶν ἀρτηριῶν ἀπασῶν καὶ τοῦ θώρακος καὶ τοῦ πνεύμονος. ἐπὶ μὲν γε τοῦτων ἀπάντων μόνον οὐ καθ’ ἐκάστην καιροῦ δι’ αὐτὴν τὰς ἐναντίας κινήσεις θ’ ἀμα τῶν ὄργανων καὶ φορὰς τῶν 197 ὑλῶν || ἐναργῶς ἐστὶν ιδεῖν γνωριμένας. εἰτ’ ἐπὶ μὲν τῆς τραχείας ἀρτηρίας οὐκ ἀπορεῖς ἐναλλὰξ ποτὲ μὲν εἰσὶν παραγούσης εἰς τὸν πνεύμονα τὸ πνεῦμα, ποτὲ δ’ ἔξω, καὶ τῶν κατὰ τὰς ρίνας πόρων καὶ διόν τοῦ στόματος ὡσαύτως οὐδ’ εἰναι σοι δοκεῖ θαυμαστὸν οὐδὲ παράδοξον, εἰ, δ’ οὐ μικρὸ πρόσθεν εἰςω παρεκομίζοτο τὸ πνεῦμα, διὰ τούτου νῦν ἐκπέμπεται, περὶ δὲ τῶν ἔξ ἡπατος εἰς ἐντερά τε καὶ γαστέρα καθηκουσῶν φλεβῶν ἀπορεῖς καὶ σοι θαυμαστὸν εἰναι φαίνεται, διά τῶν αὐτῶν ἀναδίδοσθαί θ’ ἀμα τὴν τροφὴν εἰς ἡπαρ ἐκλεσθαί τ’ ἔξ ἐκεῖνου πάλιν εἰς γαστέρα; διόρισαι δὴ τὸ ἀμα τοῦτο ποτέρως λέγεις. εἰ μὲν γὰρ κατὰ τῶν αὐτῶν χρόνων, οὐδ’ ἡμείς τοῦτο γε φαμεν. ὡσπερ γὰρ εισπνέομεν ἐν ἐτέρῳ χρόνῳ καὶ αὐθις πάλιν ἐν ἐτέρῳ ἀντεκπνέομεν, οὔτω καὶ τροφὴν ἐν ἐτέρῳ μὲν χρόνῳ τὸ ἡπάρ ἐκ τῆς γαστρὸς, ἐν ἐτέρῳ δ’ ἡ γαστήρ ἐκ τοῦ ἡπατος ἐπιστάται. εἰ δ’ ὅτι καθ’ ἐν καὶ ταύτῳ ἐξω ἐν ὀργανῶν ἐναντίαις φοραῖς ὑλῶν ὑπηρετεῖ, τοῦτο σοι βούλεται δηλοῦν τὸ ἀμα καὶ τοῦτο σε ταράτ-198 τει, τὴν τ’ || εἰσπνοῆς ἵδε καὶ τὴν ἐκπνοῆς. πάντως που καὶ αὐταί δια μὲν τῶν αὐτῶν ὄργανων γλύγρων τρόπω δὲ κινήσεώς τε καὶ φοράς τῶν ὑλῶν διαφέρουσιν.

1 He means, not only under the stress of special circumstances, but also normally.
be clearly seen in the case of the heart, in the various arteries, in the thorax, and lungs. In all these\(^1\) the active movements of the organs and therewith the passive movements of [their contained] matters may be seen taking place almost every second in opposite directions. Now, you are not astonished when the trachea-artery\(^2\) alternately draws air into the lungs and gives it out, and when the nostrils and the whole mouth act similarly; nor do you think it strange or paradoxical that the air is dismissed through the very channel by which it was admitted just before. Do you, then, feel a difficulty in the case of the veins which pass down from the liver into the stomach and intestines, and do you think it strange that nutriment should at once be yielded up to the liver and drawn back from it into the stomach by the same veins? You must define what you mean by this expression “at once.” If you mean “at the same time” this is not what we ourselves say; for just as we take in a breath at one moment and give it out again at another, so at one time the liver draws nutriment from the stomach, and at another the stomach from the liver. But if your expression “at once” means that in one and the same animal a single organ subserves the transport of matter in opposite directions, and if it is this which disturbs you, consider inspiration and expiration. For of course these also take place through the same organs, albeit they differ in their manner of movement, and in the way in which the matter is conveyed through them.

\(^2\) Lit. “rough artery.” The air-passages as well as the arteries proper were supposed by the Greeks to carry air (pneuma); diastole of arteries was, like expansion of the chest, a movement for drawing in air. cf. p. 317, note 1.
'Ο πνεύμων μὲν οὖν καὶ ὁ θώραξ καὶ ἀρτηρίας ἀι τραχεῖαι καὶ αἱ λεῖαι καὶ καρδία καὶ στόμα καὶ ρίνες εἰν ἐλαχίσταις χρόνου βοστάς εἰς ἑναντίας κινήσεις αὐτὰ τε μεταβάλλει καὶ τὰς όλας μεθίστησιν. αἱ δὲ ἐξ ἡπτατος εἰς ἐντερα καὶ γαστέρα καθήκουσι φλέβες οὐκ ἐν οὖν βραχείς χρόνου μορίων ἀλλ' ἐν πολλαίς ἡμέραις ἀπαξ ἑνίοτε τῆν ἑναιντίαν κυνοῦνται κινήσιν.

Ἐχει γὰρ ὅσε τὸ σύμπαν. ἐκαστὸν τῶν ὀργάνων εἰς ἑαυτὸ τὴν πλησιάζουσαν ἐπισπάται τροφὴν ἐκχοσκόμενον αὐτῆς ἀπασαν τὴν χρηστὴν νοτία, μέχρις ἡν ἱκανός κορεσθῆ, καὶ ταύτην, ὡς καὶ πρόσθεν ἐδείκνυμεν, ἐναποτίθεται ἑαυτῷ καὶ μετὰ ταύτα προσφέυει τε καὶ ὁμοῖος, τουτέστι τρέφεται. διόρισται γὰρ ἱκανῶς ἐμπροσθεν ἐτερον τῇς θρέψεως ἐξ ἀνάγκης αὐτῆς προηγούμενον ἡ πρόσφυσις ὑπάρχειν, ἐκεῖνης δὲ 199 ἐτι πρότερον ἡ πρόσθεσις. ὡσπερ οὖν || τοῖς ζῷοις αὐτοῖς ὅρος ἑστὶ τῆς ἐδωδῆς τὸ πληρώσαι τὴν γαστέρα, κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον ἐκάστῳ τῶν μορίων ὅρος ἑστὶ τῆς προσθέσεως ἡ πλήρωσις τῆς ὕλειας ψυχρότητος. ἐπεὶ τοῖς ἄπαν μόριον τῇ γαστρὶ ὁμοίως ὅρεγεται τρέφεσθαι, καὶ περιπτύσσεται τῇ τροφῇ καὶ οὖν σφίγγει πάνταχον αὐτὴν ὡς ἡ γαστήρ. ἐπεται δὲ ἐξ ἀνάγκης τούτῳ, καθάπερ καὶ πρόσθεν ἐρρέθη, τὸ πέπτεσθαι τοῖς ὀστῖοις, τῆς γαστρῶν οὐ διὰ τοῦτο περιστελλομένης αὐτοῖς, ἵνα ἐπιτήδεια τοῖς ἄλλοις ἑργάσηται μορίως· οὖν γὰρ ἃν οὐκέτι φυσικῶν

1 cf. p. 39, chap. xi.
2 Lit. orexis.
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiii

Now the lungs, the thorax, the arteries rough and smooth, the heart, the mouth, and the nostrils reverse their movements at very short intervals and change the direction of the matters they contain. On the other hand, the veins which pass down from the liver to the intestines and stomach reverse the direction of their movements not at such short intervals, but sometimes once in many days.

The whole matter, in fact, is as follows:—Each of the organs draws into itself the nutriment alongside it, and devours all the useful fluid in it, until it is thoroughly satisfied; this nutriment, as I have already shown, it stores up in itself, afterwards making it adhere and then assimilating it—that is, it becomes nourished by it. For it has been demonstrated with sufficient clearness already\(^1\) that there is something which necessarily precedes actual nutrition, namely adhesion, and that before this again comes presentation. Thus as in the case of the animals themselves the end of eating is that the stomach should be filled, similarly in the case of each of the parts, the end of presentation is the filling of this part with its appropriate liquid. Since, therefore, every part has, like the stomach, a craving\(^2\) to be nourished, it too envelops its nutriment and clasps it all round as the stomach does. And this [action of the stomach], as has been already said, is necessarily followed by the digestion of the food, although it is not to make it suitable for the other parts that the stomach contracts upon it; if it did so, it would no longer be a physiological organ,\(^3\) but an animal possessing reason

\(^3\) Lit. a "physical" organ; that is, a mere instrument or organon of the Physis,—not one of the Psyche or conscious personality. cf. semen, p. 132, note 1.
GALLEN

ὃργανον ἀλλὰ ξφόν τι γίγνοιτο λογισμόν τε καὶ νοῦν ἐχον, ὥς αἱρεῖσθαι τὸ βέλτιον.

Ἄλλη αὐτή μὲν περιστέλλεται τῷ τὸ πάν σῶμα δύναμιν ἐλκτικήν τινα καὶ ἀπολαυστικὴν κεκτήσθαι τῶν οἰκείων ποιοτήτων, ὡς ἐμπροσθὲν ἐδείκνυτο· συμβαίνει δὲ ἐν τούτῳ τοῖς σιτίοις ἀλλοιωθαί. καὶ μέντοι καὶ πληροθεῖσα τής ἐξ αὐτῶν ὑγρότητος καὶ κορεσθεὶσα βάρος ἔγειται τὸ λοιπὸν αὐτά. τὸ περιττῶν οὖν εὔθεσ ἀπο-200 τρίβεται τε καὶ ὠθεῖ κάτω πρὸς ἔτερον ἐργον αὐτή τρεπομένη, τὴν πρόσφυσιν. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ διερχομένη τὸ ἐντερον ἄπαν ἡ τροφὴ διὰ τῶν εἰς αὐτὸ καθηκόντων ἀγγείων ἀναρτά-ζεται, πλείστη μὲν εἰς τὰς φλέβας, ὅλη γε τις εἰς τὰς ἀρτηρίας, ὡς μικρὸν ύστερον ἀποδείξομεν. ἐν τούτῳ δ' αὖ τῷ χρόνῳ καὶ τοῖς τῶν ἐντέρων χιτῶσι προστίθεται.

Καὶ μοι τεμὼν ἢδη τῷ λογισμῷ τὴν τῆς τροφῆς οἰκονομίαν ἀπασαν εἰς τρεῖς μοίρας χρόνων, ἐν μὲν τῇ πρώτῃ νοεὶ μένουσάν θ' ἀμα κατὰ τὴν κοιλίαν αὐτὴν καὶ πεπτομένην καὶ προστιθεμένην εἰς κόρον τῇ γαστρὶ καὶ τι καὶ τῷ ἦπατι παρ' αὐτής ἀναφερόμενον.

Ἐν δὲ τῇ δευτέρᾳ διερχομένῃ τά τ' ἐντερα καὶ προστιθεμένης εἰς κόρον αὐτοῖς τε τούτοις καὶ τῷ ἦπατι καὶ τῷ βραχὺ μέρος αὐτῆς πάντη τοῦ σώματος φερόμενον ἐν δὲ δὴ τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ προστεθὲν ἐν τῷ πρώτῳ χρόνῳ προσφύεσθαι νοεὶ τῇ γαστρὶ.

Κατὰ δὲ τὴν τρίτην μοίραν τοῦ χρόνου τρέ-

---

1 cf. p. 317, note 2; p. 319, chap. xv.

308
and intelligence, with the power of choosing the better [of two alternatives].

But while the stomach contracts for the reason that the whole body possesses a power of attracting and of utilising appropriate qualities, as has already been explained, it also happens that, in this process, the food undergoes alteration; further, when filled and saturated with the fluid pabulum from the food, it thereafter looks on the food as a burden; thus it at once gets rid of the excess—that is to say, drives it downwards—itself turning to another task, namely that of causing adhesion. And during this time, while the nutriment is passing along the whole length of the intestine, it is caught up by the vessels which pass into the intestine; as we shall shortly demonstrate, 1 most of it is seized by the veins, but a little also by the arteries; at this stage also it becomes presented to the coats of the intestines.

Now imagine the whole economy of nutrition divided into three periods. Suppose that in the first period the nutriment remains in the stomach and is digested and presented to the stomach until satiety is reached, also that some of it is taken up from the stomach to the liver. 2

During the second period it passes along the intestines and becomes presented both to them and to the liver—again until the stage of satiety—while a small part of it is carried all over the body. 2 During this period, also imagine that what was presented to the stomach in the first period becomes now adherent to it.

During the third period the stomach has reached

2 Note that absorption takes place from the stomach as well as the intestines. Cf. p. 118, note 1.
GALEN

φεσθαί μὲν ἢ δὲ τὴν κοιλίαν ὀμοιώσασαν ἐαυτῇ τελέως τὰ προσφύντα, πρόσφυσιν δὲ τοῖς ἐντέροις καὶ τῷ ἦπατι γύνεσθαι τῶν προστεθέντων, 201 ἀνάξιοσιν δὲ πάντη τοῦ σώματος καὶ πρόσθεσιν. εἰ μὲν οὖν ἐπὶ τούτοις εὐθέως τὸ ζῷον λαμβάνοι τροφῆν, ἐν ὦ πάλιν ἡ γαστήρ χρόνῳ πέττει τε ταύτῃ καὶ ἀπολαύει προστιθέσα πᾶν ἐξ αὐτῆς τὸ χρήστον τοῖς ἑαυτῆς χίτῳ, τὰ μὲν ἐντερα τελέως ὀμοιώσει τῶν προσφύντα χυμών, ωσαύτως δὲ καὶ τὸ ἦπαρ. ἐν οἷον δὲ τῷ σώματι πρόσφυσις τῶν προστεθέντων τῆς τροφῆς ἔσται μορίων. εἰ δὲ ἀσίτος ἀναγκάζοιτο μένειν ἡ γαστήρ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ, παρὰ τῶν ἐν μεσεντερίῳ τε καὶ ἦπατι φλεβῶν ἐλέξει τὴν τροφήν· οὐ γάρ ἐξ αὐτοῦ γε τοῦ σώματος τοῦ ἦπατος. λέγω δὲ σῶμα τοῦ ἦπατος αὐτῆς τε τὴν ἱδίαν αὐτοῦ σάρκα πρῶτην καὶ μάλιστα, μετὰ δὲ τήνυδε καὶ τῶν ἀγγείων ἐκαστὸν τῶν κατ’ αὐτό. τὸν μὲν γὰρ ἐν ἐκάστῳ τῶν μορίων ἢ δὲ περιεκόμενον χυμὸν οὐκετε ἐυλογοῦν ἀντιστάνει ἐτέρφῳ μορίῳ καὶ μάλισθ' ὅταν ἡ δὲ πρόσφυσις ἡ ἐξομοίωσις αὐτοῦ γίγνεται. τῶν δὲ ἐν ταῖς εὐρυχωρίαις τῶν φλεβῶν τὸ μᾶλλον ἵσχύον θ' ἄμα καὶ δεόμενον ἀντιστάμενον μόριον.

202 Οὕτως οὖν καὶ ἡ γαστήρ ἐν || ὦ χρόνῳ δεῖται μὲν αὐτῇ τροφῆς, ἔσθει δ’ οὕδεπω τὸ ζῷον, ἐν τούτῳ τῶν κατὰ τὸ ἦπαρ ἐξαρπάζει φλεβῶν. ἐπεῖ δὲ καὶ τὸν σπλήνα διὰ τῶν ἐμπροσθεν ἐδείκνυμεν ὅσον ἐν ἦπατι παχύτερον ἐλκούτα

1 That is, among the ultimate tissues or cells.
the stage of receiving nourishment; it now entirely assimilates everything that had become adherent to it: at the same time in the intestines and liver there takes place adhesion of what had been before presented, while dispersal [anadosis] is taking place to all parts of the body,¹ as also presentation. Now, if the animal takes food immediately after these [three stages] then, during the time that the stomach is again digesting and getting the benefit of this by presenting all the useful part of it to its own coats, the intestines will be engaged in final assimilation of the juices which have adhered to them, and so also will the liver: while in the various parts of the body there will be taking place adhesion of the portions of nutriment presented. And if the stomach is forced to remain without food during this time, it will draw its nutriment from the veins in the mesentery and liver; for it will not do so from the actual body of the liver (by body of the liver I mean first and foremost its flesh proper, and after this all the vessels contained in it), for it is irrational to suppose that one part would draw away from another part the juice already contained in it, especially when adhesion and final assimilation of that juice were already taking place; the juice, however, that is in the cavity of the veins will be abstracted by the part which is stronger and more in need.

It is in this way, therefore, that the stomach, when it is in need of nourishment and the animal has nothing to eat, seizes it from the veins in the liver. Also in the case of the spleen we have shown in a former passage² how it draws all material from

κατεργάζεσθαι τε καὶ μεταβάλλειν ἐπὶ τὸ χρηστότερον, ούδὲν οὐδ’ ἐνταῦθα θαυμαστὸν ἔλκεσθαι τι κάκ τοῦ σπληνὸς εἰς ἐκαστὸν τῶν κοινωνούντων αὐτῷ κατὰ τὰς φλέβας ὀργάνων, οἷον εἰς ἐπίπλοον καὶ μεσεντέριον καὶ λεπτὸν ἐντερον καὶ κῶλον καὶ αὐτὴν τὴν γαστέρα. κατὰ δὲ τῶν αὐτῶν τρόπων ἐξερεύνησθαι μὲν εἰς τὴν γαστέρα τὸ περίττωμα καθ’ ἐτερον χρόνον, αὐτὸν δ’ αὕτης ἐκ τῆς γαστρος ἔλκειν τι τῆς οἰκείας τροφῆς ἐν ἐτέρῳ καίρῳ.

Καθόλου δ’ εἰπείν, καὶ πρόσθεν ήδη λελεκται, πάν ἐκ παντὸς ἔλκειν τε καὶ πέμπτειν ἐγχωρεῖ κατὰ διαφέροντας χρόνους, ὁμοιοτάτον γιγαντιάν τοῦ συμβαίνοντος, ὡς εἰ καὶ ξῦνα νοῆσαι πολλὰ τροφῆν ἄφθονον ἐν κοινῷ κατακειμένην, εἰς ὅσον βούλεται, προσφέρομενα. καθ’ δὴ γὰρ ήδη πέπτανται χρόνου ἔτερα, κατὰ τοῦτον εἰκὸς ἐσθίειν 203 ἐτέρα, καὶ μέλλειν γε τὰ μὲν || παύεσθαι, τὰ δ’ ἀρχεσθαι, καὶ τῶν μὲν συνεσθίοντα, τὰ δ’ ἀνὰ μέρος ἐσθίοντα καὶ ναὶ μὰ Δία γε τὸ ἐτερον ἁρπάζειν θατέρου πολλάκις, εἰ τὸ μὲν ἐτερον ἐπιδέοιτο, τῷ δ’ ἄφθονος παρακέοιτο. καὶ οὕτως οὐδὲν θαυμαστὸν οὕτ’ ἐκ τῆς ἐσχάτης ἐπιφανείας εἰσῷ τι πάλιν ὑποστρέφειν οὕτε διὰ τῶν αὐτῶν ἀγγείων ἢ δ’ ἦπατός τε καὶ σπληνὸς εἰς κοιλίαν ἀνενεχθήναι τι, δὴ ὅν ἐκ ταύτης εἰς ἐκείνα πρότερον ἀνηνέχθη.

Κατὰ μὲν γὰρ τὰς ἁρτηρίας ἰκανῶς ἐναργεῖς τὸ τοιοῦτον, ὡσπερ καὶ κατὰ τὴν καρδίαν τε καὶ τὸν θώρακα καὶ τὸν πνεύμωνα. τούτων γὰρ ἀπάντων διαστηλομένων τε καὶ συστηλομένων ἐναλλὰζον ἀναγκαῖον, ἢς όν εἰλκύσθη τι πρότερον, εἰς ταῖθ’
the liver that tends to be thick, and by working it up converts it into more useful matter. There is nothing surprising, therefore, if, in the present instance also, some of this should be drawn from the spleen into such organs as communicate with it by veins, e.g. the omentum, mesentery, small intestine, colon, and the stomach itself. Nor is it surprising that the spleen should disgorge its surplus matters into the stomach at one time, while at another time it should draw some of its appropriate nutriment from the stomach.

For, as has already been said, speaking generally, everything has the power at different times of attracting from and of adding to everything else. What happens is just as if you might imagine a number of animals helping themselves at will to a plentiful common stock of food; some will naturally be eating when others have stopped, some will be on the point of stopping when others are beginning, some eating together, and others in succession. Yes, by Zeus! and one will often be plundering another, if he be in need while the other has an abundant supply ready to hand. Thus it is in no way surprising that matter should make its way back from the outer surface of the body to the interior, or should be carried from the liver and spleen into the stomach by the same vessels by which it was carried in the reverse direction.

In the case of the arteries¹ this is clear enough, as also in the case of heart, thorax, and lungs; for, since all of these dilate and contract alternately, it must needs be that matter is subsequently discharged back into the parts from which it was

¹ By this term, of course, the air-passages are also meant; cf. p. 305.
ΓΑΛΕΝ

... υστερον ἐκπέμπεσθαι. καὶ ταῦτην ἀρα τὴν ἀνάγκην ἡ φύσις προηγησόκουσα τοῖς ἐν τῇ καρδιᾷ στόμασι τῶν ἀγγείων ὕμενας ἐπέφυσε κωλύσοντας εἰς τοῦπίσω. φέρεσθαι τὰς ὕλας. ἀλλ’ ὅτις μὲν τοῦτο γίγνεται καὶ καθ’ ὁνυμα τρόπον, ἐν τοῖς περὶ χρείας μορίων εἰρήσεται δεικνύντων ἡμῶν τὰ τ’ ἄλλα καὶ ὡς ἀδύνατον οὕτως ἀκριβῶς 204 κλείσθαι τὰ στόματα τῶν ἀγγείων, ὡς ἤ μηδὲν παλινδρομείν. εἰς μὲν γὰρ τὴν ἀρτηρίαν τὴν φλεβώδη, καὶ γὰρ καὶ τοῦτ’ ἐν ἐκείνοις δειχθῆσεται, πολὺ πλέον ἢ διὰ τῶν ἄλλων στομάτων εἰς τοῦπίσω πάλιν ἀναγκαίον ἐπανέρχεσθαι. τὸ δ’ εἰς τὰ παρόντα χρήσιμον, ὡς οὐκ ἐνδέχεται τι τῶν αἰσθητὴν καὶ μεγάλην ἐχόμενον εὐρύτητα μὴ οὐκ ἦτοι διαστελλόμενον ἐλκεν εἷς ἀπάντων τῶν πλησίον ἢ ἐκθήβειν αὐθίς εἰς ταῦτα συστελλόμενον ἐκ τοῦ τῶν ἡδῆ προειρημένων ἐν τῷ δὲ τῷ λόγῳ σαφὲς ἂν εἰῃ καὶ ὅν Ἔρασίστρατος τε καὶ ἰμεῖς ἐτέρωθι περὶ τῆς πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθίας ἐδείξαμεν.

XIV

'Αλλὰ μὴν καὶ ὡς ἐν ἐκάστῃ τῶν ἀρτηριῶν ἐστὶ τις σύναμως ἐκ τῆς καρδίας ἐπιρρέουσα, καθ’ ἂν διαστελλοῦντας τε καὶ συστελλοῦντας, δέδεικται δι’ ἐτέρων.

Εἰπὲρ οὖν συνθείης ἁμφοτέρως τὸ τε ταύτην εἶναι τὴν κίνησιν αὐτῶς τὸ τε πᾶν τὸ διαστελλόμενον

1 cf. p. 34, note 1.
3 Pulmonary vein, or rather, left auricle. Galen means a reflux through the mitral orifice; the left auricle was looked

314
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiii.—xiv

previously drawn. Now Nature foresaw this necessity, and provided the cardiac openings of the vessels with membranous attachments, to prevent their contents from being carried backwards. How and in what manner this takes place will be stated in my work "On the Use of Parts," where among other things I show that it is impossible for the openings of the vessels to be closed so accurately that nothing at all can run back. Thus it is inevitable that the reflux into the venous artery (as will also be made clear in the work mentioned) should be much greater than through the other openings. But what it is important for our present purpose to recognise is that every thing possessing a large and appreciable cavity must, when it dilates, abstract matter from all its neighbours, and, when it contracts, must squeeze matter back into them. This should all be clear from what has already been said in this treatise and from what Erasistratus and I myself have demonstrated elsewhere respecting the tendency of a vacuum to become refilled.

XIV

And further, it has been shown in other treatises that all the arteries possess a power which derives from the heart, and by virtue of which they dilate and contract.

Put together, therefore, the two facts—that the arteries have this motion, and that everything, when on rather as the termination of the pulmonary veins than as a part of the heart. cf. p. 323, note 4. He speaks here of a kind of "physiological" mitral incompetence.

Horror vacui.
Ἐλκεῖν ἐκ τῶν πλησίον εἰς ἑαυτό, θαυμαστῶν οὐδέν γιὰ φανεῖται τὰς ἀρτηρίας, ὅσα μὲν εἰς τὸ δέρμα περαίνουσιν αὐτῶν, ἐπιστάσθαι τὸν ἐξωθεὶν ἄρα διαστελλόμενας, ὅσα δὲ κατὰ τι πρὸς τὰς φλέβας ἀνεστόμωνται, τὸ λεπτότατον ἐν αὐταῖς καὶ ἀτμωδέστατον ἐπιστάσθαι τὸν αἷματος, ὅσα δὲ ἐγγὺς τῆς καρδίας εἰσίν, ἡ ἀυτῆς ἐκεῖνης ποιεῖ- σθαι τὴν ὅλην. ἐν γὰρ τῇ πρὸς τὸ κενοῦμενον ἀκολούθια τὸ κονφότατόν τε καὶ λεπτότατον ἐπεται πρῶτον τοῦ βαρυτέρου τε καὶ παχυτέρου κονφότατον δὲ ἐστὶ καὶ λεπτότατον ἀπάντων τῶν κατὰ τὸ σῶμα πρῶτον μὲν τὸ πνεῦμα, δεύτερον δ' ὁ ἀτμός, ἐπὶ τούτῳ δὲ τρίτον, ὅσοι ἀν ἀκριβῶς ἡ κατειργασμένον τε καὶ λεπτοποιοῦν αἶμα.

Ταύτ' οὖν εἰς ἑαυτὰς ἔλκουσιν αἰ ἀρτηρίαι πανταχόθεν, αἱ μὲν εἰς τὸ δέρμα καθήκουσα τῶν ἐξωθεὶν ἄρα: πλησίον τε γὰρ αὐταῖς οὕτως ἐστὶ καὶ κονφότατος ἐν τοῖς μάλιστα: τῶν δ' ἄλλων ἡ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸν τράχηλον ἐκ τῆς καρδίας ἀνυόσα καὶ ἡ κατὰ βάχιν, ἤδη δὲ καὶ ὅσα τούτων ἐγγὺς ἡ ἀυτῆς μάλιστα τῆς καρδίας: ὅσα δὲ καὶ τῆς καρδίας πορρωτέρω καὶ τοῦ δέρματος, ἔλκειν ταύταις ἀναγκαῖον ἐκ τῶν φλεβῶν τὸ κονφότατον τοῦ αἷματος: ὡστε καὶ τῶν εἰς τὴν γαστέρα τε καὶ τὰ ἐντερα καθηκουσῶν ἀρτηρίων τὴν ὅλην ἐν τῷ διαστέλλεσθαι γίγνεσθαι παρά τε τῆς καρδίας αὐτῆς καὶ τῶν παρακειμένων αὐτῆς φλεβῶν παμπόλλων οὕσών. οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἐκ γε τῶν ἐντερών καὶ τῆς κοιλίας τροφῆς οὕτω παχείαν τε καὶ βαρείαν ἐν ἑαυτοῖς ἐχόντων δύναται τι μεταλαμβάνειν, οὶ τι καὶ ἄξιον λόγου, φθάνουσαι πληροῦσθαι τοῖς κονφότεροις. οὐδὲ γὰρ εἰ καθεὶς.
it dilates, draws neighbouring matter into itself—and you will find nothing strange in the fact that those arteries which reach the skin draw in the outer air when they dilate, while those which anastomose at any point with the veins attract the thinnest and most vaporous part of the blood which these contain, and as for those arteries which are near the heart, it is on the heart itself that they exert their traction. For, by virtue of the tendency by which a vacuum becomes refilled, the lightest and thinnest part obeys the tendency before that which is heavier and thicker. Now the lightest and thinnest of anything in the body is firstly pneuma, secondly vapour, and in the third place that part of the blood which has been accurately elaborated and refined.

These, then, are what the arteries draw into themselves on every side; those arteries which reach the skin draw in the outer air¹ (this being near them and one of the lightest of things); as to the other arteries, those which pass up from the heart into the neck, and that which lies along the spine, as also such arteries as are near these—draw mostly from the heart itself; and those which are further from the heart and skin necessarily draw the lightest part of the blood out of the veins. So also the traction exercised by the diastole of the arteries which go to the stomach and intestines takes place at the expense of the heart itself and the numerous veins in its neighbourhood; for these arteries cannot get anything worth speaking of from the thick heavy nutriment contained in the intestines and stomach,² since they first become filled with lighter elements. For if you let down a tube into a vessel

GALEN

αὐλίσκον εἰς ἄγγειον ὕδατός τε καὶ ψάμμου πλήρες ἐπισπάσαι τῷ στόματι τῶν ἐκ τοῦ αὐλίσκου ἀέρα, δύναι τ' ἂν ἀκολουθῆσαι σοι πρὸ τοῦ ὕδατος ἢ ψάμμος· άεὶ γὰρ ἐν τῇ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθία τὸ κουφότερον ἐπεται πρότερον.

XV

Οὐκον χρή θαυμάζειν, εἰ παντελῶς ὀλύνον ἐκ τῆς κοιλίας, δογον ἂν ἀκριβῶς ἢ κατειργασμένον, εἰς τὰς ἀρτηρίας παραγίγνεται φθανοῦσα πληροῦσθαι τῶν κουφότερων, ἀλλ’ ἐκεῖνο γιγνώσκειν, ὡς δ’ ἐστὶν ὅλης εἰδῆ, τὸ μὲν τῇ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθία, τὸ δ’ οἰκειότητι ποιότητος γιγνόμενον· ἐτέρως μὲν γὰρ εἰς τὰς φύσας ὁ ἅρη, ἐτέρως δ’ ὁ σίδηρος ὑπὸ τῆς ἧρακλείας ἐπισπάται λίθου· καὶ ὡς ἂν μὲν πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολουθία || τὸ κουφότερον ἐλκεὶ πρότερον, ἢ δὲ κατὰ τὴν τῆς ποιότητος οἰκειότητα πολλάκις, εἰ οὕτως ἔτυχε, τὸ βαρύτερον, ἄν τῇ φύσει συγγενέστερον ὑπάρχῃ. καὶ τοῖνυν καὶ ταῖς ἀρτηρίαις τε καὶ τῇ καρδίᾳ, ὡς μὲν κοίλους τε καὶ διαστελλέσθαι δυναμένους ὅργανοι, αἰεὶ τὸ κουφότερον ἀκολουθεῖ πρότερον, ὡς δὲ τρέφεσθαι δεσμένους, εἰς αὐτοὺς τοὺς χιτῶνας, οὐ δ’ ἡ τὰ σώματα τῶν ὃργανων εἰσίν, ἔλκεται τὸ οἰκεῖον. ὥσον ἂν οὖν εἰς τὴν κοιλότητα διαστελλομένων αὐτῶν αἵματος μεταληψθῇ, τούτου τὸ οἰκειότατον

1 The “mechanical” principle of horror vacui contrasted with the “physical” or semi-physiological principle of specific attraction. Appropriateness here might almost be rendered affinity or kinship. cf. note 2, infra.

318
ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES, III. xiv.–xv

full of water and sand, and suck the air out of the tube with your mouth, the sand cannot come up to you before the water, for in accordance with the principle of the refilling of a vacuum the lighter matter is always the first to succeed to the evacuation.

XV

It is not to be wondered at, therefore, that only a very little [nutrient matter] such, namely, as has been accurately elaborated—gets from the stomach into the arteries, since these first become filled with lighter matter. We must understand that there are two kinds of attraction, that by which a vacuum becomes refilled and that caused by appropriateness of quality;\(^1\) air is drawn into bellows in one way, and iron by the lodestone in another. And we must also understand that the traction which results from evacuation acts primarily on what is light, whilst that from appropriateness of quality acts frequently, it may be, on what is heavier (if this should be naturally more nearly related\(^2\)). Therefore, in the case of the heart and the arteries, it is in so far as they are hollow organs, capable of diastole, that they always attract the lighter matter first, while, in so far as they require nourishment, it is actually into their coats (which are the real bodies of these organs) that the appropriate matter is drawn.\(^3\) Of the blood, then, which is taken into their cavities when they dilate, that part which is most proper to them and


\(^3\) The coats exercise the vital traction, the cavities the merely mechanical. cf. p. 165, note 2.
GALEN

te kai malista trefein dynamenon oi xitones autoi toin aggein epistpontaia.

Topi d ek toin phlebion eis tas arthria meta-
lambanvesqha ti proso tois eirhmenois ikanon kai
touto ge tekmhrion. ei pollas kai megala
arthria diatemon apokteiinn to zohon bou-
lhtheis, eurhseis autou tas phlebas domioi tas
arthriaies ekkenoumenias, ouk av toutou potene
gevomenon xorpis toin pros allhlas autais
anastomosesou. wosautous de kai kat autin tin
kardia ein tote dieiaskoikias eis tin aristeran
208 elkeitai to leptoprotaton exontos tina trhmatia
tou mesou diafragma matos auton, d mekri men
pleioston dunaton estin idein, olon botheunos tinas
ex euruteron stoma tos ae kai malloin eis stenote-
teron proiontas. ou mhn auta ge ta eschata
perata dunaton eti theasasai diia te smikritha
kai oti tevneitos hde toin zohon katepsuktau te
cai pevinkwetai pantha. alli o logos kantaitha
prwton men ek tov mhdewn upo tin fiswos
glynsethai matian orhmomenos eixeirisei tas
anastomosesis taotais toin koilwv tin
kardias: ou gar di eikh ge kai ois etuchon oi eis
stenum ou to telentwites eneunwto botheinoi.

Deuteuron de kake toin dinoin dounton stoma toin
en
tin dieiaka tin kardia koilia tou men eisagonontos
to alma, tou d exagonontos polyn meixon einai to
eisagon. ois gar ou pantos tou anatos, oson
h koilh phlepsi didosin tin kardia, palin ex ekinehs

1 Chap. xiv.
2 These fossae were probably the recesses between the
columnae carnea.

320
most able to afford nourishment is attracted by their actual coats.

Now, apart from what has been said,\textsuperscript{1} the following is sufficient proof that something is taken over from the veins into the arteries. If you will kill an animal by cutting through a number of its large arteries, you will find the veins becoming empty along with the arteries: now, this could never occur if there were not anastomoses between them. Similarly, also, in the heart itself, the thinnest portion of the blood is drawn from the right ventricle into the left, owing to there being perforations in the septum between them: these can be seen for a great part [of their length]; they are like a kind of fossae [pits] with wide mouths, and they get constantly narrower; it is not possible, however, actually to observe their extreme terminations, owing both to the smallness of these and to the fact that when the animal is dead all the parts are chilled and shrunken.\textsuperscript{2} Here, too, however, our argument,\textsuperscript{3} starting from the principle that nothing is done by Nature in vain, discovers these anastomoses between the ventricles of the heart; for it could not be at random and by chance that there occurred fossae ending thus in narrow terminations.

And secondly [the presence of these anastomoses has been assumed] from the fact that, of the two orifices in the right ventricle, the one conducting blood in and the other out, the former\textsuperscript{4} is much the larger. For, the fact that the insertion of the vena cava into the heart\textsuperscript{5} is larger than the

\textsuperscript{1} He means the tricuspid orifice. \textit{cf.} p. 121, note 4.
\textsuperscript{2} The right auricle was looked on less as a part of the heart than as an expansion or "insertion" of the vena cava.
GALEN

ἐκπεμπομένου τῷ πνεύμονι, μείζων ἦστιν ἢ ἀπὸ τῆς κοιλῆς εἰς αὐτὴν ἐμφυσεῖς τῆς ἐμφυομένης εἰς 209 τὸν πνεύμονα φλεβῶς. οὐδὲ || γὰρ τοῦτ’ ἐστιν εἰπεῖν, ὡς ἐδαπανήθη τι τοῦ ἁίματος εἰς τὴν αὐτοῦ τοῦ σώματος τῆς καρδίας θρέψιν. ἐτέρα γὰρ ἔστι φλεβὴς ἡ εἰς ἐκείνο Κατασχίζομεν μήτε τὴν γένεσιν ἐκ τῆς καρδίας αὐτῆς μήτε τὴν τοῦ ἁίματος ἐχουσά μετάληψιν. εἰ δὲ καὶ δαπανᾶται τι, ἀλλ’ οὐ τοσοῦτον γε μεῖον ἐστιν ἡ εἰς τὸν πνεύμονα φλεβὴς ἁγουσα τῆς εἰς τὴν καρδίαν ἐμφυομένης, ὅσον εἰκός εἰς τὴν τροφὴν ἀνηλώσθαι τῆς καρδίας, ἀλλὰ πλέον πολλῷ. δῆλον οὖν, ὡς εἰς τὴν ἀριστερὰν τι μεταλαμβάνεται κοιλίαν.

Καὶ γὰρ οὖν καὶ τῶν κατ’ ἐκείνην ἀγγείων δυοῦν ὅτων ἐλαττὼν ἐστι πολλῷ τὸ ἐκ τοῦ πνεύμονος εἰς αὐτῆς εἰςάγον τὸ πνεῦμα τῆς ἐκφυομένης ἀρτηρίας τῆς μεγάλης, ἀφ’ ἦς αἱ κατὰ τὸ σῶμα συμπασαι πεφύκασιν, ὡς ἄν μὴ μόνον ἐκ τοῦ πνεύμονος πνεύμα μεταλαμβανούσης αὐτῆς, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς δεξιὰς κοιλίας ἀμα διὰ τῶν εἰρημένων ἀναστομώσεων.

"Οτι δ’ ἄμεινον ἦν τοῖς τοῦ σώματος μορίοις τοῖς μὲν ὑπὸ καθαροῦ καὶ λεπτοῦ καὶ ἀτμώδους αἵματος τρέφεσθαι, τοῖς δ’ ὑπὸ παχέος καὶ θολεροῦ καὶ ὡς οὖν ἐνταῦθα τι παρεώρω τῇ 210 φύσει, τῆς || περὶ χρείας μορίων πραγματείας ἐστὶν, ὡστ’ οὐ χρή νῦν ὑπὲρ τούτων ἐτι λέγειν,

1 This “vein” (really the pulmonary artery) was supposed to be the channel by which the lungs received nutriment from the right heart. cf. p. 121, note 3.
2 The coronary vein.
3 Galen’s conclusion, of course, is, so far, correct, but he has substituted an imaginary direct communication between the ventricles for the actual and more roundabout pulmonary
vein which is inserted into the lungs\(^1\) suggests that not all the blood which the vena cava gives to the heart is driven away again from the heart to the lungs. Nor can it be said that any of the blood is expended in the nourishment of the actual body of the heart, since there is another vein\(^2\) which breaks up in it and which does not take its origin nor get its share of blood from the heart itself. And even if a certain amount is so expended, still the vein leading to the lungs is not to such a slight extent smaller than that inserted into the heart as to make it likely that the blood is used as nutriment for the heart: the disparity is much too great for such an explanation. It is, therefore, clear that something is taken over into the left ventricle.\(^3\)

Moreover, of the two vessels connected with it, that which brings pneuma into it from the lungs\(^4\) is much smaller than the great outgrowing artery\(^5\) from which the arteries all over the body originate; this would suggest that it not merely gets pneuma from the lungs, but that it also gets blood from the right ventricle through the anastomoses mentioned.

Now it belongs to the treatise “On the Use of Parts” to show that it was best that some parts of the body should be nourished by pure, thin, and vaporous blood, and others by thick, turbid blood, and that in this matter also Nature has overlooked nothing. Thus it is not desirable that these matters should be further discussed. Having mentioned, circulation, of whose existence he apparently had no idea. His views were eventually corrected by the Renascence anatomists. cf. Introduction, pp. xxii.–xxiii.

\(^4\) He means the left auricle, considered as the termination of the pulmonary “arteries”; cf. p. 314, note 3.

\(^5\) The aorta, its orifice being circular, appears bigger than the slit-like mitral orifice.
Δάλλη ὑπομνήσαντας, ὡς δύο ἐστὸν ὅλκης εἴδη, τῶν μὲν εὐρείας ὄδοις ἐν τῷ διαστέλλεσθαι τῇ πρὸς τὸ κενούμενον ἀκολούθια τὴν ἐξὶν ποιουμένων, τῶν δὲ οἰκείωτητι ποιώτητος, ἐφεξῆς λέγειν, ὡς τὰ μὲν πρότερα καὶ πόρρωθεν ἐλκεῖ τι δύναται, τὰ δὲ δεύτερα ἐκ τῶν ἐγχυτάτων μόνων. αὐλίσκον μὲν γὰρ ὅτι μῆκιστον εἰς ὑδωρ ἐνεστὶ καθέντα ῥαδίως ἀνασπάν εἰς τὸ στόμα δι' αὐτοῦ τὸ ὑγρόν· οὐ μὴν εἰ γ' ἐπὶ πλέον ἀπαγάγους τῆς ἡρακλείας ἱόθου τὸν σίδηρον ἢ τοὺς πυρῶν τοῦ κεραμίου· καὶ γὰρ καὶ τοιοῦτον τι πρόσθεν ἐλέγετο παράδειγμα—δύνατ' ἂν ἔτι γενέσθαι τις ὅλκη.

Σαφέστατα δ' ἂν αὐτὸ μάθοις ἐπὶ τῶν ἐν τοῖς κήποις ὀχετῶν· ἐκ τούτων γὰρ εἰς μὲν τὰ παρακείμενα καὶ πλησίον ἀπαντᾶ διαδίδοται τις ἱκμᾶς, εἰς δὲ τὰ πορρωτέρω προσελθεῖν οὐκέτι δύναται, καὶ διὰ τοῦτ' ἀναγκάζονται πολλοὶ ὀχετοῖς μικροῖς ἀπὸ τοῦ μεγάλου τετμημένοις εἰς ἐκαστὸν μέρος τοῦ κήπου τὴν ἐπίρρυσιν τοῦ ὕδατος ἐπι-211 τεχνάσθαι· καὶ τηλικαύτα γε τὰ μεταξὺ διαστήματα τούτων τῶν μικρῶν ὀχετῶν ποιούσιν, ἤλικα μάλιστα νομίζουσιν ἀρκεῖν εἰς τὸ ἰκανῶς ἀπολαύειν ἐλκοντα τῆς ἐκατέρωθεν αὐτοῖς ἐπιρρεούσης ὑγρότητος. οὕτως οὖν ἔχει κἂν τοῖς τῶν ἔμων σώμασιν. ὅχετοι πολλοὶ κατὰ πάντα τὰ μέλη διεσπαρμένοι παράγουσιν αὐτοῖς άμα καθά-περ ἐν κήποις ὑδρείαν τινά. καὶ τούτων τῶν ὀχετῶν τὰ μεταξὺ διαστήματα θαυμαστῶς ὑπὸ τῆς φύσεως εὐθὺς ἐξ ἀρχῆς διατέτακται πρὸς τὸ μήτ' ἐνδεδοχός χορηγεῖσθαι τοῖς μεταξὺ μορίοις ἐλκοῦσιν εἰς ἐαυτὰ τὸ άιμα μήτε κατακλύζεσθαι

324
however, that there are two kinds of attraction, certain bodies exerting attraction along wide channels during diastole (by virtue of the principle by which a vacuum becomes refilled) and others exerting it by virtue of their appropriateness of quality, we must next remark that the former bodies can attract even from a distance, while the latter can only do so from among things which are quite close to them; the very longest tube let down into water can easily draw up the liquid into the mouth, but if you withdraw iron to a distance from the lodestone or corn from the jar (an instance of this kind has in fact been already given) no further attraction can take place.

This you can observe most clearly in connection with garden conduits. For a certain amount of moisture is distributed from these into every part lying close at hand but it cannot reach those lying further off; therefore one has to arrange the flow of water into all parts of the garden by cutting a number of small channels leading from the large one. The intervening spaces between these small channels are made of such a size as will, presumably, best allow them [the spaces] to satisfy their needs by drawing from the liquid which flows to them from every side. So also is it in the bodies of animals. Numerous conduits distributed through the various limbs bring them pure blood, much like the garden water-supply, and, further, the intervals between these conduits have been wonderfully arranged by Nature from the outset so that the intervening parts should be plentifully provided for when absorbing blood, and that they should never

\[1\] p. 87.
Galen

ποτ' αὐτὰ πλήθει περιττῆς ὑγρότητος ἀκαίρως ἐπιρρεούσης.

Ὁ γὰρ δὴ τρόπος τῆς θρέψεως αὐτῶν τοιόσοδε τίς ἐστι. τοῦ συνεχοῦς ἐαυτῷ σώματος, οἷόν περ τὸ ἀπλοῦν ἀγχείον Ἐρασίστρατος ὑποτίθεται, τὰ μὲν ἐπιπολήσει μέρη πρῶτα τῆς ὀμιλουσης ἀπολαυῶ τροφῆς· ἐκ δὲ τοῦτων αὐ μεταλαμβάνει κατὰ τὸ συνεχὲς ἔλκοντα τὰ τοῦτων ἔξης, εἰτ' ἐξ ἐκείνων αὖθις ἔτερα καὶ τοῦτ' οὐ παύεται γιγνόμενον, ἅροι ἀν ἐν ἄπαντι αὐτοῦ διάδοθι τὰ μόρια τῆς τρεφούσης οὕσιας ἡ ποιότης. ὡσα δὲ 212 τῶν μορίων ἐπὶ πλέον || ἀλλοιουμένου δεῖται τοῦ μέλλοντος αὐτὰ θρέψειν χυμοῦ, τούτως ὡσπερ τι ταμίειον θείας πάρεσκευάσει ἤτοι κοιλίας ἢ σήραγγας ἢ τι ταῖς σήραγγεσ ἀνάλογον. αἱ μὲν γὰρ σάρκες αἱ τε τῶν σπλάγχνων ἀπάντων αἱ τε τῶν μυῶν ἐξ αἵματος αὐτοῦ τρέφονται βραχείαν ἀλλοίωσιν δεξαμένου. τὰ δ' οὕστα παμπόλλης εἰν τῷ μεταξὺ δεῖται τῆς μεταβολῆς, ἵνα τραφῇ, καὶ ἐστὶν οἷόν περ τὸ αἷμα ταῖς σαρξί, τοιοῦτος ὁ μυελὸς τοῖς ὀστοῖς ἐν μὲν τοῖς μικροῖς τε καὶ ἀκοιλίοις κατὰ τὰς σήραγγας αὐτῶν διεσπαρμένοις, ἐν δὲ τοῖς μείζοις τε καὶ κοιλίας ἔχουσιν ἐν ἑκείναις ἡθροισμένοις.

Ὡς γὰρ καὶ διὰ τοῦ πρῶτον γράμματος ἐδείκνυτο, τοῖς μὲν ὀμοίως ἔχουσιν τὴν οὐσίαν εἰς ἀλλήλα μεταβάλλειν ἐγχωρεῖ, τοῖς δὲ πάμπολων διεστῶσιν ἀμήχανον ἀλλήλους ὀμοιωθήμαι χωρίς τῶν ἐν μέσῳ μεταβολῶν. τοιούτων τι καὶ τοῖς

1 Or we may render it "corpuscle"; Galen practically means the cell. cf. p. 153, note 2.

326
be deluged by a quantity of superfluous fluid running in at unsuitable times.

For the way in which they obtain nourishment is somewhat as follows. In the body\(^1\) which is continuous throughout, such as Erasistratus supposes his *simple vessel* to be, it is the superficial parts which are the first to make use of the nutriment with which they are brought into contact; then the parts coming next draw their share from these by virtue of their contiguity; and again others from these; and this does not stop until the quality of the nutrient substance has been distributed among all parts of the corpuscle in question. And for such parts as need the humour which is destined to nourish them to be altered still further, Nature has provided a kind of storehouse, either in the form of a central cavity or else as separate caverns,\(^2\) or something analogous to caverns. Thus the flesh of the viscera and of the muscles is nourished from the blood directly, this having undergone merely a slight alteration; the bones, however, in order to be nourished, require very great change, and what blood is to flesh marrow is to bone; in the case of the small bones, which do not possess central cavities, this marrow is distributed in their caverns, whereas in the larger bones which do contain central cavities the marrow is all concentrated in these.

For, as was pointed out in the first book,\(^3\) things having a similar substance can easily change into one another, whereas it is impossible for those which are very different to be assimilated to one another without intermediate stages. Such a one in respect to

\(^2\) *cf.* the term "cavernous tissue."
\(^3\) \(\text{i. x.}\)
χόνδροις ἐστὶ τὸ περικεχυμένον μυξώδες καὶ τοῖς συνδέσμοις καὶ τοῖς ὑμέσι καὶ τοῖς νεύροις τὸ παρεσπαρμένον ἐν αὐτοῖς ὕγρον γλύσχρον· ἔκα-213 στὸν γὰρ || τούτων ἐξ ἱνῶν σύγκειται πολλῶν, αἳπερ ὀμοιομερεῖς τῇ εἰσὶ καὶ ὄντως αἰσθητὰ στοιχεῖα. κατὰ δὲ τὰς μεταξὺ χώρας αὐτῶν ὁ ὀικειότατος εἰς θρέψιν παρέσπαρται χυμός, ὡς εἰλικρινῶς μὲν ἐκ τῶν φλεβῶν τοῦ αἵματος, ὅσιον οἰόν τ’ ἢν ἐκλεξάμεναι τῶν ἐπιτηδειότατον, ἐξ-ομοιοῦσι δὲ κατὰ βραχὺ καὶ μεταβάλλουσιν εἰς τὴν ἑαυτῶν ὑόσιαν.

"Ἀπαντ’ οὖν ταῦτα καὶ ἄλληλοις ὀμολογεῖ καὶ τοῖς ἐμπροσθεν ἀποδεδειγμένοις ἴκανῶς μαρτυρεῖ καὶ οὐ χρῆ μηκύνειν ἐτὶ τὸν λόγον· ἐκ γὰρ τῶν εἰρημένων ἑνεστὶν ἐκάστῳ τὰ κατὰ μέρος ἀπαντὰ καθ’ ὄντινα γίγνεται τρόπον ἐξευρίσκειν ἑτοῖμος, ὥσπερ καὶ διὰ τὴν πολλὰς κωθωνιζόμενοις πάμ-πολυ τάχιστα μὲν ἀναδίδοται τὸ ποθέν, οὔρεῖται δ’ ὅλῳ δεῖν ἀπαν ἐντὸς οὐ πολλοῦ χρόνου. καὶ γὰρ κανταῦθα τῇ τῇ τῆς ποιότητος ὀικειότητι καὶ τῇ τῆς ὕγρότητος λεπτότητι καὶ τῇ τῶν ἀγγείων τε καὶ τῶν κατ’ αὐτὰ στομάτων εὐρύτητι καὶ τῇ τῆς ἐλεκτικῆς δυνάμεως εὐρωστίᾳ τὸ τάχος συν-τελεῖται τῆς ἀναδόσεως, τῶν μὲν πλησίον τῆς κολιάς τεταγμένων μορίων ὀικειότητι ποιότη-214 τος || ἑαυτῶν ἐνεκα ἐλκόντων τὸ πόμα, τῶν δ’
cartilage is the myxoid substance which surrounds it, and in respect to ligaments, membranes, and nerves the viscous liquid dispersed inside them; for each of these consists of numerous fibres, which are homogeneous— in fact, actual sensible elements; and in the intervals between these fibres is dispersed the humour most suited for nutrition; this they have drawn from the blood in the veins, choosing the most appropriate possible, and now they are assimilating it step by step and changing it into their own substance.

All these considerations, then, agree with one another, and bear sufficient witness to the truth of what has been already demonstrated; there is thus no need to prolong the discussion further. For, from what has been said, anyone can readily discover in what way all the particular [vital activities] come about. For instance, we could in this way ascertain why it is that in the case of many people who are partaking freely of wine, the fluid which they have drunk is rapidly absorbed through the body and almost the whole of it is passed by the kidneys within a very short time. For here, too, the rapidity with which the fluid is absorbed depends on appropriateness of quality, on the thinness of the fluid, on the width of the vessels and their mouths, and on the efficiency of the attractive faculty. The parts situated near the alimentary canal, by virtue of their appropriateness of quality, draw in the imbibed food for their own purposes, then the parts next to them

1 Lit. homoeomerous, i.e. “the same all through,” of similar structure throughout, the elements of living matter. cf. p. 20, note 3, and cf. also the “cell” of Erasistratus, p. 153.

ΓALEN

ἐξής τούτοις ἐξαρπαζόντων καὶ αὐτῶν εἰς ἑαυτὰ κατείτα τῶν ἐφεξῆς πάλιν ἐκ τούτων μεταλαμ-
βανόντων, ἄχρις ἂν εἰς τὴν κοῖλην ἀφίκηται
φλέβα, τούτευθεν δ' ἦδη τῶν νεφρῶν τὸ οἰκεῖον
ἐπιστομένων. ὥστε οὔδεν θαυμαστὸν οἶνον μὲν
ὑδατος ἀναλαμβάνεσθαι θάττον οἰκειότητι ποιό-
τητος, αὐτὸν δὲ τὸν οἶνον τὸν μὲν λευκὸν καὶ
καθαρὸν ἐτοίμως ἀναδίδοσθαι διὰ λεπτότητα, τὸν
δ' αὖ μέλανα καὶ θολερὸν ἱσχεσθαι τε κατὰ τὴν
όדον καὶ βραδύνειν ὑπὸ πάχους.

Εἰς δ' ἂν ταῦτα καὶ τῶν ύπερ τῶν ἄρτηριῶν
ἐμπροσθεῖν εἰρημένων οὐ σμικρὰ μαρτύρια. παν-
ταχοῦ γὰρ ὅσον οἰκείον τε καὶ λεπτὸν αἷμα τοῦ
μὴ τοιούτου ῥᾴδι ἐπεται τοῖς ἐλκουσίν. ἀτμὸν
ἂν ἐλκούσαι καὶ πνεῦμα καὶ λεπτὸν αἷμα κατὰ
τὰς διαστάσεις αἱ ἄρτηριαι τῶν κατὰ τὴν κοῖλιαν
καὶ τὰ ἐντερα περιεχομένων χυμῶν ἡ οὐδ' ὀλος ἢ
παντάπασιν ἐπιστώνται βραχύ.
in their turn snatch it away, then those next again take it from these, until it reaches the vena cava, whence finally the kidneys attract that part of it which is proper to them. Thus it is in no way surprising that wine is taken up more rapidly than water, owing to its appropriateness of quality, and, further, that the white clear kind of wine is absorbed more rapidly owing to its thinness, while black turbid wine is checked on the way and retarded because of its thickness.

These facts, also, will afford abundant proof of what has already been said about the arteries; everywhere, in fact, such blood as is both specifically appropriate and at the same time thin in consistency answers more readily to their traction than does blood which is not so; this is why the arteries which, in their diastole, absorb vapour, pneuma, and thin blood attract either none at all or very little of the juices contained in the stomach and intestines.
INDEX AND GLOSSARY
INDEX AND GLOSSARY

(The numbers refer to the pages of the present edition; fuller references will be found in the footnotes.)

Abortifacient drugs, 285
Abortion, 231, 286
Absorption from digestive tract
   (v. Anadosis)
Acidity of urine, 245, 287
Activity (function), 13
Adhesion (prophysis) of nutriment to tissues, 39
Affinity, 33
Alimentary canal, 119, 309
   —— coats of, 23, 263
Allopathic treatment, 199
Alteration (qualitative change), 7, 9, 241, 251
Anadosis (absorption from digestive tract), 63, 119
Anemia, 173
Anasarca (dropsy), 41
Anastomoses (communications between arteries and veins), 321
Anaxagoras, "preformationist" doctrine of, 7
Ancient writers, value of, 279
Animal life, 3
Animals (v. also History, Natural)
   —— cold-blooded, 181
   —— long-necked, 275
Anorexia (want of appetite), 247
Aorta (main artery of body), 143, 323
Appetite, 249
Aristotle, 9, et passim (v. also Peripatetic School)
Arrows, drugs for extracting heads of, 83
"Art" of Nature (i.e. of the living organism), 57
Arteries, structure of, 283
   —— to-and-fro motion in, 313
   —— attraction of air by, through skin, 317
Artery, pulmonary, 121, 323

Artificer, 133
Asclepides, 49, et passim
Asperos (absence of corruption), 201
Assimilation, 33
Asthenia (weakness), 239
Atomist School in Medicine, 45
Atrabiliary (melancholic) humour, 209
Attraction (v. also Horror vacui)
   —— physiological, 45
   —— magnetic, 73
Auricle, left, of heart, 315
   —— right, of heart, 321
Authority, value of, 279
Aversion, 249

Baking, 259
Beauty, 47
Bile, yellow, 63, 123, 177, 191, 289
   —— "vitelline," 209
   —— black, 203 (v. also Melancholic humour)
Bile-passages, mechanical blocking of, 171
Billiousness, 193
Biology, reproduction of, by Atomist School, 45
Bladder, urinary, 51, 53, et passim
   —— for bile (v. Gall-bladder)
Blood-production, 17, 169, 183, 191, 201
Boiling, 259
Boils, 253
Bone, structure of, 327
Bone-marrow, 327
Borborygmi (gurglings) in stomach, 237
Bread, constitution of, 11
Bubo (swollen lymphatic glands in groin), 185
Butchers (as the primitive anatomists), 51

GALEN

335
INDEX AND GLOSSARY

Cadaver (corpse), experiment on, 265
Cartilage (gristle), 329
Catarrh (mucous discharge), 215
Cattle (as typifying "herd-morality"), 47
"Cell," of animal tissues, 153
—— nutrition of, 327
Change, qualitative (v. Alteration)
Channels (v. Morphological hypothesis)
Cheese-making, 91
Childbirth, 231, 285
Children's game, 23
Chill, 171, 203 (v. also Cold)
Cholagogues (drugs that draw off bile), 65
Cholera, 299
Chorion (membrane enclosing unborn child), 229
Chrysippus, 9
Chyle (emulsified contents of stomach), (v. Emulsification)
Cirrhosis (induration) of liver, 171
Coats (tunics), 23
Cold, action of, on skin, 301
Cold-in-the-head, 215 (v. also Chill)
Colon (large intestine), 313
Colour, 5
Conception, of semen, 233
Congiis (measure), 111
Contractions (v. Peristalsis)
Cooking, 191
Corn, attractive power of, 87
Coryza (mucous discharge: now a "cold"), 215
Crisis, 75
Cyathus (measure), 65
Decay, 7
Deductive reasoning, 227
Deglutition (swallowing), 95, 261, 265, 273
Democrif/us, 153
Deposits (in tissues), 297
Desire (appetite), 249, 269
Destruction (act of perishing), 7
Diaphragm (mldrift), 255
Diarrhoea, 247, 299
Diet, 35, 179, 255
Digestion, cause of, 243
—— impairment of, 185, 217, 237
Digestive tract, action on food, 251, et seq.
—— structure (v. Alimentary Canal)

Diocles, 51
Disease, definition of, 197
Diseases, the four primary, 185
Disjunctive argument, 167
Distribution (diadoch) of nutriment to tissues, 163
Dropsy, 41, 67, 171
Drugs, 85, 285, 293 (v. also Poisons
Dyscrasia (abnormal blending of the four qualities), 189
Dysentery, 205
Dyspepsia (v. Indigestion)

Education, 279
Effect (product, work done), 13
Emanation, 161
Emanations, 77
Embryo, 229
Eumeis (v. Vomiting)
Empiricist physicians, 69, 193
Emulsification, 239
Epicurus, 71
Epigastric muscles, 237
Episastic (attractive), 117
Erast Stratus, 95
Erast Straitians, 105
Etna, 259
Eurasia (proper blending of the four qualities), 189
Evaporation, 51, 87, 251
Experience (v. Empiricist physicians)
Expulsive faculty, 231

Faculty (potentiality), 13
Feces (ordure from bowel), 255
Fermentation, 209
Fever as a cause of indigestion, 185
Fibres, 329
—— of blood, 215
—— circular and longitudinal, 263
—— oblique, 281
Filtration, 91
Fish, voraciousness of, 269
Flavour, 5
Fluxions, 297
Foetus (unborn child), 233
—— death of, 287
Forced-feeding, 247
Forces, material, 127, 301
Function (activity), cause of, 197

Gall-bladder, 147, 245
—— absence of nerves in, 289
Gardens, irrigation of, 525

336
INDEX AND GLOSSARY

Genesis (development of embryo), 19
Germander (drug), 67
Gestation (carrying of embryo by mother), 229
Give-and-take between organs, 295
Gravity (explaining secretion of urine), 107
Greediness, 271
Growth, 27, 137
Gullet, 263
— use of, by stomach, 271
— function of its two coats, 273
Gurgling in stomach, 287

Habit of body, 69
Hemorrhage, intestinal, 297
Hemorrhoids (v. Piles)
Heartburn, 287
Heat, innate, 41, 141, 185
Hepatic veins (entering vena cava from liver), 147
Herophilus, 223
Hippocrates, 9, et passim
Histogenes (tissue-production), 21
History, natural, 269
Homoeomeries (similar parts), 169
Homoeopathy, 199, Note 1
Honey, 179, 191
Horror vacui (“Nature’s abhorrence of a vacuum”), 99, 155
Humours, the four, origin of, 167, 183, 209
Hydragogues (drugs that draw water out of the system), 65

Ileus volvulus (obstruction of bowels), 299, 303
Illusions, sensory, 7
Indigestion, 185, 217, 237
Inductive reasoning, 227
Inflammation, 85, 233
Interaction of any two bodies, 251
Intestine, small, 255
Intestines, structure of, 288
— movements of, 248
Ionia, 29
Iron, 71
Irrigation of gardens and tissues, 325

Jaundice, 179, 207
Jejunum (part of small intestine), 299
Kidneys, 49, 89

Labour (v. Childbirth)
Larynx (voice-box), involved in swallowing, 266
Leprosy, 41
Leucippus, 153
Lichen (a skin-disease), 253
Liver, proper tissue of, 311
— transverse fissure of, 147
— induration of, 171
— give-and-take between it and stomach, 291
Lodestone, 71
Love, 47
Lumen (internal cavity of a vessel), 119
Lycus, 109

Magnetism, 71
Marrow of bones, 327
Mastication, 253
Material forces, 127
Medicine, taking of, 269 (v. also Drugs)
Melancholy (v. Atrabilary)
Membranes, fetal, 231, 285 (v. also Chorion)
Menander, 105
Menodotus, 81
Menstrual blood, 131, 171
Metabolism, diseases of, 41
Midwife, 235
Miscarriage (v. Abortion)
Molecules (of Asclepiades), 63
Morphological hypothesis of bile-secretion, 125, 147
Motion, active and passive, 57
Mouth, lining of, 261
— digestion in, 253
Mucus, 203, 215
Muscles, voluntary, 263

"Nature," 2; its "Art," 57
Nature-lore (v. Physiology)
Nausea, 287
"Nerve," 151, 272
Nutrimen, 41
Nutrition, 31, 149

Obstetric chair, 285
Obstruction of bowels, 299, 308
Oesophagus (v. Gullet)
Omentum (an apron-like fold of fat, overlying the intestine), 142, 255, 318

GALEN

337
INDEX AND GLOSSARY

Organism, unity of, 61
Organs, nutrition of, 307
Oes uteri (mouth of womb), 229
Ovum, human, 135
Oxidation, 211
Oxygen

Pain, 287
Parturition, 231
Pathology, relation to Physiology, 189, 287
Peasants, 87
Perch, (v. Fish)
Peripatetic (Aristotelian) School, 139
Peristalsis (contraction and dilatation), 97, 243, 263
Peritoneum, 53
Phidias, 139
Philistion, 173
Philotimus, 183
Phlegm, 67, 201, 215
"Phlegmatic temperament, 193
"Physiology," 139
Piles, 171
Plant-life, 3
Plato, 173, 203, 215
Pleuritis (congestion), 119
Pneuma (as a vital principle), 158; (as oxygen), 187
Poisons, action of, 251
Porch, the (Stoic School), 145
"Pores " (v. Channels)
Portal vein, 147
Potter's earth, 213
Practitioner, 197
Praxagoras, 61
Praxiteles, 129
"Preformationist" doctrine of Anaxagoras
Presentation (prosthesis) of nutriment to tissues, 39
Prevention and Cure, 169
Principles, the four fundamental (v. Qualities)
Prodicus, 205
Prolapse of uterus, 235
Propulsive faculty, 231
Prosphyss (v. Adhesion)
Prosthesis (v. Presentation)
Psyche, 3, 153
Psychology, repudiation of, by Atomist School, 45
Pulmonary artery, 121
Pylorus (outlet of stomach), 239

Pylorus, regurgitation through, 289
Pyrrhonists (typical sceptics), 197
Qualities, the four fundamental, 9, 183, 259
—— derivative, 21

Relativity, 17
Renal veins, 107
Respiration, 175, 305
Retentive faculty, 225
Rhetoric, 97

Safflower (drug), 67
Saliva, action of, 253
Scammony (drug), 67
Schools, two contrasted, in Medicine, 45
Scientist, 197
Scorplings, 253
Sculpture, 129
Sectarianism, 55
Sects, medical (v. Schools)
Self-control, 47
Self-education, 279
Semen, 131, 233
Sensation, 47
Septum, perforated, between ventricles of heart, 321
Serum (watery part of blood or milk), 91, 213
Shapling (development of organs), 19
Sieves, 91
Skin-diseases, 253 (v. also Leprosy and Lichens)
Slaves, 103
Sociability, 47
Sophistry, 219, 279
Sophists, 7
Soul, 46
Specific selection of nutriment by tissues (v. Attraction, physiological)
Spermatic ducts, 57
Spirit (v. Pneuma)
Spleen, function and diseases of, 205
—— "uselessness" of, 143
—— as an emunctory of the liver, 277
Statues, 129
Sting-ray (fish), bite of, 85
Stoics, 15, 145
Stomach, function of, 197, 237, 251, 255
—— coats of, 261
Stomach, independent habits of, 271
—— give-and-take between it and liver, 291
Stone in bladder, 51
Strength, relative, of different organs, 293
Substance, 9
Superfluities (waste-substances), 35, 291
Swallowing (v. Deglutition)
Symptoms, 13
Synapse, 147

Teeth, 253
Temperament (crisis, mixture of elementary principles), 15, 139, 193
Temperance, 47
Theophrastus, 139
Thorns, drugs for extracting, 83
Tissues, development of, 21
—— their action in producing humours, 179, 195
Trachea (windpipe), 305
Transference (passive motion), 7
Transpiration, 153
Treatment, principles of, 199
Tricuspid orifice of heart, 321
Tubes, rigid, 119, 317, 325

Unity of organism, 61
Ureters, 23, 51
Urine, 51
“Useless” organs (Erasistratus), 143
Uterus (womb), 227

Vacuum, tendency to refill (v. Horror vacui)
Valves of heart, 121, 315
Vaporisation (v. Evaporation)
Vegetable diet, 35, 179
Vegetative life, 3
Veins, structure of, 283
—— “arterial” (v. Pulmonary artery)
—— coronary, 323
—— hepatic, 147
—— mesenteric, 293, 305
—— portal, 147
—— renal, 107, 143
—— vena cava (chief vein of body), 91
—— collapse of, 119
Ventricles of heart, communication between, 321
Vipers, 85
Vitalist School in Medicine, 45
Vivisection, 59, 241, 273
Voluntary motion, 3
Volvulus (intestinal obstruction), 299, 303
Vomiting, 241, 247, 267
—— fecal, 299

Waste-products (v. Superfluities)
Whey (v. Serum)
Wine, 209, 329
Womb (v. Uterus)
Wounds, 185
Wrestling, 125

Zeno, of Citium, 9
THE LOEB CLASSICAL LIBRARY.

VOLUMES ALREADY PUBLISHED.

*Latin Authors.*


CATULLUS. Trans. by F. W. Cornish; TIBULLUS. Trans. by J. P. Postgate; PERVIGILIAM VENERIS. Trans. by J. W. Mackail. 1 Vol.

CICERO: DE FINIBUS. Trans. by H. Rackham. 1 Vol.

CICERO: DE OFFICIIS. Trans. by Walter Miller. 1 Vol.

CICERO: LETTERS TO ATTICUS. Trans. by E. O. Winstedt. Vols I and II.


HORACE: ODES AND EPODES. Trans. by C. E. Bennett. 1 Vol.

OVID: HEROIDES AND AMORES. Trans. by Grant Showerman. 1 Vol.

OVID: METAMORPHOSES. Trans. by F. J. Miller. 2 Vols.


PLINY: LETTERS. Melmoth's Translation revised by W. M. L. Hutchinson. 2 Vols.

PROPERTIUS. Trans. by H. E. Butler. 1 Vol.

SUETONIUS. Trans. by J. C. Rolfe. 2 Vols.


TERENCE. Trans. by John Sargeaunt. 2 Vols.
Greek Authors.

APOLLONIUS RHODIUS. Trans. by R. C. Seaton. 1 Vol.
THE APOSTOLIC FATHERS. Trans. by Kirsoopp Lake. 2 Vols.
APPIAN'S ROMAN HISTORY. Trans. by Horace White. 4 Vols.
DAPHNIS AND CHLOE. Thornley's Translation revised by J. M. Edmonds; PARTHENIUS. Trans. by S. Gaselee. 1 Vol.
EURIPIDES. Trans. by A. S. Way. 4 Vols.
JULIAN. Trans. by Wilmer Cave Wright. Vols. I and II.
LUCIAN. Trans. by A. M. Harmon. Vols. I and II.
MARCUS AURELIUS. Trans. by C. R. Haines. 1 Vol.
PINDAR. Trans. by Sir J. E. Sandys. 1 Vol.
PLATO: EUTHYPHRHO, APOLOGY, CRITO, PHAEDO, PHAEDRUS. Trans. by H. N. Fowler. 1 Vol.
PROCOPIUS. Trans. by H. B. Dewing. Vols. I and II.
QUINTUS SMYRNÆAEUS. Trans. by A. S. Way. 1 Vol.
SOPHOCLES. Trans. by F. Storr. 2 Vols.
XENOPHON: CYROPAEDIA. Trans. by Walter Miller. 2 Vols.
IN PREPARATION.

Greek Authors.

AESCHINES, C. D. Adams, of Dartmouth College.
ARISTOPHANES, J. W. White, of Harvard University.
ARRIAND, W. K. Prentice, of Princeton University.
ATHENAEUS, C. B. Gulick, of Harvard University.
CALLIMACHUS, A. W. Mair, Professor of Greek in the University of Edinburgh; ARATUS, G. R. Mair, of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge.
CLEMENT OF ALEXANDRIA, Rev. G. W. Butterworth, of the University of Leeds.
DIO CHRYSTOSTOM, W. E. Waters, New York University.
EUSEBIUS, Kirsopp Lake, of Harvard University.
GREEK LYRICS, J. M. Edmonds, of Jesus College, Cambridge.
HOMER, ILIAD, W. F. Harris, of Harvard University.
HOMER, ODYSSEY, A. T. Murray, of Stanford University.
IAMBIC AND ELEGIAIC POETS, E. D. Perry, of Columbia University.
ISAEUS, R. J. Bonner, of the University of Chicago.
ISOCRATES, G. Norlin, of the University of Colorado.
MANETHO, S. de Ricci.
MENANDER, F. G. Allinson, of Brown University.
PAUSANIAS, W. H. S. Jones, of St. Catherine's College, Cambridge.
PLATO, LYSIS AND GORGIAS, W. R. Lamb, of Trinity College, Cambridge.
PLATO, REPUBLIC, Paul Shorey, University of Chicago.
PLUTARCH, MORALIA, F. C. Babbitt, of Trinity College, Hartford.
POLYBIOUS, W. R. Paton.
THUCYDIDES, C. F. Smith, of the University of Wisconsin.
XENOPHON, ANABASIS AND HELLENICA, C. W. Brownson, of the College of the City of New York.
Latin Authors.

AMMIANUS, C. U. Clark, of Yale University.
AULUS GELLIUS, C. B. Platner, of Western Reserve University.
CICERO, AD FAMILIARES, E. O. Winstedt, of Magdalen College, Oxford.
CICERO, DE ORATOR, ORATOR, BRUTUS, Charles Stuttaford.
FRONTINUS, DE AQUIS, C. Herschel, of New York.
FRONTO, C. R. Haines, of St. Catherine’s College, Cambridge.
HORACE, EPISTLES AND SATIRES, W. G. Hale, of the University of Chicago, and G. L. Hendrickson, of Yale University.
JUVENAL AND PERSIUS, G. G. Ramsay, of Trinity College, Oxford, and late of Glasgow University.
LIVY, B. O. Foster, of Stanford University.
LUCAN, S. Reinach, Member of the Institute of France.
OVID, TRISTIA AND EX PONTO, A. L. Wheeler, of Bryn Mawr College.
SALLUST, J. C. Rolfe, of the University of Pennsylvania.
SENeca, EPISTULAE MORALES, R. M. Gummere, of Haverford College.
SENeca, MORAL ESSAYS, J. W. Basore, of Princeton University.
TACITUS, ANNALS, John Jackson, of Queen’s College, Oxford.
VALERIUS FLACCUS, A. F. Scholfield, of King’s College, Cambridge.
VELEIUS PATERCULUS, F. W. Shipley, of Washington University.
VITRUVIUS, F. W. Kelsey, of the University of Michigan.

DESCRIPrIVE PROSPECTUS ON APPLICATION.

London - - WILLIAM HEINEMANN.
New York - - G. P. PUTNAM’S SONS.